


# SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>1. Rule-Making Agency: NC Building Code Council</b>  |   |
| <b>2. Rule citation &amp; name (name not required for repeal):</b><br>2024 North Carolina Plumbing Code (230314 Item B-1)   |   |
| <b>3. Action:</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> ADOPTION <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AMENDMENT <input type="checkbox"/> REPEAL <input type="checkbox"/> READOPTION <input type="checkbox"/> REPEAL through READOPTION   |   |
| <b>4. Rule exempt from RRC review?</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Yes. Cite authority:<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No   | <b>5. Rule automatically subject to legislative review?</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Yes. Cite authority:<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No  |
| <b>6. Notice for Proposed Rule:</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Notice Required<br>Notice of Text published on: May 15, 2023 in NC Register, April 24, 2023 agency website<br>Link to Agency notice: <a href="https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/building-code-council-bcc/bcc-hearing-notices">https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/building-code-council-bcc/bcc-hearing-notices</a><br>Hearing on: June 13, 2023<br>Adoption by Agency on: September 12, 2023<br><input type="checkbox"/> Notice not required under G.S.:<br>Adoption by Agency on:   |   |
| <b>7. Rule establishes or increases a fee? (See G.S. 12-3.1)</b><br><br><input type="checkbox"/> Yes<br>Agency submitted request for consultation on:<br>Consultation not required. Cite authority:<br><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No   | <b>8. Fiscal impact. Check all that apply.</b><br><br><input type="checkbox"/> This Rule was part of a combined analysis.<br><br><input type="checkbox"/> State funds affected<br><input type="checkbox"/> Local funds affected<br><input type="checkbox"/> Substantial economic impact (≥\$1,000,000)<br><input type="checkbox"/> Approved by OSBM<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No fiscal note required  |
| <b>9. REASON FOR ACTION</b><br><b>9A. What prompted this action? Check all that apply:</b><br><div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Agency<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Court order / cite:<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Federal statute / cite:<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Federal regulation / cite:             </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <input type="checkbox"/> Legislation enacted by the General Assembly<br/>                 Cite Session Law:<br/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Petition for rule-making<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> Other:             </div> </div> <b>9B. Explain:</b> This amendment The 2018 NC Plumbing Code is amended to create the 2024 NC Plumbing Code and is proposed to protect the public by updating the code to current standards of practice. |   |
| <p>The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2025.<br/>             The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.</p>  |   |
| <b>10. Rulemaking Coordinator: David Bruce Rittlinger</b><br><b>David B. Rittlinger</b><br><b>Phone: (919)647-0008</b><br><b>E-Mail: david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov</b><br><br><b>Additional agency contact, if any:</b><br><b>Phone:</b><br><b>E-Mail:</b>   | <b>11. Signature of Agency Head* or Rule-making Coordinator:</b><br><br><br><br><hr/> <p><small>*If this function has been delegated (reassigned) pursuant to G.S. 143B-10(a), submit a copy of the delegation with this form.</small><br/> <b>Typed Name: David Bruce Rittlinger</b><br/> <b>Title: (Interim) Deputy commissioner of Engineering &amp; Chief Code Consultant</b></p> |
| <b>RRC AND OAH USE ONLY</b>   |   |
| <b>Action taken:</b><br><br><input type="checkbox"/> RRC extended period of review:<br><input type="checkbox"/> RRC determined substantial changes:<br><input type="checkbox"/> Withdrawn by agency<br><input type="checkbox"/> Subject to Legislative Review<br><input type="checkbox"/> Other:  |   |

# SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

The 2021 International Plumbing Code can be viewed for free at the following link:

<https://codes.iccsafe.org/content/IPC2021P3>

Errata to the 2021 International Plumbing Code can be viewed for free at the following link:

[https://www.iccsafe.org/wp-content/uploads/errata\\_central/2021-International-Plumbing-Code-Errata-Complete.pdf](https://www.iccsafe.org/wp-content/uploads/errata_central/2021-International-Plumbing-Code-Errata-Complete.pdf)

Amendments to the 2018 North Carolina Plumbing Code can be viewed for free at the following link:

<https://www.ncosfm.gov/2017-2023-approved-amendments-230314plumbing-code>

**THIS DOCUMENT CONTAINS PROPOSED NORTH CAROLINA AMENDMENTS TO THE 2021 EDITION OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE (IPC) FOR THE PURPOSE OF ESTABLISHING THE 2024 EDITION OF THE NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE.**

**UNDERLINED TEXT INDICATE NORTH CAROLINA PROPOSED AMENDMENTS TO THE 2021 INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE FOR THE 2024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE.**

**STRUCKTHROUGH TEXT INDICATES IPC TEXT THAT IS PROPOSED TO BE REMOVED FROM THE 2024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE.**

**TEXT THAT IS HIGHLIGHTED IN YELLOW INDICATES PROPOSED NORTH CAROLINA AMENDMENTS THAT ARE NEW OR DIFFERENT THAN THE 2018 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE.**

## **Documents included:**

1. Formatted Review Aide and 2024 North Carolina Plumbing Code: Chapter 1 through Resource A\*

**TEXT THAT IS STRUCKTHROUGH IS DELETED FROM THE 2018 EDITION TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.**

**TEXT THAT IS UNDERLINED IS NEW TEXT TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.**

\*Of note, publishing edits to the Cover page, North Carolina Building Code Council members and committees lists, North Carolina Department of Insurance contact information, Preface, Table of Contents and Index are not included as those are publishing edits that do not contain permanent rule content. These publishing edits contain NCBC and NCDOI contact information, instructions on how to use the code, and guidance on where to find information in the code for the public-at-large. Coordination of the correct page numbers tied to the Table of Contents and Index cannot be accurately completed until the first draft of publishing is completed for NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff review prior to completion of publishing by the International Code Council. NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff will be coordinating the publication of all these publishing edits with the International Code Council once the proposed 2024 North Carolina Building Codes are approved.

2. Appendix C Code Change Proposal North Carolina Building Code Council (230314 Item B-1) 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: B-1 2024 NCPC). A link to the petition can be found here: <https://www.ncosfm.gov/news/events/building-code-council-meeting-march-14-2023>
3. 2017-2023 Approved Amendments to the 2018 North Carolina Plumbing Code (File: 2017-2023 Approved Amendments 230314 Plumbing Code). A link to these amendments can be found here: <https://www.ncosfm.gov/2017-2023-approved-amendments-230314plumbing-code>

## SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

4. Appendix C Code Change Proposal North Carolina Building Code Council (231219 Item B-16) 2024 NC Plumbing Code, Sections 702.1, 702.4, 1102.2 and 1102.7 (File B-16 2024 NCPC 702.1-702.4-1102.2 and 1102.7). This petition amends the 2024 NC Plumbing Code per General Assembly of North Carolina Session Law 2023-137, Section 36 that became law on 10/10/23 and addresses the Letter of Objection dated 12/6/23 by Canaan Huie-Attorney at Law-Moore & VanAllen that was submitted to Brian Liebman-Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission of the Office of Administrative Hearings. This permanent rule is anticipated to be adopted by the NCBCC on 3/19/24 and submitted to RRC within 30 days after its adoption.

**(see attached documents)**

## CHAPTER 1

# SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

#### SECTION 101 SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**A] 101.1 Title.** These regulations shall be known as the *North Carolina Plumbing Code* as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on ~~June 13, 2017~~, September 12, 2023, to be effective January 1, ~~2019-2025~~. References to the *International Codes* shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The North Carolina amendments to the *International Codes* are underlined.

**[A] 101.2 Scope.** The provisions of this code shall apply ~~to and regulate~~ the erection, installation, alteration, repairs, relocation, replacement, addition to, use or maintenance of plumbing systems within North Carolina. ~~This code shall regulate sanitary and vacuum collection systems.~~ The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and equipment, fuel-gas-fired water heaters and water heater venting systems shall be regulated by the ~~International~~ North Carolina Fuel Gas Code. ~~Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.~~

**Exception:** Detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) not more than three stories ~~high above grade plane in height~~ with a separate means of egress, and their accessory structures ~~not more than three stories above grade plane in height~~, shall comply with ~~this code or~~ the ~~International~~ North Carolina Residential Code.

**[A] 101.3 Intent/Purpose.** The purpose of this code is to establish minimum ~~standards~~ requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and ~~public~~ general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of plumbing equipment and systems.

**[A] 101.4 Severability.** If any section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be illegal or void, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this code.

**101.5 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance adopted or referenced in this code.

**101.6 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing board or commissions.** ~~The North Carolina State Building Codes~~ North Carolina State Building Codes do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, design professional, contractor or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

#### SECTION 102 APPLICABILITY

**[A] 102.1 General.** Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

**[A] 102.2 Existing installations.** Plumbing systems lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code shall be permitted to have their use and maintenance continued if the use, maintenance or repair is in accordance with the original design and hazard to life, health or property is not created by such plumbing system.

**[A] 102.2.1 Existing buildings.** Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs related to building or structural issues shall be regulated by the *International Existing Building Code*.



[A] **102.3 Maintenance.** Plumbing systems, materials and appurtenances, both existing and new, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design in a safe and sanitary condition. ~~All devices~~ Devices or safeguards required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the edition of the code under which they were installed.

The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for maintenance of plumbing systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the code official shall have the authority to require any plumbing system to be reinspected.

[A] **102.4 Additions, alterations or repairs.** Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs to any plumbing system shall conform to that required for a new plumbing system without requiring the existing plumbing system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, ~~alterations~~ alterations, renovations or repairs shall not cause an existing system to become unsafe, ~~insanitary~~ unsanitary or overloaded.

Minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing plumbing systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous and is *approved*.

[A] **102.5 Change in occupancy.** It shall be unlawful to make any change in the *occupancy* of any structure that will subject the structure to any special provision of this code applicable to the new *occupancy* without approval of the code official. The code official shall certify that such structure meets the intent of the provisions of law governing building construction for the proposed new *occupancy* and that such change of *occupancy* does not result in any hazard to the public health, safety or welfare.

[A] **102.6 Historic buildings.** The provisions of this code relating to the construction, alteration, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, alteration, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.

[A] **102.7 Moved buildings.** Except as determined by Section 102.2, plumbing systems that are a part of buildings or structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new installations.

[A] **102.8 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those that are listed in Chapter 15 and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.8.1 and 102.8.2.

~~[R] **Exception:** Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the equipment or appliance, the conditions of the listing and manufacturer's instructions shall apply.~~

[A] **102.8.1 Conflicts.** Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

[A] **102.8.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.**

Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code shall be the minimum requirements.

[A] **102.9 Requirements not covered by code.** Any requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare, not specifically covered by this code shall be determined by the code official.

[A] **102.10 Other laws.** The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

[A] **102.11 Application of references.** Reference to chapter section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

## PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Codes as adopted by the Building Code Council and enforced by State and local code enforcement officials.

### SECTION 103

#### DEPARTMENT OF PLUMBING INSPECTION

~~Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies. (Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

## SECTION 104

## DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL

~~Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies. (Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

SECTION 105103  
APPROVAL

[A] ~~105.4103.1~~ **Modifications.** Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the owner or owner's authorized agent, provided that the code official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical and the modification conforms to the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, life and fire safety requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the plumbing inspection department.

[A] ~~105.2103.2~~ **Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. An alternative material or method of construction shall be *approved* where the code official finds that the proposed ~~alternative material, method or equipment~~ design is satisfactory and satisfactorily complies with the intent of the provisions of this ~~code and is code~~, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this ~~code code~~ in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not *approved*, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not *approved*.

[A] ~~105.2103.2.1~~ **Research reports.** Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from *approved* sources.

[A] ~~105.3103.3~~ **Required testing.** Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction.

[A] ~~105.3103.3.1~~ **Test methods.** Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the code official shall approve the testing procedures.

[A] ~~105.32103.3.2~~ **Testing agency.** Tests shall be performed by an *approved agency*.

[A] ~~105.33103.3.3~~ **Test reports.** Reports of tests shall be retained by the code official for the period required for retention of public records.

~~105.4 Alternative engineered design.~~ The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an *alternative engineered design* plumbing system shall comply with Sections 105.4.1 through 105.4.6.

~~105.4.1 Design criteria.~~ An *alternative engineered design* shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Material, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

~~105.4.2 Submittal.~~ The registered design professional shall indicate on the permit application that the plumbing system is an *alternative engineered design*. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an *alternative engineered design* was part of the *approved* installation.

~~105.4.3 Technical data.~~ The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed *alternative engineered design* and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

~~105.4.4 Construction documents.~~ The registered design professional shall submit to the code official two complete sets of signed and sealed construction documents for the *alternative engineered design*. The construction documents shall include floor plans and a riser diagram of the work. Where appropriate, the construction documents shall indicate the direction of flow, all pipe sizes, grade of horizontal piping, loading, and location of fixtures and appliances.

~~105.4.5 Design approval.~~ Where the code official determines that the *alternative engineered design* conforms to the intent of this code, the plumbing system shall be *approved*. If the *alternative engineered design* is not *approved*, the code official shall notify the registered design professional in writing, stating the reasons thereof.

**105.4.6 Inspection and testing.** ~~The alternative engineered design shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

**[A] 105.5 Approved materials and equipment.** ~~Materials, equipment and devices approved by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.~~

**[A] 105.5.1 Material and equipment reuse.** ~~Materials, equipment and devices shall not be reused unless such elements have been reconditioned, tested, placed in good and proper working condition and approved.~~

## **SECTION 106 PERMITS**

~~Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies. (Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

## **SECTION \*\* 107 INSPECTIONS AND TESTING TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES**

**[A] 110.1107.1104.1 General.** The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary equipment, systems and uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

**[A] 110.2107.2104.2 Conformance.** Temporary equipment, systems and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

**[A] 110.3107.3104.3 Temporary utilities.** The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply utilities before an installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the code.

**[A] 110.4107.4104.4 Termination of approval.** The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for temporary equipment, systems or uses and to order the temporary equipment, systems or uses to be discontinued. <sup>\*</sup>

## **SECTION \*\* 108 VIOLATIONS INSPECTIONS AND TESTING**

~~Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies. (Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

## **SECTION \*\* 109 MEANS OF APPEAL FEES**

~~(Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

## **SECTION 110 TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS**

~~(Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

## **SECTION \*\* 111 NOTICE OF APPROVAL**

~~(Deleted.) See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~

**SECTION ~~—\*\*—~~ 112**  
**SERVICE UTILITIES**

**~~(Deleted.)~~** See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

**SECTION 113**  
**STOP WORK ORDER**

**~~(Deleted.)~~** See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

**SECTION 114**  
**MEANS OF APPEALS**

~~Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~ **~~(Deleted.)~~** See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

**SECTION ~~—\*\*—~~ 115**  
**VIOLATIONS**

~~Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.~~ **~~(Deleted.)~~** See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

## CHAPTER 2

# DEFINITIONS

### SECTION 201 GENERAL

**201.1 Scope.** Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

**201.2 Interchangeability.** Words stated in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural the singular.

**201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code* or the *International Mechanical Code*, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

**201.4 Terms not defined.** Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

### SECTION 202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

**ACCEPTED ENGINEERING PRACTICE.** That which conforms to accepted principles, tests or standards of nationally recognized technical or scientific authorities.

**[M] ACCESS (TO).** That which enables a fixture, appliance or equipment to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel, door or similar obstruction (see “*Ready access*”).

**ACCESS COVER.** A removable plate, usually secured by bolts or screws, to permit *access* to a pipe or pipe fitting for the purposes of inspection, repair or cleaning.

**[BE] ACCESSIBLE.** A site, building, facility or portion thereof that complies with Chapter 11 of the *North Carolina Building Code*.

**ADAPTER FITTING.** An *approved* connecting device that suitably and properly joins or adjusts pipes and fittings that do not otherwise fit together.

**AIR ADMITTANCE VALVE.** One-way valve designed to allow air to enter the plumbing drainage system when negative pressures develop in the piping system. The device shall close by gravity and seal the vent terminal at zero differential pressure (no-flow conditions) and under positive internal pressures. The purpose of an air admittance valve is to provide a method of allowing air to enter the plumbing drainage system without the use of a vent extended to open air and to prevent sewer gases from escaping into a building.

**AIR BREAK (Drainage System).** A piping arrangement in which a drain from a fixture, appliance or device discharges indirectly into another fixture, receptacle or interceptor at a point below the *flood level rim* and above the trap seal.

**AIR GAP (Drainage System).** The unobstructed vertical distance through the free atmosphere between the outlet of the waste pipe and the *flood level rim* of the receptacle into which the waste pipe is discharging.

**AIR GAP (Water Distribution System).** The unobstructed vertical distance through the free atmosphere between the lowest opening from any pipe or faucet supplying water to a tank, plumbing fixture or other device and the *flood level rim* of the receptacle.

**~~[RB] ALTERATION.~~** Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition that requires a permit. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation that requires a permit.

## DEFINITIONS

**ALTERNATE ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER.** Nonpotable water from other than public utilities, on-site surface sources and subsurface natural freshwater sources. Examples of such water are graywater, on-site reclaimed water, collected rainwater, captured condensate and rejected water from reverse osmosis systems.

**ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN.** A plumbing system that performs in accordance with the intent of Chapters 3 through 14 and provides an equivalent level of performance for the protection of public health, safety and welfare. The system design is not specifically regulated by Chapters 3 through 14.

**ANCHORS.** See “~~Supports.~~” “Supports.”

**ANTISIPHON.** A term applied to valves or mechanical devices that eliminate siphonage.

~~[A]~~ **APPROVED.** Acceptable to the code official or other authority having jurisdiction for compliance with the provisions of the applicable code or referenced standard.

~~[A]~~ **APPROVED AGENCY.** An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification where such agency has been *approved* by the code official.

**AREA DRAIN.** A receptacle designed to collect surface or storm water from an open area.

~~**ASPIRATOR.** A fitting or device supplied with water or other fluid under positive pressure that passes through an integral orifice or constriction, causing a vacuum. Aspirators are also referred to as suction apparatus, and are similar in operation to an ejector.~~

~~[R]~~ **~~BACKPRESSURE, BACKFLOW.~~** Pressure created by any means in the water distribution system, which by being in excess of the pressure in the water supply mains causes a potential backflow condition.

~~[R]~~ **~~BACKPRESSURE, LOW HEAD.~~** Backpressure, low head. A pressure less than or equal to 4.33 psi (29.88 kPa) or the pressure exerted by a 10-foot (3048 mm) column of water.

~~[R]~~ **~~BACKSIPHONAGE.~~** Backsiphonage. The backflow of potentially contaminated water into the potable water system as a result of the pressure in the potable water system falling below atmospheric pressure of the plumbing fixtures, pools, tanks or vats connected to the potable water distribution piping. The flowing back of used or contaminated water from piping into a potable water supply pipe because of a negative pressure in such pipe.

~~[R]~~ **~~BACKFLOW, WATER DISTRIBUTION.~~** Water supply system. The flow of water or other liquids, mixtures or substances into the potable water supply piping distribution pipes of a potable water supply from any sources other than its source except the intended source. Backsiphonage is one type of backflow.

~~[R]~~ **BACKFLOW, DRAINAGE.** A reversal of flow in the drainage system.

**BACKFLOW CONNECTION.** Any arrangement whereby backflow is possible.

**BACKFLOW PREVENTER.** A backflow prevention assembly, a backflow prevention device or other means or method to prevent backflow into the potable water supply.

~~[R]~~ **~~BACKFLOW PREVENTER, REDUCED PRESSURE~~**

~~**ZONE TYPE.** A backflow prevention device consisting of two independently acting check valves, internally force loaded to a normally closed position and separated by an intermediate chamber (or zone) in which there is an automatic relief means of venting to atmosphere internally loaded to a normally open position between two tightly closing shutoff valves and with means for testing for tightness of the checks and opening of relief means.~~

**BACKWATER VALVE.** A device or valve installed in the *building drain* or *sewer* pipe where a *sewer* is subject to backflow, and that prevents drainage or waste from backing up into a lower level or fixtures and causing a flooding condition.

**[BS] BASE FLOOD ELEVATION.** A reference point, determined in accordance with the building code, based on the depth or peak elevation of flooding, including wave height, which has a 1-percent (100-year flood) or greater chance of occurring in any given year.

**BATHING ROOM.** A room containing a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture, including or excluding a water closet and/or lavatory.

**BATHROOM GROUP.** A group of fixtures consisting of a water closet, lavatory, bathtub or shower, including or excluding a bidet, an *emergency floor drain* or both. Such fixtures are located together on the same floor level.

## DEFINITIONS

**BATTERY OF FIXTURES.** Any group of two or more similar adjacent fixtures that discharge into a common horizontal waste or soil branch.

**BEDPAN STEAMER OR BOILER.** ~~A fixture utilized for scalding bedpans or urinals by direct application of steam or boiling water.~~

**BEDPAN WASHER AND STERILIZER.** ~~A fixture designed to wash bedpans and to flush the contents into the sanitary drainage system. Included are fixtures of this type that provide for disinfecting utensils by scalding with steam or hot water.~~

**BEDPAN WASHER HOSE.** ~~A device supplied with hot and cold water and located adjacent to a water closet or clinical sink to be utilized for cleansing bedpans.~~

**BRANCH.** Any part of the piping system except a riser, main or *stack*.

**BRANCH, FIXTURE.** See “Fixture branch.”

**BRANCH, HORIZONTAL.** See “Horizontal branch drain.”

**BRANCH INTERVAL.** A distance along a soil or waste stack corresponding, in general, to a story height, but not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) within which the horizontal branches from one floor or story of a structure are connected to the stack. Measurements are taken down the stack from the highest horizontal branch connection.

**[R] BRANCH MAIN.** A water-distribution pipe that extends horizontally off a main or riser to convey water to branches or fixture groups.

**BRANCH VENT.** A vent connecting one or more individual vents with a vent *stack* or *stack vent*.

**[A] BUILDING.** Any structure ~~occupied~~ utilized or intended for supporting or sheltering any occupancy.

**BUILDING DRAIN.** That part of the lowest piping of a drainage system that receives the discharge from soil, waste and other drainage pipes inside and that extends to 10 feet (3048 mm) beyond the exterior walls of the building and conveys the drainage to the *building sewer*.

**Combined.** A *building drain* that conveys both sewage and storm water or other drainage.

**Sanitary.** A *building drain* that conveys sewage only.

**Storm.** A *building drain* that conveys storm water or other drainage, but not sewage.

**[RB] BUILDING, EXISTING.** Existing building is a building legally erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building *permit* has been issued.

**BUILDING SEWER.** That part of the drainage system that extends from the end of the *building drain* and conveys the discharge to a *public sewer*, *private sewer*, individual sewage disposal system or other point of disposal.

**Combined.** A *building sewer* that conveys both sewage and storm water or other drainage.

**Sanitary.** A *building sewer* that conveys sewage only.

**Storm.** A *building sewer* that conveys storm water or other drainage, but not sewage.

**BUILDING SUBDRAIN.** That portion of a drainage system that does not drain by gravity into the *building sewer*.

**BUILDING TRAP.** A device, fitting or assembly of fittings installed in the *building drain* to prevent circulation of air between the drainage system of the building and the *building sewer*.

**CIRCUIT VENT.** A vent that connects to a horizontal drainage *branch* and vents two traps to ~~a maximum of~~ not more than eight traps or trapped fixtures connected into a battery.

**CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM.** A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

## DEFINITIONS

**CISTERN.** A small covered tank for storing water for a home or farm. Generally, this tank stores rainwater to be utilized for purposes other than in the potable water supply, and such tank is placed underground in most cases.

**CLEANOUT.** An access opening in the drainage system utilized for the removal of obstructions. Types of cleanouts include a removable plug or cap, and a removable fixture or fixture trap.

**[A] CODE.** These regulations, subsequent amendments ~~thereto~~<sup>hereto</sup>, or any emergency rule or regulation that the administrative authority having jurisdiction has lawfully adopted.

**[A] CODE OFFICIAL.** The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

**COLLECTION PIPE.** Unpressurized pipe used within the collection system that drains on-site nonpotable water or rainwater to a storage tank by gravity.

**COMBINATION FIXTURE.** A fixture combining one sink and laundry tray or a two- or three-compartment sink or laundry tray in one unit.

**COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM.** A specially designed system of waste piping embodying the horizontal wet venting of one or more sinks, lavatories, drinking fountains or floor drains by means of a common waste and vent pipe adequately sized to provide free movement of air above the flow line of the drain.

**COMBINED BUILDING DRAIN.** See “*Building drain*, combined.”

**COMBINED BUILDING SEWER.** See “*Building sewer*, combined.”

**COMMON VENT.** A vent connecting at the junction of two *fixture drains* or to a fixture *branch* and serving as a vent for both fixtures.

**CONCEALED FOULING SURFACE.** Any surface of a plumbing fixture that is not readily visible and is not scoured or cleansed with each fixture operation.

**[R] CONDENSATE.** The liquid that separates from a gas ~~because of~~<sup>due to</sup> a reduction in temperature; for example, water that condenses from flue gases and water that condenses from air circulating through the cooling coil in air conditioning *equipment*.

**[R] CONDENSING APPLIANCE.** An *appliance* that condenses water generated by the burning of fuels.

**CONDUCTOR.** A pipe inside the building that conveys storm water from the roof to a storm or combined *building drain*.

**[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENT.** All of the written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of the project necessary for obtaining a building permit. The construction drawings shall be drawn to an appropriate scale.

**CONTAMINATION.** An impairment of the quality of the potable water that creates an actual hazard to the public health through poisoning or the spread of disease by sewage, industrial fluids or waste.

**[R] CONTINUOUS WASTE.** A drain from two or more similar adjacent fixtures connected to a single trap.

**COPPER ALLOY.** A metal alloy where the principle component is copper.

**CRITICAL LEVEL (C-L).** An elevation (height) reference point that determines the minimum height at which a backflow preventer or vacuum breaker is installed above the *flood level rim* of the fixture or receptor served by the device. The critical level is the elevation level below which there is a potential for backflow to occur. If the critical level marking is not indicated on the device, the bottom of the device shall constitute the critical level.

**CROSS CONNECTION.** Any physical connection or arrangement between two otherwise separate piping systems, one of which contains potable water and the other either water of unknown or questionable safety or steam, gas or chemical, whereby there exists the possibility for flow from one system to the other, with the direction of flow depending on the pressure differential between the two systems (see “~~Backflow~~”)-“*Backflow*”).

**DEAD END.** A ~~branch~~<sup>branch</sup> leading from a soil, waste or vent pipe; a ~~building drain~~<sup>building drain</sup>; or a ~~building sewer~~<sup>building sewer</sup>, and terminating at a ~~developed length~~<sup>developed length</sup> of 2 feet (610 mm) or more by means of a plug, cap or other closed fitting.



## DEFINITIONS

**DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM.** A water distribution system where one or more pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon a demand for hot water.

**DEPTH OF TRAP SEAL.** The depth of liquid that would have to be removed from a full trap before air could pass through the trap.

**[BS] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.** The elevation of the “design flood,” including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community’s legally designated flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the *design flood elevation* shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the building’s perimeter plus the depth number (in feet) (mm) specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).

**[R] DESIGN PROFESSIONAL.** See “*Registered design professional*.”

**DEVELOPED LENGTH.** The length of a pipeline measured along the centerline of the pipe and fittings.

**[R] DIRECT SYSTEM.** A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop is not separated from the load.

**DISCHARGE PIPE.** A pipe that conveys the discharge from plumbing fixtures or appliances.

**DRAIN.** Any pipe that carries ~~waste water~~ *wastewater* or ~~water borne~~ *waterborne* wastes in a building drainage system.

**[R] DRAIN-BACK SYSTEM.** A solar thermal system in which the fluid in the solar collector loop is drained from the collector into a holding tank under prescribed circumstances.

**DRAINAGE FITTING.** The type of fitting or fittings utilized in the drainage system. Drainage fittings are similar to cast-iron fittings, except that instead of having a bell and spigot, drainage fittings are recessed and tapped to eliminate ridges on the inside of the installed pipe.

### DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT.

**Drainage (dfu).** A measure of the probable discharge into the drainage system by various types of plumbing fixtures. The drainage fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of drainage discharge, on the time duration of a single drainage operation and on the average time between successive operations.

**DRAINAGE SYSTEM.** Piping within a *public* or *private* premise that conveys sewage, rainwater or other liquid waste to a point of disposal. A drainage system does not include the mains of a *public sewer* system or a private or public sewage treatment or disposal plant.

**Building gravity.** A drainage system that drains by gravity into the *building sewer*.

**Sanitary.** A drainage system that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and ground water.

**Storm.** A drainage system that carries rainwater, surface water, subsurface water and similar liquid waste.

**DRINKING FOUNTAIN.** A plumbing fixture that is connected to the potable water distribution system and the drainage system. The fixture allows the user to obtain a drink directly from a stream of flowing water without the use of any accessories.

**DUAL FLUSHING DEVICE.** A feature that allows the user to flush a water closet with either a reduced or full volume of water, depending on bowl contents.

**EFFECTIVE OPENING.** The minimum cross-sectional area at the point of water supply discharge, measured or expressed in terms of the diameter of a circle or, if the opening is not circular, the diameter of a circle of equivalent cross-sectional area. For faucets and similar fittings, the *effective opening* shall be measured at the smallest orifice in the fitting body or in the supply piping to the fitting.

**EMERGENCY FLOOR DRAIN.** A floor drain that does not receive the discharge of any drain or indirect waste pipe, and that protects against damage from accidental spills, fixture overflows and leakage.

**ESSENTIALLY NONTOXIC TRANSFER FLUID.** Fluids having a Gosselin rating of 1, including propylene glycol; mineral oil; polydimethylsiloxane; hydrochlorofluorocarbon, chlorofluorocarbon and carbon refrigerants; and FDA-approved boiler water additives for steam boilers.

## DEFINITIONS

**ESSENTIALLY TOXIC TRANSFER FLUID.** Soil, waste or ~~gray water~~graywater and fluids having a Gosselin rating of 2 or more, including ethylene glycol, hydrocarbon oils, ammonia refrigerants and hydrazine.

**EXISTING INSTALLATION.** Any plumbing system regulated by this code that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

**FAUCET.** A valve end of a water pipe through which water is drawn from or held within the pipe.

**FILL VALVE.** A water supply valve, opened or closed by means of a float or similar device, utilized to supply water to a tank. An antisiphon fill valve contains an antisiphon device in the form of an *approved air gap* or vacuum breaker that is an integral part of the fill valve unit and that is positioned on the discharge side of the water supply control valve.

**FIXTURE.** See ~~“Plumbing fixture.”~~*“Plumbing fixture.”*

**FIXTURE BRANCH, DRAINAGE.** A drain serving two or more fixtures that discharges to another drain or to a stack ~~stack~~ or a water-supply pipe between the fixture supply and a main water-distribution pipe or fixture group main.

**[R] FIXTURE BRANCH, WATER-SUPPLY.** A water-supply pipe between the fixture supply and a main water-distribution pipe or fixture group main.

**FIXTURE DRAIN.** The drain from the trap of a fixture to a junction with any other drain pipe.

### FIXTURE FITTING.

**Supply fitting.** A fitting that controls the volume, direction of flow or ~~both~~both of ~~water~~water, and is either attached to or accessed from a fixture, or is used with an open or atmospheric discharge.

**Waste fitting.** A combination of components that conveys the sanitary waste from the outlet of a fixture to the connection to the sanitary drainage system.

**[R] FIXTURE GROUP, MAIN.** The main water-distribution pipe (or secondary branch) serving a plumbing fixture grouping such as a bath, kitchen or laundry area to which two or more individual fixture branch pipes are connected.

**FIXTURE SUPPLY.** The water supply pipe connecting a fixture or fixture fitting to a *branch* water supply pipe or directly to a main water supply pipe.

**[R] FIXTURE UNIT, DRAINAGE (d.f.u.).** A measure of probable discharge into the drainage system by various types of plumbing fixtures, used to size DWV piping systems. The drainage fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of drainage discharge, on the time duration of a single drainage operation and on the average time between successive operations.

**[R] FIXTURE UNIT, WATER-SUPPLY (w.s.f.u.).** A measure of the probable hydraulic demand on the water supply by various types of plumbing fixtures used to size water-piping systems. The water-supply fixture-unit value for a particular fixture depends on its volume rate of supply, on the time duration of a single supply operation and on the average time between successive operations.

**[BS] FLOOD HAZARD AREA.** The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year.
2. The area designated as a *flood hazard area* on a community's flood hazard map or as otherwise legally designated.

**FLOOD LEVEL RIM.** The edge of the receptacle from which water overflows.

**[R] FLOOR DRAIN.** A plumbing fixture for recess in the floor having a floor-level strainer intended for the purpose of the collection and disposal of waste water used in cleaning the floor and for the collection and disposal of accidental spillage to the floor.

**FLOW CONTROL (Vented).** A device installed upstream from the interceptor having an orifice that controls the rate of flow through the interceptor and an air intake (vent) downstream from the orifice that allows air to be drawn into the flow stream.

**FLOW PRESSURE.** The pressure in the water supply pipe near the faucet or water outlet while the faucet or water outlet is wide open and flowing.

**FLUSH TANK.** A tank designed with a fill valve and flush valve to flush the contents of the bowl or usable portion of the fixture.

## DEFINITIONS

**FLUSHOMETER TANK.** A device integrated within an air accumulator vessel that is designed to discharge a predetermined quantity of water to fixtures for flushing purposes.

**FLUSHOMETER VALVE.** A valve attached to a pressurized water supply pipe and ~~so~~ designed so that when ~~activated~~ ~~activated~~, the valve opens the line for direct flow into the fixture at a rate and quantity to operate the fixture properly, and then gradually closes to reseal fixture traps and avoid water hammer.

**FLUSH VALVE.** A device located at the bottom of a flush tank that is operated to flush water closets.

**FULL-OPEN VALVE.** A water control or shutoff component in the water supply system piping that, where adjusted for maximum flow, the flow path through the component's closure member is not a restriction in the component's through-flow area.

**[R] FULLWAY VALVE. VALVE (FULLWAY VALVE).** A valve that in the full open position has an opening cross-sectional area that is not less than 85 percent of the cross-sectional area of the connecting pipe.

**[R] GRADE, PIPING.** See "Slope."

**GRAY WATER. GRAYWATER.** Waste discharged from lavatories, bathtubs, showers, clothes washers and laundry trays.

**GREASE INTERCEPTOR.**

**Fats, oils and greases (FOG) disposal system.** A plumbing appurtenance that reduces nonpetroleum fats, oils and greases in effluent by separation or mass and volume reduction.

**Gravity.** Plumbing appurtenances that are installed in the sanitary drainage system to intercept free-floating fats, oils and grease from waste water discharge. Separation is accomplished by gravity.

**Hydromechanical. Hydro-mechanical.** Plumbing appurtenances that are installed in the sanitary drainage system to intercept free-floating fats, oils and grease from waste water discharge. Continuous separation is accomplished by air entrainment, buoyancy and interior baffling.

**GREASE REMOVAL DEVICE, AUTOMATIC (GRD).** A plumbing appurtenance that is installed in the sanitary drainage system to intercept free-floating fats, oils and grease from wastewater discharge. Such a device operates on a time- or event-controlled basis and has the ability to remove free-floating fats, oils and grease automatically without intervention from the user except for maintenance.

**GREASE-LADEN WASTE.** Effluent discharge that is produced from food processing, food preparation or other sources where grease, fats and oils enter automatic dishwasher pre-rinse stations, sinks or other appurtenances.

**GRIDDED WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.** A water distribution system where every water distribution pipe is interconnected so as to provide two or more paths to each fixture supply pipe.

**GROUP WASH FIXTURE.** A type of lavatory that allows more than one person to utilize the fixture at the same time. The fixture has one or more drains and one or more faucets.

**HANGERS.** See "~~Supports.~~" "Supports."

**HORIZONTAL BRANCH DRAIN.** A drainage *branch* pipe extending laterally from a soil or waste *stack* or *building drain*, with or without vertical sections or ~~branches~~, branches, that receives the discharge from two or more *fixture drains* or *branches* and conducts the discharge to the soil or waste *stack* or to the *building drain*.

**HORIZONTAL PIPE.** Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) with a horizontal plane.

**HOT WATER.** Water at a temperature greater than 110°F (43°C).

**HOUSE TRAP.** See "~~Building trap.~~" "Building trap."

**[R] INDIRECT SYSTEM.** A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop circulates between the solar collector and a heat exchanger and such gas or liquid is not drained from the system or supplied to the load during normal operation.

## DEFINITIONS

**INDIRECT WASTE PIPE.** A waste pipe that does not connect directly with the drainage system, but that discharges into the drainage system through an *air break* or *air gap* into a trap, fixture, receptor or interceptor.

**INDIRECT WASTE RECEPTOR.** A plumbing fixture designed to collect and dispose of liquid waste from other plumbing fixtures, plumbing equipment or appliances that are required to discharge to the drainage system through an air gap. The following types of fixtures ~~fall within~~ shall include, but not be limited to, the classification of indirect liquid waste receptors: floor sinks, mop receptors, service sinks and standpipe drains with integral air gaps.

**INDIVIDUAL SEWAGE DISPOSAL SYSTEM.** A system for disposal of domestic sewage by means of a septic tank, cess-pool or mechanical treatment, designed for utilization apart from a public *sewer* to serve a single establishment or building.

**INDIVIDUAL VENT.** A pipe installed to vent a fixture trap and that connects with the vent system above the fixture served or terminates in the open air.

**INDIVIDUAL WATER SUPPLY.** A water supply that serves one or more families, and that is not an *approved* public water supply.

**INTERCEPTOR.** A device designed and installed to separate and retain for removal, by automatic or manual means, deleterious, hazardous or undesirable matter from normal wastes, while permitting normal sewage or wastes to discharge into the drainage system by gravity.

### JOINT.

**Expansion.** A loop, return bend or return offset that provides for the expansion and contraction in a piping system and is utilized in tall buildings or where there is a rapid change of temperature, as in power plants, steam rooms and similar occupancies.

**Flexible.** Any joint between two pipes that permits one pipe to be deflected or moved without movement or deflection of the other pipe.

**Mechanical.** See ~~“Mechanical joint.”~~ “Mechanical joint.”

**Slip.** A type of joint made by means of a washer or a special type of packing compound in which one pipe is slipped into the end of an adjacent pipe.

~~[RB]~~ **JURISDICTION.** The governmental unit that has adopted this code under due legislative authority.

~~[RB]~~ **KITCHEN.** Kitchen shall mean an area used, or designated to be used, for the preparation of food.

**LABELED.** Equipment, devices, fixtures or materials bearing the label of an approved agency.

**LAUNDRY TRAY.** A fixed tub with running water and drainpipe for washing clothes and other household linens, also called set tub.

**LAVATORY.** A hand-washing plumbing fixture located in a bathroom, or toilet room.

**LEADER.** An exterior drainage pipe for conveying storm water from roof or gutter drains to an *approved* means of disposal.

**LEAD-FREE PIPE AND FITTINGS.** Containing not more than a weighted average of 0.25-percent lead when used with respect to the wetted surfaces of pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings, and fixtures.

**LEAD-FREE SOLDER AND FLUX.** Containing not more than 0.2-percent lead.

**LOCAL VENT STACK.** A vertical pipe to which connections are made from the fixture side of traps and through which vapor or foul air is removed from the fixture or device utilized on bedpan washers.

**MACERATING TOILET SYSTEM.** An assembly consisting of a water closet and sump with a macerating pump that is designed to collect, grind and pump wastes from the water closet and up to two other fixtures connected to the sump.

**[R] MANIFOLD WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS.** A fabricated piping arrangement in which a large supply main is fitted with multiple branches in close proximity in which water is distributed separately to fixtures from each branch.

**MAIN.** The principal pipe artery to which branches are connected.

## DEFINITIONS

**MAIN SEWER** See “Public sewer.” ~~Sewer.~~

**MANIFOLD.** See “~~Plumbing appurtenance.~~” “Plumbing appurtenance.”

**[M] MECHANICAL JOINT.** A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not screwed, caulked, threaded, soldered, solvent cemented, brazed, welded or heat fused. A joint in which compression is applied along the centerline of the pieces being joined. In some applications, the joint is part of a coupling, fitting or adapter.

**MEDICAL GAS SYSTEM.** ~~(Deleted)~~ Deleted.

**MEDICAL VACUUM SYSTEM.** A system consisting of central-vacuum-producing equipment with pressure and operating controls, shutoff valves, alarm-warning systems, gauges and a network of piping extending to and terminating with suitable station inlets at locations where patient suction may be required.

**METER.** A measuring device used to collect data and indicate water usage.

**NONPOTABLE WATER.** Water not safe for drinking, personal or culinary utilization.

**NUISANCE.** Public nuisance as known in common law or in equity jurisprudence; whatever is dangerous to human life or detrimental to health; whatever structure or premises is not sufficiently ventilated, sewerage, drained, cleaned or lighted, with respect to its intended ~~occupancy~~ occupancy; and whatever renders the air, or human food, drink or water supply unwholesome.

**[A] OCCUPANCY.** The purpose for which a building or portion thereof is utilized or occupied.

**OFFSET.** A combination of *approved* bends that makes two changes in direction bringing one section of the pipe out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

**ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEM.** A water system for the collection, treatment, storage, distribution and reuse of nonpotable water generated on site, including but not limited to a graywater system. This definition does not include a rainwater harvesting system.

**OPEN AIR.** Outside the structure.

**PIPE SIZES.** For the purposes of determining the minimum size of pipe required, cross-sectional areas are the essential characteristic, not the pipe diameter. When the Code instructs to “increase by one pipe size,” some pipe sizes may not be commercially available. The following pipe sizes are presumed to be commercially available: ~~1/2, 3/4, 1 1/2, 3/4, 1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 2, 2 1/2, 2 1/2, 3, 3 1/2, 3 1/2, 4, 4 1/2, 4 1/2, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.~~

~~[R]~~ **PITCH.** See “Slope.”

**PLUMBING.** The practice, materials and fixtures utilized in the installation, maintenance, extension and alteration of all piping, fixtures, plumbing appliances and plumbing appurtenances, within or adjacent to any structure, in connection with sanitary drainage or storm drainage facilities; venting systems; and public or private water supply systems.

**PLUMBING APPLIANCE.** An energized household *appliance* with plumbing connections, such as a dishwasher, food waste disposer, clothes washer or water heater. Water or drain-connected devices intended to perform a special function. These devices have their operation or control dependent on one or more energized components, such as motors, controls or heating elements. Such devices are manually adjusted or controlled by the owner or operator, or are operated automatically through one or more of the following actions: a time cycle, a temperature range, a pressure range, a measured volume or weight.

**PLUMBING APPURTENANCE.** A manufactured device, prefabricated assembly or on-the-job assembly of component parts that is an adjunct to the basic piping system and plumbing fixtures. An appurtenance ~~demands no~~ does not demand additional water supply and does not add any discharge load to a fixture or to the drainage system. Examples include filters, relief valves, pumps and aerators.

**PLUMBING FIXTURE.** A receptacle or device that is either permanently or temporarily connected to the water distribution system of the premises and demands a supply of water therefrom; or discharges wastewater, liquid-borne waste materials or sewage either directly or indirectly to a drainage system of the premises; or requires both a water supply connection and a discharge to the drainage system of the premises.

## DEFINITIONS

**PLUMBING SYSTEM.** A system that includes the water distribution pipes; plumbing fixtures and traps; water-treating or water-using equipment; soil, waste and vent pipes; and *building drains*; in addition to their respective connections, devices and appurtenances within a structure or premises; and the water service, *building sewer* and building storm *sewer* serving such structure or premises.

**POLLUTION.** An impairment of the quality of the potable water to a degree that does not create a hazard to public health but that does adversely and unreasonably affect the aesthetic qualities of such potable water for domestic use.

**POTABLE WATER.** Water free from impurities present in amounts sufficient to cause disease or harmful physiological effects and conforming to the bacteriological and chemical quality requirements of the Public Health Service Drinking Water Standards or the regulations of the public health authority having jurisdiction.

**[M] PRESS-CONNECT JOINT.** A permanent mechanical joint incorporating an elastomeric seal or an elastomeric seal and corrosion-resistant grip ring. The joint is made with a pressing tool and jaw or ring approved by the fitting manufacturer.

**PRIMARY STRUCTURAL FRAME.** The primary structural frame shall include all of the following structural members:

1. The columns.
2. Structural members having direct connections to the columns, including girders, beams, trusses and spandrels.
3. Members of the floor construction and roof construction having direct connections to the columns.
4. Members that are essential to the vertical stability of the *primary structural frame* under gravity loading.

**PRIVATE.** In the classification of plumbing fixtures, “*private*” applies to fixtures in residences and apartments, and to fixtures in nonpublic toilet rooms of hotels and motels and similar installations in buildings where the plumbing fixtures are intended for utilization for a family or an individual.

**PUBLIC OR PUBLIC UTILIZATION.** In the classification of plumbing fixtures, “*public*” applies to fixtures with unrestricted exposure to walk-in traffic and to fixtures in general toilet rooms of schools, gymnasiums, hotels, airports, bus and railroad stations, public buildings, bars, public comfort stations, office buildings, stadiums, stores, restaurants and other installations where a number of fixtures are installed so that their utilization is similarly unrestricted.

**PUBLIC SWIMMING POOL.** A pool, other than a residential pool, that is intended to be used for swimming or bathing and is operated by an owner, lessee, operator, licensee or concessionaire, regardless of whether a fee is charged for use.

**PUBLIC WATER MAIN.** A water supply pipe for public utilization controlled by public authority.

**PUSH-FIT FITTING.** A mechanical fitting that joins pipes or tubes and achieves a seal by mating the pipe or tube into the fitting.

**QUICK-CLOSING VALVE.** A valve or faucet that closes automatically when released manually or that is controlled by a mechanical means for fast-action closing.

**RAINWATER.** Water from natural precipitation.

**[M] READY ACCESS.** That which enables a fixture, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel, door or similar obstruction and without the use of a portable ladder, step stool or similar device.

**[R] RECEPTOR.** A fixture or device that receives the discharge from indirect waste pipes.

**RECLAIMED WATER.** Nonpotable water that has been derived from the treatment of wastewater by a facility or system licensed or permitted to produce water meeting the jurisdiction’s water requirements for its intended uses. Also known as “re-cycled water.”

**REDUCED PRESSURE PRINCIPLE BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY.** A backflow prevention device consisting of two independently acting check valves, internally force-loaded to a normally closed position and separated by an intermediate chamber (or zone) in which there is an automatic relief means of venting to the atmosphere, internally loaded to a normally open position between two tightly closing shutoff valves and with a means for testing for tightness of the checks and opening of the relief means.

## DEFINITIONS

**[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL.** An individual who is registered or licensed to practice ~~professional architecture or engineering~~ their respective design profession, as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Design by a registered design professional is not required where exempt under ~~the registration~~ North Carolina general statutes or licensure laws.

### RELIEF VALVE.

**Pressure relief valve.** A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to relieve pressure automatically at the pressure at which such valve is set.

**Temperature and pressure relief (T&P) valve.** A combination relief valve designed to function as both a temperature relief and a pressure relief valve.

**Temperature relief valve.** A temperature-actuated valve designed to discharge automatically at the temperature at which such valve is set.

~~[R] RELIEF VALVE, VACUUM.~~ **Vacuum Relief valve.** A device to prevent excessive buildup of vacuum in a pressure vessel.

**RELIEF VENT.** A vent whose primary function is to provide circulation of air between drainage and vent systems.

**[RB] REPAIR.** The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

**RIM.** An unobstructed open edge of a fixture.

**RISER.** See ~~“Water pipe,”~~ “Water pipe, riser.”

**ROOF DRAIN.** A drain installed to receive water collecting on the surface of a roof and to discharge such water into a leader or a conductor.

**ROUGH-IN.** Parts of the plumbing system that are installed prior to the installation of fixtures. This includes drainage, water supply, vent piping and the necessary fixture supports and any fixtures that are built into the structure.

**[R] SANITARY SEWER.** A sewer that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and groundwater.

~~[R]~~ **SCUPPER.** An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

**SELF-CLOSING FAUCET.** A faucet containing a valve that automatically closes upon deactivation of the opening means.

**SEPARATOR.** See ~~“Interceptor,”~~ “Interceptor.”

**[R] SEPTIC TANK.** A water-tight receptor that receives the discharge of a building sanitary drainage system and is constructed so as to separate solids from the liquid, digest organic matter through a period of detention, and allow the liquids to discharge into the soil outside of the tank through a system of open joint or perforated piping or a seepage pit.

**SERVICE SINK.** A plumbing fixture capable of filling or empty mop buckets which incorporates a threaded hose connection.

**SEWAGE.** Any liquid waste containing animal or vegetable matter in suspension or solution, including liquids containing chemicals in solution.

**SEWAGE EJECTOR.** A device for lifting sewage by entraining the sewage in a high-velocity jet of steam, air or water.

**[R] SEWAGE PUMP.** A permanently installed mechanical device for removing sewage or liquid waste from a sump.

### SEWER.

**Building sewer.** See ~~“Building sewer,”~~ “Building sewer.”

**Public sewer.** That part of the drainage system of pipes, installed and maintained by a city, township, county, public utility company or other public entity, and located on public property, in the street or in an approved dedicated easement of public or community use.

## DEFINITIONS

**Sanitary sewer.** A *sewer* that carries sewage and excludes storm, surface and ground water.

**Storm sewer.** A *sewer* that conveys rainwater, surface water, subsurface water and similar liquid wastes.

**SLOPE.** The fall (pitch) of a line of pipe in reference to a horizontal plane. In drainage, the slope is expressed as the fall in units vertical per units horizontal (percent) for a length of pipe.

**SOIL STACK OR PIPE.** A pipe that conveys sewage containing fecal matter to the *building drain* or *building sewer*.

**SPILLPROOF VACUUM BREAKER.** An assembly consisting of one check valve force-loaded closed and an air-inlet vent valve force-loaded open to atmosphere, positioned downstream of the check valve, and located between and including two tightly closing shutoff valves and a test cock.

**STACK.** A general term for any vertical line of soil, waste, vent or inside conductor piping that extends through ~~at least~~not fewer than one story with or without offsets as directly as possible to its vent terminal.

**STACK VENT.** The extension of a soil or waste *stack* above the highest horizontal drain connected to the *stack*.

**STACK VENTING.** A method of venting a fixture or fixtures through the soil or waste *stack*.

### STERILIZER.

**Boiling type.** A boiling-type sterilizer is a fixture of a nonpressure type utilized for boiling instruments, utensils or other equipment for disinfection. These devices are portable or are connected to the plumbing system

**Instrument.** A device for the sterilization of various instruments.

**Pressure (autoclave).** A pressure vessel fixture designed to utilize steam under pressure for sterilizing.

**Pressure instrument washer sterilizer.** A pressure vessel fixture designed to both wash and sterilize instruments during the operating cycle of the fixture.

**Utensil.** A device for the sterilization of utensils as utilized in health care services.

**Water.** A device for sterilizing water and storing water.

**STERILIZER VENT.** A separate pipe or *stack*, indirectly connected to the building drainage system at the lower terminal, that receives the vapors from nonpressure sterilizers, or the exhaust vapors from pressure sterilizers, and conducts the vapors directly to the open air. Also called vapor, steam, atmospheric or exhaust vent.

**STORM DRAIN.** See ~~“Drainage system,”~~ “Drainage system,” storm.”

**STORM WATER.** Natural precipitation, including snow-melt, that has contacted a surface at or below grade.

**[A] STRUCTURE.** That which is built or ~~constructed thereof~~ constructed.

**SUBSOIL DRAIN.** A drain that collects subsurface water or seepage water and conveys such water to a place of disposal.

**SUMP.** A tank or pit that receives sewage or liquid waste, located below the normal grade of the gravity system and that must be emptied by mechanical means.

**SUMP PUMP.** An automatic water pump powered by an electric motor for the removal of drainage, except raw sewage, from a sump, pit or low point. ~~The pump is selected for the specific head and volume of the load and is usually operated by level controllers.~~

**SUMP PUMP, SINGLE POINT-OF-USE.** An automatic water pump powered by an electric motor for the removal of drainage, except raw sewage, from a single fixture trap. The pump is selected for the specific head and volume of the load and is usually operated by level controllers.

**SUMP VENT.** A vent from pneumatic sewage ejectors, or similar equipment, that terminates separately to the open air.

**SUPPORTS.** Devices for supporting and securing pipe, fixtures and equipment



## DEFINITIONS

**[R] SWEEP.** A cast-iron drainage fitting designed to provide a change in direction of a drain pipe of less than the angle specified by the amount necessary to establish the desired slope of the line. Sweeps provide a longer turning radius than bends and a less turbulent flow pattern.

**SWIMMING POOL.** ~~Any~~ A permanent or temporary structure, basin, chamber or tank containing an artificial body of water that is intended to be used for swimming, diving, diving or recreational bathing or wading and that is designed and manufactured or built to be connected to a circulation system and having a depth of 2 feet (610 mm) or more at any point. A swimming pool can be open to the public regardless of whether a fee is charged for its use or can be accessory to a residential setting where the pool is available only to the household and guests of the household.

**TEMPERED WATER.** Water having a temperature range between 85°F (29°C) and 110°F (43°C).

**~~[R]~~ TEMPERATURE- AND PRESSURE-RELIEF (T AND P) VALVE.** A combination relief valve designed to function as both a temperature-relief and pressure-relief valve.

**~~[R]~~ TEMPERATURE-RELIEF VALVE.** A temperature-actuated valve designed to discharge automatically at the temperature at which it is set.

**THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY.** An *approved* agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer's quality control system.

**THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED.** Certification obtained by the manufacturer indicating that the function and performance characteristics of a product or material have been determined by testing and ongoing surveillance by an *approved third-party certification agency*. Assertion of certification is in the form of identification in accordance with the requirements of the *third-party certification agency*.

**TOILET ROOM.** A room ~~containing a~~ containing, not less than one water closet and ~~frequently a~~ one lavatory, but not a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

**TRAP.** A fitting or device that provides a liquid seal to prevent the emission of *sewer* gases without materially affecting the flow of sewage or wastewater through the trap.

**[R] TRAP ARM.** That portion of a *fixture drain* between a trap weir and the vent fitting.

**[R] TRAP PRIMER.** A device or system of piping to maintain a water seal in a trap, typically installed where infrequent use of the trap would result in evaporation of the trap seal, such as floor drains.

**~~[R]~~ TRAP SEAL.** ~~The trap seal is the maximum vertical depth of liquid that a trap will retain, measured between the crown distance between the~~ weir and the top of the dip of the trap.

**TRAVEL DISTANCE, PLUMBING FIXTURE ACCESS.** Travel distance shall be measured from the most remote point of each room, area or space along the natural, unobstructed and accessible path of horizontal and vertical travel to the entrance to the nearest *toilet room* containing *plumbing fixtures* required to serve the room, area or space.

**UNSTABLE GROUND.** Earth that does not provide a uniform bearing for the barrel of the *sewer* pipe between the joints at the bottom of the pipe trench.

**VACUUM.** Any pressure less than that exerted by the atmosphere.

**VACUUM BREAKER.** A device that prevents back-siphonage of water by admitting atmospheric pressure through ports to the discharge side of the device.

**VENT PIPE.** See ~~"Vent system."~~ "Vent system."

**VENT STACK.** A vertical vent pipe installed primarily for the purpose of providing circulation of air to and from any part of the drainage system.

**VENT SYSTEM.** A pipe or pipes installed to provide a flow of air to or from a plumbing drainage system, or to provide a circulation of air within such system to protect trap seals from siphonage and backpressure.

**VERTICAL PIPE.** Any pipe or fitting that makes an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) or more with the horizontal.

## DEFINITIONS

**WALL-HUNG WATER CLOSET.** A wall-mounted water closet installed in such a way that the fixture does not touch the floor.

**WASTE.** ~~Liquid-borne waste~~ The discharge from any fixture, appliance, area or appurtenance that does not contain fecal matter.

**WASTE PIPE OR STACK.** Piping that conveys only liquid sewage not containing fecal material.

**WASTE RECEPTOR.** A floor sink, standpipe, hub drain or floor drain that receives the discharge of one or more indirect waste pipes.

**WATER COOLER.** A drinking fountain that incorporates a means of reducing the temperature of the water supplied to it from the potable water distribution system.

**WATER DISPENSER.** A plumbing fixture that is manually controlled by the user for the purpose of dispensing potable drinking water into a receptacle such as a cup, glass or bottle. Such fixture is connected to the potable water distribution system of the premises. This definition also includes a free-standing apparatus for the same purpose that is not connected to the potable water distribution system and that is supplied with potable water from a container, bottle or reservoir.

~~[R]~~ **WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.** Piping that conveys water from the service to the plumbing fixtures, *appliances*, appurtenances, *equipment*, devices or other systems served, including fittings and control valves.

**WATER-HAMMER ARRESTOR.** A device utilized to absorb the pressure surge (water hammer) that occurs when water flow is suddenly stopped in a water supply system.

**[M] WATER HEATER.** Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable ~~hot water~~ hot water distribution system.

**WATER MAIN.** A water supply pipe or system of pipes, installed and maintained by a city, township, county, public utility company or other public entity, on public property, in the street or in an approved dedicated easement of public or community use.

**WATER OUTLET.** A discharge opening through which water is supplied to a fixture, into the atmosphere, such as a hose bibb (except into an open tank that is part of the water supply system), to a boiler or heating system, or to any devices or equipment that require water to operate but are not part of the plumbing system.

### **WATER PIPE.**

**Riser.** A water supply pipe that extends one full story or more to convey water to *branches* or to a group of fixtures.

**Water distribution pipe.** A pipe within the structure or on the premises that conveys water from the water service pipe, or from the meter when the meter is at the structure, to the points of utilization.

**Water service pipe.** The pipe from the water main or other source of potable water supply, or from the meter when the meter is at the public right of way, to the water distribution system of the building served. Water service pipe shall terminate 5 feet (1524 mm) outside the foundation wall.

**WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM.** The water service pipe, water distribution pipes, and the necessary connecting pipes, fittings, control valves and all appurtenances in or adjacent to the structure or premises.

**WEIGHTED AVERAGE LEAD CONTENT.** The weighted average lead content of a pipe, pipe fitting, plumbing fitting, or fixture shall be calculated by using the following formula: For each wetted component, the percentage of lead in the component shall be multiplied by the ratio of the wetted surface area of that component to the total wetted surface area of the entire product to arrive at the weighted percentage of lead of the component. The weighted percentage of lead of each wetted component shall be added together, and the sum of these wetted percentages shall constitute the weighted average lead content of the product. For lead content of materials that are provided as a range, the maximum content of the range shall be used.

**WELL.** ~~Deleted.~~ (Deleted)

**WET VENT.** A vent that receives the discharge of wastes from other fixtures.

## DEFINITIONS

**WHIRLPOOL BATHTUB.** A plumbing appliance consisting of a bathtub fixture that is equipped and fitted with a circulating piping system designed to accept, circulate and discharge bathtub water upon each use.

**YARD HYDRANT.** A ~~freeze proof~~ freeze proof yard hydrant is an outdoor water supply outlet that has a valve and outlet above ground and a drain opening below the frost level.

**YOKE VENT.** A pipe connecting upward from a soil or waste *stack* to a vent *stack* for the purpose of preventing pressure changes in the *stacks*.

DRAFT

## CHAPTER 3

# GENERAL REGULATIONS

### SECTION 301 GENERAL

**301.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the general regulations regarding the installation of plumbing not specific to other chapters.

**301.2 System installation.** Plumbing shall be installed with due regard to preservation of the strength of structural members and prevention of damage to walls and other surfaces through fixture usage.

**301.3 Connections to drainage system.** Plumbing fixtures, drains, appurtenances and appliances used to receive or discharge liquid waste or sewage shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises, in accordance with the requirements of this code. This section shall not be construed to prevent indirect waste systems required by Chapter 8.

**Exception:** All drain, waste and vent piping associated with gray water or rain water recycling systems shall be installed in compliance with this code.

**301.4 Connections to water supply.** Every plumbing fixture, device or appliance requiring or using water for its proper operation shall be directly or indirectly connected to the water supply system in accordance with the provisions of this code.

**301.5 Pipe, tube and fitting sizes.** See Chapter 2, Definitions, "Pipe sizes."

**301.6 Prohibited locations.** Plumbing systems shall not be located in an elevator shaft or in an elevator equipment room.

**Exception:** Floor drains, sumps and sump pumps shall be permitted at the base of the shaft, provided that they are indirectly connected to the plumbing system and comply with Section ~~1003.4~~1003.4, or other approved means of disposal.

**301.7 Conflicts.** Where conflicts between this code and the conditions of the listing or the manufacturer's installation instructions occur, the provisions of this code apply.

**Exception:** Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the equipment or appliance or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

### SECTION 302 EXCLUSION OF MATERIALS DETRIMENTAL TO THE SEWER SYSTEM

**302.1 Detrimental or dangerous materials.** Disposal of these materials shall be done in accordance with the requirements of the NC general statutes and local ordinances. Ashes, cinders or rags; flammable, poisonous or explosive liquids or gases; oil, grease or any other insoluble material capable of obstructing, damaging or overloading the building drainage or *sewer* system, or capable of interfering with the normal operation of the sewage treatment processes or private disposal system, shall not be deposited into such systems.

**302.2 Industrial wastes.** Waste products from manufacturing or industrial operations shall not be introduced into the ~~pub-~~  
~~lie~~public *sewer* until it has been determined by the code official or other authority having jurisdiction that the introduction thereof will not damage the public *sewer* system or interfere with the functioning of the sewage treatment plant.

### SECTION 303 MATERIALS

**303.1 Identification.** Each length of pipe and each pipe fitting, trap, fixture, material and device utilized in a plumbing system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer and any markings required by the applicable referenced standards. Nipples created from the cutting and threading of approved pipe shall not be required to be identified.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**Exception:** Where the manufacturer identification cannot be marked on pipe fittings and pipe nipples because of the small size of such fittings, the identification shall be printed on the item packaging or on documentation provided with the item.

**303.2 Installation of materials.** ~~All materials~~ Materials used shall be installed in strict accordance with the standards under which the materials are accepted and *approved*. In the absence of such installation procedures, the manufacturer's instructions shall be followed. Where the requirements of referenced standards or manufacturer's installation instructions do not conform to minimum provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**303.3 Plastic pipe, fittings and components.** Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be third-party certified as conforming to NSF 14.

**303.4 Third-party certification.** All plumbing products and materials required by the code to be in compliance with a referenced standard shall be listed by a ~~third-party certification agency~~ third-party certification agency as complying with the referenced standards. Products and materials shall be identified in accordance with Section 303.1.

**303.5 Cast-iron soil pipe, fittings and components.** Cast-iron soil pipes and fittings, and the couplings used to join these products together, shall be third-party listed and labeled.

## SECTION 304 RODENTPROOFING

**304.1 General.** Plumbing systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 304.2 through 304.4 and the *North Carolina Building Code*, Appendix ~~HF~~ to prevent rodents from entering structures.

**304.2 Strainer plates.** ~~All strainer~~ Strainer plates on drain inlets shall be designed and installed so that all openings are not greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in least dimension.

**304.3 Meter boxes.** Deleted.

**304.4 Openings for pipes.** In or on structures where openings have been made in walls, floors or ceilings for the passage of pipes the annular space between the pipe and the sides of the opening shall be sealed with materials compatible with the piping materials and locations by use of collars or caulking materials or gasket systems.

## SECTION 305 PROTECTION OF PIPES AND PLUMBING SYSTEM COMPONENTS

**305.1 Corrosion.** Pipes passing through concrete or cinder walls and floors or other corrosive material shall be protected against external corrosion by a protective sheathing or wrapping or other means that will withstand any reaction from the lime and acid of concrete, cinder or other corrosive material. Sheathing or wrapping shall allow for movement including expansion and contraction of piping. The wall thickness of the material shall be not less than 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).

**305.2 Stress and strain.** Piping in a plumbing system shall be installed so as to prevent strains and stresses that exceed the structural strength of the pipe. Where necessary, provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

**305.3 Pipes through or under footings or foundation walls.**

Any pipe that passes within 12 inches (305 mm) of the bottom of the footing or through a foundation wall shall be provided with a relieving arch or a pipe sleeve. Pipe sleeves for foundation walls shall be built into the foundation wall. The sleeve shall be two pipe sizes greater than the pipe passing through the wall. Piping shall not be run under pier footing (refer to Section 307) Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes shall be filled or tightly sealed in an *approved* manner. Annular spaces between sleeves and pipes in fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be filled or tightly sealed in accordance with the *North Carolina Building Code*. Only sleeves through foundation or exterior building walls shall be sealed on both sides.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**305.4 Freezing.** Water pipes installed in a wall or ceiling exposed to the exterior shall be located on the heated side of the wall insulation. ~~Water, soil and condensate waste pipes shall not be installed outside of a building, in unconditioned attics, unconditioned utility rooms, or in any other place subjected to freezing temperatures unless~~ building. When soil and waste piping is installed under a non-enclosed area of a building or structure, freeze protections shall be installed at the discretion of the authority having jurisdiction. When installed in unconditioned utility rooms, or in the building in any other place subjected to freezing temperatures, adequate provision ~~is~~ shall be made to protect such pipes from freezing by a minimum of R6.5 insulation determined at 75°F (24°C) in accordance with ASTM C177 or ~~heat~~ heat, or both.

Exterior water supply system piping shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the frost line and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade.

**Note:** These provisions are minimum requirements, which have been found suitable for normal weather conditions. Abnormally low temperatures for extended periods may require additional provisions to prevent freezing.

**305.4.1 Frost protection.** No traps of soil or waste pipe shall be installed or permitted outside of a building, or concealed in outside walls or in any place where they may be subjected to freezing temperatures, unless ~~approved provisions are~~ adequate provision is made to protect them from freezing.

**305.4.2 Sewer depth.** *Building sewers* that connect to private sewage disposal systems shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below finished grade at the point of septic tank connection. *Building sewers* shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76.2 mm) below grade.

**305.5 Waterproofing of openings.** Joints at the roof and around vent pipes shall be made watertight by the use of lead, copper, galvanized steel, aluminum, plastic or other *approved* flashings or flashing material. Exterior wall openings shall be made ~~water tight~~ watertight.

**305.6 Protection against physical damage.** In concealed locations where piping, other than cast iron or galvanized steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than ~~1½ inches (38 mm)~~ 1¼ inches (32 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by steel shield plates. Such shield plates shall have a thickness of not less than 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage). Such plates shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

**305.7 Protection of components of plumbing system.** Components of a plumbing system installed along alleyways, driveways, parking garages or other locations exposed to damage shall be recessed into the wall or otherwise protected in an *ap-proved* manner.

**Exception:** ~~One and two family dwellings and townhouses.~~

## SECTION 306 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL

**306.1 Support of piping.** Buried piping shall be supported throughout its entire length.

**306.2 Trenching and bedding.** Where trenches are excavated such that the bottom of the trench forms the bed for the pipe, solid and continuous load-bearing support shall be provided between joints. Bell holes, hub holes and coupling holes shall be provided at points where the pipe is joined. Such pipe shall not be supported on blocks to grade. In instances where the material manufacturer's installation instructions are more restrictive than those prescribed by the code, the material shall be installed in accordance with the more restrictive requirement.

**306.2.1 ~~Overexcavation.~~Over-excavation.** Where trenches are excavated below the installation level of the pipe such that the bottom of the trench does not form the bed for the pipe, the trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with sand or fine gravel placed in layers not greater than 6 inches (152 mm) in depth and such backfill shall be compacted after each placement.

**306.2.2 Rock removal.** Where rock is encountered in trenching, the rock shall be removed to not less than 3 inches (76 mm) below the installation level of the bottom of the pipe, and the trench shall be backfilled to the installation level of the bottom

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

of the pipe with sand tamped in place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints. The pipe, including the joints, shall not rest on rock at any point.

**306.2.3 Soft load-bearing materials.** If soft materials of poor load-bearing quality are found at the bottom of the trench, stabilization shall be achieved by ~~overexcavating~~over-excavating not less than two pipe diameters and backfilling to the installation level of the bottom of the pipe with fine gravel, crushed stone or a concrete foundation. The concrete foundation shall be bedded with sand tamped into place so as to provide uniform load-bearing support for the pipe between joints.

**306.2.4 Tracer Wire.** For plastic sewer piping, an insulated copper tracer wire or other *approved* conductor shall be installed adjacent to and over the full length of the piping. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate at the cleanout between the building drain and the building sewer. The tracer wire shall be not less than 14 AWG and the insulation type shall be listed for direct burial.

**306.3 Backfilling.** Backfill shall be free from discarded construction material and debris. Loose earth free from rocks, broken concrete and frozen chunks shall be placed in the trench in 6-inch (152 mm) layers and tamped in place until the crown of the pipe is covered by 12 inches (305 mm) of tamped earth. The backfill under and beside the pipe shall be compacted for pipe support. Backfill shall be brought up evenly on both sides of the pipe so that the pipe remains aligned. In instances where the manufacturer's instructions for materials are more restrictive than those prescribed by the code, the material shall be installed in accordance with the more restrictive requirement.

**306.4 Tunneling.** Where pipe is to be installed by tunneling, jacking or a combination of both, the pipe shall be protected from damage during installation and from subsequent uneven loading. Where earth tunnels are used, adequate supporting structures shall be provided to prevent future settling or caving.

## SECTION 307 STRUCTURAL SAFETY

**307.1 General.** In the process of installing or repairing any part of a plumbing and drainage installation, the finished floors, walls, ceilings, tile work or any other part of the building or premises that must be changed or replaced shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the requirements of the ~~International~~North Carolina Building Code.

**307.2 Cutting, notching or bored holes.** A framing member shall not be cut, notched or bored in excess of limitations specified in the ~~International~~North Carolina Building Code~~Code~~, or Appendix C in this code.

**307.3 Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resistance-rated assemblies.** Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and assemblies required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected in accordance with the ~~International~~North Carolina Building Code.

**[BS] 307.4 Alterations to trusses.** Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member (~~e.g., (such as HVAC equipment, equipment and water heater) heaters~~) shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

**307.5 Protection of footings.** Trenching installed parallel to footings and walls shall not extend into the bearing plane of a footing or wall. The upper boundary of the bearing plane is a line that extends downward, at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from horizontal, from the outside bottom edge of the footing or wall.

**307.6 Piping materials exposed within plenums.** Piping materials exposed within plenums shall comply with the provisions of the *International Mechanical Code*.

## SECTION 308 PIPING SUPPORT

**308.1 General.** Plumbing piping shall be supported in accordance with this section.

**308.2 Piping seismic supports.** Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the ~~building code,~~North Carolina Building Code, plumbing piping ~~supports~~supports, anchorage, and bracing shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with Chapter 16 of the International North Carolina Building Code.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**308.3 Materials.** Hangers, anchors and supports shall support the piping and the contents of the piping. Hangers and strapping material shall be of *approved* material that will not promote galvanic action.

**308.4 Structural attachment.** Hangers and anchors shall be attached to the building construction in an *approved* manner.

**308.5 Interval of support.** Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Table 308.5.

**Exception:** The interval of support for piping systems designed to provide for expansion/contraction shall conform to the engineered design in accordance with Section 316.1.

**TABLE 308.5  
HANGER SPACING**

| PIPING MATERIAL  | MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING<br>(feet) | MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING<br>(feet) |
|--|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) pipe                                     | 4                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Aluminum tubing  | 10                                   | 15                                 |
| Brass pipe   | 10                                   | 10                                 |
| Cast-iron pipe   | 5 <sup>a</sup>                       | 15                                 |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) pipe and tubing, 1 inch and smaller      | 3                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) pipe and tubing, 1¼ inches and larger    | 4                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe  | 12                                   | 10                                 |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing, 1¼-inch diameter and smaller                    | 6                                    | 10                                 |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing, 1½-inch diameter and larger                     | 10                                   | 10                                 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) pipe, 1 inch and smaller                       | 2.67 (32 inches)                     | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) pipe, 1¼ inches and larger                     | 4                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe | 2.67 (32 inches)                     | 4                                  |
| Lead pipe  | Continuous                           | 4                                  |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pipe                             | 2.67 (32 inches)                     | 4                                  |
| Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) pipe, 1 inch and smaller            | 2.67 (32 inches)                     | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) pipe, 1¼ inches and larger          | 4                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller                          | 2.67 (32 inches)                     | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1¼ inches and larger                        | 4                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe  | 4                                    | 10 <sup>b</sup>                    |
| Stainless steel drainage systems   | 10                                   | 10                                 |
| Steel pipe   | 12                                   | 15                                 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.

b. For sizes 2 inches and smaller, a guide shall be installed midway between required vertical supports. Such guides shall prevent pipe movement in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the pipe.



## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**308.6 Sway bracing.** ~~Rigid support sway bracing shall be provided at changes in direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) for pipe sizes 4 inches (102 mm) and larger.~~ Where horizontal pipes 4 inches (102 mm) and larger convey drainage or waste, and where a pipe fitting in that piping changes the flow direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad), rigid bracing or other rigid support arrangements shall be installed to resist movement of the upstream pipe in the direction of pipe flow. A change of flow direction into a vertical pipe shall not require the upstream pipe to be braced.

**308.7 Anchorage.** Anchorage shall be provided to restrain drainage piping from axial movement.

**308.7.1 Location.** For plastic pipe sizes greater than 6 inches (152 mm), and other pipe sizes greater than 4 inches (102 mm), restraints shall be provided for drain pipes at all changes in direction and at all changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes. Braces, blocks, rodding, backfilling and other suitable methods as specified by the coupling manufacturer shall be utilized.

**308.8 Expansion joint fittings.** Expansion joint fittings shall be used only where necessary to provide for expansion and contraction of the pipes. Expansion joint fittings shall be of the typical material suitable for use with the type of piping in which such fittings are installed.

**308.9 Parallel water distribution systems.** Piping bundles for manifold systems shall be supported in accordance with Table 308.5. Support at changes in direction shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. ~~Hot and cold water piping shall not be grouped in the same bundle.~~ Where hot water piping is bundled with cold water piping, hot water piping shall be insulated in accordance with Section 607.5.

**308.10 Thermal expansion tanks.** A thermal expansion tank shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Thermal expansion tanks shall not be supported by the piping that connects to such tanks.

~~308.10~~ **308.11 Stacks.** Bases of stacks shall be supported by the building structure, virgin or compacted earth, or other material suitable to support the weight of the piping.

## SECTION 309 FLOOD HAZARD RESISTANCE

**309.1 General.** Plumbing systems and equipment in structures erected in *flood hazard areas* shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *International Building Code*.

**[BS] 309.2 Flood hazard.** For structures located in *flood hazard areas*, the following systems and equipment shall be located and installed as required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code*.

1. Water service pipes.
2. Deleted.
3. Deleted.
4. Sanitary drainage piping.
5. Storm drainage piping.
6. Manhole covers shall be sealed, except where elevated to or above the *design flood elevation*.
7. Other plumbing fixtures, faucets, fixture fittings, piping systems and equipment.
8. Water heaters.
9. Vents and vent systems.

**Exception:** The systems listed in this section are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment, provided that the systems are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within their components and the systems are constructed to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**[BS] 309.3 Coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.** Structures located in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones shall meet the requirements of Section 309.2. The plumbing systems, pipes and fixtures shall not be mounted on or penetrate through walls intended to break away under flood loads.

### SECTION 310 WASHROOM AND TOILET ROOM REQUIREMENTS

**310.1 Light and ventilation.** Washrooms and toilet rooms shall be illuminated and ventilated in accordance with the *International Building Code* and *International Mechanical Code*.

**310.2 Location of fixtures and compartments.** The location of plumbing fixtures and the requirements for compartments and partitions shall be in accordance with ~~Section 405~~ all Sections of 405.3.

**310.3 Interior finish.** Interior finish surfaces of toilet rooms shall comply with the *International Building Code*.

### SECTION 311 TOILET FACILITIES FOR WORKERS

**311.1 General.** Toilet facilities shall be provided for construction workers in accordance with the table below and such facilities shall be maintained in a sanitary condition. Construction worker toilet facilities of the ~~non-sewer~~ non-sewer type shall conform to ANSI Z4.3.

| <del>NUMBER OF EMPLOY-<br/>EES</del> <u>Number of Employ-<br/>ees</u> | <del>MINIMUM NUMBER OF FACILITIES</del> <u>Minimum<br/>Number of Facilities</u> |
|---|---|
| Less than 20  | 1 toilet  |
| 20 to 200   | 1 toilet & 1 urinal per 40 workers  |
| More than 200   | 1 toilet & urinal per 50 workers  |

There shall be at least one facility for every two contiguous construction sites. Such facilities may be portable, enclosed, chemically treated, tank-tight units. Portable toilets shall be enclosed, screened and weatherproofed with internal latches.

Temporary toilet facilities need not be provided on site for crews on a job site for no more than one working day and having transportation readily available to toilet facilities.

### SECTION 312 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

**312.1 Required tests.** The permit holder shall make the applicable tests prescribed in Sections 312.2 through 312.10 to determine compliance with the provisions of this code. The permit holder shall give reasonable advance notice to the code official when the plumbing work is ready for tests. The equipment, material, power and labor necessary for the inspection and test shall be furnished by the permit holder and the permit holder shall be responsible for determining that the work will withstand the test pressure prescribed in the following tests. All plumbing system piping shall be tested with either water or by air. After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, the entire drainage system shall be submitted to final tests. The code official shall require the removal of any cleanouts if necessary to ascertain whether the pressure has reached all parts of the system.

**312.1.1 Test gauges.** Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

**312.2 Drainage and vent water test.** A water test shall be applied to the drainage system within the building either in its entirety or in sections. If applied to the entire system, all openings in the piping shall be tightly closed, except the highest opening, and the system shall be filled with water to the point of overflow. If the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be tightly plugged except the highest openings of the section under test, and each section shall be filled with water, but ~~no section~~ sections shall not be tested with less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water. In testing successive sections, ~~at least~~ not less than the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the next preceding section shall be tested so that no joint or pipe in the building, except the uppermost 10 feet (3048 mm) of the system, shall have been submitted to a test of less than a 10-foot (3048 mm) head of water. This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. The system shall then be tight at all points.

**Exception:** ~~Rough plumbing testing for one- and two-family dwellings shall be as specified above except the water level shall be a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest drainage fitting. Under slab piping systems shall be tested with a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) of head.~~

**312.3 Drainage and vent air test.** An air test shall be made by forcing air into the system until there is a uniform gauge pressure of 5 psi (34.5 kPa) or sufficient to balance a 10-inch (254 mm) column of mercury. This pressure shall be held for a test period of not less than 15 minutes. Any adjustments to the test pressure required because of changes in ambient temperatures or the seating of gaskets shall be made prior to the beginning of the test period.

~~Plumbing~~ **312.4 Drainage and vent final test.** After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, their connections shall be tested and proved gas tight or water tight as follows:

1. Water tightness. Each fixture shall be filled and then drained. Traps and fixture connections shall be proven water tight by visual inspection.
2. Gas tightness. Where required by the local administrative authority, a final test for gas tightness of the DWV system shall be made by the smoke or peppermint test as follows:
  - 2.1. Smoke test. Introduce a pungent, thick smoke into the system. When the smoke appears at vent terminals, such terminals shall be sealed and a pressure equivalent to a 1-inch water column (249 Pa) shall be applied and maintained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes.
  - 2.2. Peppermint test. Introduce 2 ounces (59 mL) of oil of peppermint into the system. Add 10 quarts (9464 mL) of hot water and seal the vent terminals. The odor of peppermint shall not be detected at any trap or other point in the system.

**312.5 Water supply system test.** Upon completion of a section of or the entire water distribution system, the system, or portion completed, shall be tested and proved tight under a water ~~or~~ pressure not less than the working pressure of the system; or, by an air test of not less than 100 psi (688 kPa). This pressure shall be held for not less than 15 minutes. Repaired sections of existing water systems shall be tested at existing operating pressure. The water utilized for tests shall be obtained from a potable source of supply. The required tests shall be performed in accordance with this ~~section and Section 107-section.~~

**312.6 Gravity sewer test.** Deleted.

**312.7 Forced sewer test.** Deleted.

**312.8 Storm drainage system test.** *Storm drain* systems within a building shall be tested by water or air in accordance with Section 312.2 or 312.3.

**312.9 Shower liner ~~or pan~~ test.** Where shower floors and receptors are made water tight by the application of materials required by Section ~~417.5.2, 421.5.2,~~ the completed liner installation shall be tested. The pipe from the shower drain shall be plugged water tight for the test. The floor and receptor area shall be filled with potable water to a depth of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) measured at the threshold. Where a threshold of ~~at least~~ 2 inches (51 mm) high or greater does not exist, a temporary threshold shall be constructed to retain the test water in the lined floor or receptor area to a level not less than 2 inches (51 mm) deep measured at the threshold. The water shall be retained for a test period of not less than 15 minutes, and there shall not be evidence of leakage.

**312.10 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies.** Deleted.

**312.10.1 Inspections.** Deleted.

**312.10.2 Testing.** Deleted.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

### SECTION 313 EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCIES

**313.1 General.** Equipment efficiencies shall be in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

### SECTION 314 CONDENSATE DISPOSAL

**[M] 314.1 Approved location.** Approved location shall be in accordance with the *North Carolina Mechanical Code*.

**[M] 314.1.1 Identification.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2 Evaporators and cooling coils.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.1 Condensate disposal.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.1.1 Condensate discharge.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.3 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.3.1 Water-level monitoring devices.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.3.2 Appliance, equipment and insulation in pans.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.3.3 Identification.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.4 Traps.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.4.1 Ductless mini-split system traps.** Deleted.

**[M] 314.2.5 Drain line maintenance.** Deleted.

### SECTION 315 PENETRATIONS

**315.1 Sealing of annular spaces.** The annular space between the outside of a pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or between the outside of a pipe and an opening in a building envelope wall, floor, or ceiling assembly penetrated by a pipe shall be sealed in an *approved* manner with caulking material, foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and building materials in contact with the sealing materials. Annular spaces created by pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of such assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.

### SECTION 316 ALTERNATIVE ENGINEERED DESIGN

**316.1 Alternative engineered design.** The design, documentation, inspection, testing and approval of an *alternative engineered design* plumbing system shall comply with Sections 316.1.1 through 316.1.6.

**316.1.1 Design criteria.** An *alternative engineered design* shall conform to the intent of the provisions of this code and shall provide an equivalent level of quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Material, equipment or components shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**316.1.2 Submittal.** The registered design professional shall indicate on the permit application that the plumbing system is an *alternative engineered design*. The permit and permanent permit records shall indicate that an *alternative engineered design* was part of the *approved* installation.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**316.1.3 Technical data.** The registered design professional shall submit sufficient technical data to substantiate the proposed *alternative engineered design* and to prove that the performance meets the intent of this code.

**316.1.4 Construction documents.** The registered design professional shall submit to the code official two complete sets of signed and sealed construction documents for the *alternative engineered design*. The construction documents shall include floor plans and a riser diagram of the work. Where appropriate, the construction documents shall indicate the direction of flow, all pipe sizes, grade of horizontal piping, loading and location of fixtures and appliances.

**316.1.5 Design approval.** Where the code official determines that the *alternative engineered design* conforms to the intent of this code, the plumbing system shall be *approved*. If the *alternative engineered design* is not *approved*, the code official shall notify the registered design professional in writing, stating the reasons thereof.

**316.1.6 Inspection and testing.** The *alternative engineered design* shall be tested and inspected in accordance with the requirements of Sections ~~407~~108 and 312.

## SECTION 317

### CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS DETECTION

~~**317.1 Carbon monoxide alarms.** In new construction, one and two family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an approved carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.~~

~~**317.2 Where required existing dwellings.** In existing dwellings, where interior alterations, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 317.1.~~

~~**Exception:** Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel fire appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling, are exempt from the requirements of this section.~~

~~**317.3 Alarm requirements.** The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug in, or hard wired alarms are acceptable for use.~~

**317.1 General.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 317.1.1 through 317.6. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in existing buildings in accordance with NCGS 143-138(b2) and applicable sections of the *International Existing Building Code*.

**317.1.1 Where required.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2, I and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 317.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 317.1.2 through 317.1.6 exist.

**317.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

**317.1.3 Fuel-burning forced-air furnaces.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

**Exception:** Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an *approved* location.

**317.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

**Exceptions:**

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms without communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit* or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in one of the following locations:
  - 2.1. In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit* or classroom.
  - 2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

**317.1.5 Private garages.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

### Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms without communicating openings between the private garage and the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit* or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.
3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an *open-ended corridor*.
4. Where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a private garage and *dwelling units, sleeping units* or classrooms.

**317.1.6 Exempt garages.** For determining compliance with Section 317.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code* or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the *International Building Code* shall not be considered a private garage.

**317.2 Locations.** Where required by Section 317.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 317.2.1 through 317.2.3.

**317.2.1 Dwelling units.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *dwelling units* outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

**317.2.2 Sleeping units.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *sleeping units*.

### Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit* where the *sleeping unit* or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced-air furnace.
2. In Group I-3, carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit*.

**317.2.3 Group E occupancies.** Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

**Exception:** Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 or less.

**317.3 Carbon monoxide detection.** Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 317.1 through 317.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 317.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 317.5.

**317.4 Carbon monoxide alarms.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 317.4.1 through 317.4.4.

## GENERAL REGULATIONS

**317.4.1 Power source.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.
2. In A-2 occupancies the carbon monoxide detector shall be permitted to be battery-powered.

**317.4.2 Listings.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2034.

**317.4.3 Locations.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall only be installed in *dwelling units* and in *sleeping units*. They shall not be installed in locations where the code requires carbon monoxide detectors to be used.

**317.4.4 Combination alarms.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 217 and UL 2034.

**317.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems.** Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 317.5.1 through 317.5.3.

**317.5.1 General.** Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2075.

**317.5.2 Locations.** Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 317.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

**317.5.3 Combination detectors.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided that they are *listed* in accordance with UL 268 and UL 2075.

**317.6 Maintenance.** Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

**317.6.1 Enclosed parking garages.** Carbon monoxide and nitrogen dioxide detectors installed in enclosed parking garages in accordance with Section 404.1 of the *International Mechanical Code* shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing. Detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

## CHAPTER 4

# FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

### SECTION 401 GENERAL

**401.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern the materials, design and installation of plumbing fixtures, faucets and fixture fittings in accordance with the type of *occupancy*, and shall provide for the minimum number of fixtures for various types of occupancies.

**401.2 Prohibited fixtures and connections.** Water closets having a concealed trap seal or an unventilated space or having walls that are not thoroughly washed at each discharge in accordance with ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 shall be prohibited. Any water closet that permits siphonage of the contents of the bowl back into the tank shall be prohibited. Trough urinals shall be prohibited.

**401.3 Water conservation.** The maximum water flow rates and flush volume for plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings shall comply with Section 604.4.

### SECTION 402 FIXTURE MATERIALS

**402.1 Quality of fixtures.** Plumbing fixtures shall be constructed of *approved* materials, with smooth, impervious surfaces, free from defects and concealed fouling surfaces, and shall conform to standards cited in this code. ~~All porcelain~~ Porcelain enameled surfaces on plumbing fixtures shall be acid resistant.

**402.2 Materials for specialty fixtures.** Materials for specialty fixtures not otherwise covered in this code shall be of stainless steel, soapstone, chemical stoneware or plastic, or shall be lined with lead, copper-base alloy, nickel-copper alloy, corrosion-resistant steel or other material especially suited to the application for which the fixture is intended.

**402.3 Sheet copper.** Sheet copper for general applications shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall not weigh less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m<sup>2</sup>).

**402.4 Sheet lead.** Sheet lead for pans shall not weigh less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) and shall be coated with an asphalt paint or other *approved* coating.

### SECTION 403 MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

**403.1 Minimum number of fixtures.** In new construction or building additions and in changes of occupancy as defined in the *North Carolina Building Code*, plumbing fixtures shall be provided for the type of occupancy and in the minimum number shown in Table 403.1 based on the actual use of the building or space. Uses not shown in Table 403.1 shall be considered individually by the code official. The number of occupants shall be determined by the *International Building Code*. Occupancy classification shall be determined in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

**403.1.1 Fixture calculations.** To determine the occupant load of each sex, the total occupant load shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the occupant load of each sex in accordance with Table 403.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 403.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple *occupancies*, such fractional numbers for each *occupancy* shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

#### Exceptions:

1. The total occupant load shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved* statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.



## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

2. In buildings that contain dwellings or sleeping units that have a pool dedicated to the residents, a percentage reduction of the total required fixtures provided for a pool and pool deck without bleachers and grandstands may be taken equal to the percentage of total residential units whose entries fall within a 500 foot horizontal travel distance of the pool deck. In multi-story structures, the residential units located not more than one story above or below the pool and pool deck may be included in the percentage. Travel from the pool to the required toilet facilities shall be on an accessible route.

3. Distribution of the sexes is not required where single-user toilet rooms and bathing room fixtures are provided in accordance with Section 403.1.2.

**TABLE 403.1**  
**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES<sup>a, p</sup>**  
(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)

| NO. | CLASSIFICATION   | OCCUPANCY        | DESCRIPTION   | WATER CLOSETS<br>(URINALS: SEE<br>SECTION 419.2) |              | LAVATORIES |        | BATHTUBS/<br>SHOWERS | DRINKING<br>FOUNTAIN<br>(SEE SEC-<br>TION 410) | OTHER             |
|-----|--|------------------|---|--|--------------|------------|--------|----------------------|--|-------------------|
|     |  |                  |   | MALE   | FE-<br>MALE  | MALE       | FEMALE |                      |  |                   |
| 1   | Assembly—<br>(see Sections<br>403.2, 403.3<br>and 403.3.3.2) | A-1 <sup>d</sup> | Theaters and other buildings<br>for the performing arts and<br>motion pictures  | 1 per 125  | 1 per<br>65  | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per 500                                      | 1 service<br>sink |
|     |  |                  | Theaters in K-12 schools  | 1 per 125  | 1 per<br>100 | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per 500                                      | 1 service<br>sink |
|     |  | A-2 <sup>d</sup> | Nightclubs, bars, taverns,<br>dance halls and buildings<br>for similar purposes | 1 per 40   | 1 per<br>40  | 1 per 75   |        | —                    | 1 per 500                                      | 1 service<br>sink |
|     |  |                  | Restaurants, banquet halls<br>and food courts                                   | 1 per 75   | 1 per<br>75  | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per 500                                      | 1 service<br>sink |
|     |  |                  | Cafeterias in K-12 schools  | 1 per 125  | 1 per<br>125 | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per 500                                      | 1 service<br>sink |

**TABLE 403.1—continued**

**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIX-  
TURES<sup>a, p</sup>**  
(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)

| NO.          | CLASSIFICATION   | OCCUPANCY        | DESCRIPTION  | WATER CLOSETS<br>(URINALS: SEE<br>SECTION 419.2) |              | LAVATORIES |        | BATHTUBS/<br>SHOWERS | DRINKING<br>FOUNTAIN<br>(SEE SEC-<br>TION 410) | OTHER             |
|--------------|--|------------------|--|--|--------------|------------|--------|----------------------|--|-------------------|
|              |  |                  |  | MALE   | FE-<br>MALE  | MALE       | FEMALE |                      |  |                   |
| 1<br>(cont.) | Assembly—<br>(see Sections<br>403.2, 403.3 and<br>403.3.3.2) | A-3 <sup>d</sup> | Auditoriums without<br>permanent seating, art<br>galleries, exhibition<br>halls, museums, lecture<br>halls, libraries, arcades<br>and gymnasiums | 1 per 125  | 1 per<br>65  | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per<br>500                                   | 1 service<br>sink |
|              |  |                  | Gymnasiums in K-12<br>schools <sup>i</sup>   | 1 per 125  | 1 per<br>100 | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per<br>500                                   | 1 service<br>sink |
|              |  |                  | Passenger terminals and<br>transportation facilities   | 1 per 500  | 1 per<br>500 | 1 per 750  |        | —                    | 1 per<br>1,000                                 | 1 service<br>sink |
|              |  |                  | Places of worship and<br>other religious services.<br>Including churches<br>without assembly halls <sup>e</sup>                                  | 1 per 150  | 1 per<br>75  | 1 per 200  |        | —                    | 1 per<br>1,000                                 | 1 service<br>sink |

**FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS**

|   |  |                |  |  |   |                                    |           |   |                        |                             |
|---|--|----------------|--|--|---|------------------------------------|-----------|---|------------------------|-----------------------------|
|   |  | A-4            | Coliseums, arenas, skating rinks, pools and tennis courts for indoor sporting events and activities  | 1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500 | 1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520 | 1 per 200                          | 1 per 150 | — | 1 per 1,000            | 1 service sink              |
|   |  | A-5            | Stadiums, amusement parks, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities <sup>k</sup>   | 1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500 | 1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520 | 1 per 200                          | 1 per 150 | — | 1 per 1,000            | 1 service sink              |
|   |  | K-12           | Stadiums, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities <sup>l,k</sup>  | 1 per 125  | 1 per 100   | 1 per 250                          | 1 per 200 | — | 1 per 1,000            |                             |
| 2 | Business (see Sections 403.2, 403.3 and 403.3.3.1) | B              | Buildings for the transaction of business, professional services, other services involving merchandise, office buildings, banks, light industrial and similar uses | 1 per 30 for the first 30 and 1 per 50 for the remainder exceeding 30        | 1 per 40 for the first 80 and 1 per 80 for the remainder exceeding 80       | —                                  | —         | — | 1 per 100 <sup>q</sup> | 1 service sink <sup>o</sup> |
| 3 | Educational <sup>i</sup>                           | E <sup>b</sup> | K-8, 9-12 Teacher/staff  | 1 per 25<br>1 per 30<br>1 per 30   | 1 per 25<br>1 per 25<br>1 per 25  | 1 per 60<br>1 per 100<br>1 per 100 | —         | — | 1 per 100              | —                           |

(continued)  
**TABLE 403.1 — continued**  
**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES\***  
(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)

| NO. | CLASSIFICATION         | OCCUPANCY   | DESCRIPTION  | WATER CLOSETS<br>(URINALS: SEE SECTION 419.2)  |        | LAVATORIES |        | BATHTUBS/<br>SHOWERS | DRINKING<br>FOUNTAIN<br>(SEE SECTION 410) | OTHER          |
|-----|------------------------|-------------|--|--|--------|------------|--------|----------------------|---|----------------|
|     |                        |             |  | MALE   | FEMALE | MALE       | FEMALE |                      |   |                |
| 4   | Factory and industrial | F-1 and F-2 | Structures in which occupants are engaged in work fabricating, assembly or processing of products or materials (see Section 403.3.1 for adjustments in occupant content) | 1 per 100  |        | 1 per 100  |        | (see Section 411)    | 1 per 400                                 | 1 service sink |
| 5   | Institutional          | I-1         | Residential care   | 1 per 10   |        | 1 per 10   |        | 1 per 8              |   |                |
|     |                        | I-2         | Hospitals and other healthcare facilities  | Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |        |            |        |                      |   |                |
|     |                        |             | - Employees <sup>b</sup>   | 1 per 25   |        | 1 per 35   |        | —                    | 1 per 100                                 | —              |
|     |                        |             | Visitors   | 1 per 75   |        | 1 per 100  |        | —                    | 1 per 500                                 | —              |

**FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS**

|   |  |     |  |  |                     |                     |  |   |
|---|--|-----|--|--|---------------------|---------------------|--|---|
|   |  | I-3 | Prisons <sup>b</sup>   | Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |                     |                     |  |   |
|   |  |     | Reformatories, detention centers, and correctional centers <sup>b</sup>          | Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |                     |                     |  |   |
|   |  |     | Employees <sup>b</sup>   | 1 per 25   | 1 per 35            | —                   | 1 per 100  | —   |
|   |  |     | Visitors   | 1 per 75   | 1 per 100           | —                   | 1 per 500  | —   |
|   |  | I-4 | Adult day care   | Fixture requirements are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |                     |                     |  |   |
|   |  |     | Child care <sup>b</sup>  | 1 per 15   | 1 per 25            | —                   | —  | —   |
|   |  |     | Employees  | 1 per 25   | 1 per 35            | —                   | 1 per 100  | —   |
|   |  |     | Visitors   | 1 per 75   | 1 per 100           | —                   | 1 per 500  | —   |
| 6 | Mercantile (see Sections 403.2, 403.3 and 403.3.3.2) | M   | Retail stores, service stations, shops, salesrooms, markets and shopping centers | 1 per 500  | 1 per 750           | —                   | 100 — 1,000<br>1 greater than 1,000 require 1 more for each additional 1,000 | 1 service sink <sup>a</sup>   |
| 7 | Residential  | R-1 | Hotels, motels, boarding houses (transient)                                      | 1 per sleeping unit  | 1 per sleeping unit | 1 per sleeping unit | —  | —   |
|   |  | R-2 | Dormitories, fraternities, sororities and boarding houses (not transient)        | 1 per 10   | 1 per 10            | 1 per 8             | 1 per 100  | —   |
|   |  | R-2 | Apartment house  | 1 per dwelling unit  | 1 per dwelling unit | 1 per dwelling unit | —  | 1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per 20 dwelling units |

(continued)  
**TABLE 403.1 —continued**  
**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES<sup>a</sup>**  
**(See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)**

| NO. | CLASSIFICATION      | OCCUPANCY | DESCRIPTION   | WATER CLOSETS (URINALS: SEE SECTION 419.2) |        | LAVATORIES          |        | BATHTUBS/SHOWERS    | DRINKING FOUNTAIN (SEE SECTION 410) | OTHER   |
|-----|---------------------|-----------|---|--|--------|---------------------|--------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|     |                     |           |   | MALE                                       | FEMALE | MALE                | FEMALE |                     |                                     |   |
| 7   | Residential (cont.) | R-3       | Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons                         | 1 per 10                                   |        | 1 per 10            |        | 1 per 8             | 1 per 100                           | 1 service sink  |
|     |                     | R-3       | One and two family dwellings and lodging houses with five or fewer guestrooms | 1 per dwelling unit                        |        | 1 per dwelling unit |        | 1 per dwelling unit | —                                   | 1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per dwelling unit |

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

|   |         |            |   |           |           |                    |           |                |
|---|---------|------------|---|-----------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|
|   |         | R-4        | Residential care/<br>unlicensed assisted-<br>living facilities  | 1 per 10  | 1 per 10  | 1 per 8            | —         | —              |
|   |         |            | Congregate living<br>facilities with 16 or<br>fewer persons   | 1 per 10  | 1 per 10  | 1 per 8            | 1 per 100 | 1 service sink |
| 8 | Storage | S-1<br>S-2 | Structures for the<br>storage of goods,<br>warehouses, store-<br>house and freight<br>depots. Low and<br>Moderate Hazard <sup>m,n</sup> | 1 per 100 | 1 per 100 | See<br>Section 411 | —         | —              |

- a. The fixtures shown are based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by the International Building Code. ———
- b. Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates, students or care recipients.
- c. A single-occupant toilet room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient sleeping units shall be permitted provided that each patient sleeping unit has direct access to the toilet room and provision for privacy for the toilet room user is provided.
- d. The occupant load for seasonal outdoor seating and entertainment areas shall be included when determining the minimum number of facilities required.
- e. The number of fixtures provided shall be based on either the capacity of the church sanctuary or the church educational building (including fellowship halls and multiple purpose rooms), whichever is larger. Remote buildings applying this footnote shall be a maximum of 300 feet (91.44 m) exterior travel distance to the nearest entrance of the building containing required *plumbing fixtures* and the total *plumbing fixture access travel distance* shall comply with Section 403.3.3. The path of travel between buildings is not required to be enclosed or covered when applying this footnote.
- f. For attached one- and two-family dwellings, one automatic clothes washer connection shall be required per 20 dwelling units.
- g. A mop receptacle with a water supply, or a hose bib and floor drain, may be used in lieu of a service sink.
- h. A can wash may be used in lieu of a service sink.
- i. See Section 403.9 for additional information on plumbing fixtures for schools.
- j. When the rearrangement of an area or space increases the occupant content, the plumbing facilities shall be increased in accordance with this code.
- k. For baseball stadiums, the number of fixtures shall be reduced by 50 percent.
- l. Service sink may be omitted when located within a single-family dwelling.
- m. Self-service mini-storage facilities without an office area are exempt.
- n. Unheated storage buildings that are used periodically are not required to have toilet rooms.
- o. For business and mercantile occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or fewer, service sinks shall not be required.
- p. See Section 403.6 for adjustments in occupant count.
- q. For business occupant loads of 25 or fewer, drinking fountains shall not be required.

| NO. | CLASSIFICATION                       | DESCRIPTION  | WATER CLOSETS<br>(URINALS: SEE SECTION 424.2)                             |  | LAVATORIES  |        | BATH-<br>TUBS/<br>SHOW-<br>ERS | DRINKING<br>FOUNTAIN(SEE<br>SECTION 410) | OTHER          |
|-----|--------------------------------------|--|---|--|---|--------|--------------------------------|--|----------------|
|     |                                      |  | MALE  | FEMALE   | MALE  | FEMALE |                                |  |                |
|     |                                      | Theaters and other buildings for the performing arts and motion pictures <sup>d</sup>                      | 1 per 125   | 1 per 65   | 1 per 200   |        | =                              | 1 per 500                                | 1 service sink |
|     |                                      | Theaters in K-12 Schools <sup>d,j</sup>  | 1 per 125   | 1 per 100  | 1 per 200   |        | =                              | 1 per 500                                | 1 Service sink |
|     |                                      | Nightclubs, bars, taverns, dance halls and buildings for similar purposes <sup>d</sup>                     | 1 per 40  | 1 per 40   | 1 per 75  |        | =                              | 1 per 500                                | 1 service sink |
|     |                                      | Restaurants, banquet halls and food courts <sup>d</sup>  | 1 per 75  | 1 per 75   | 1 per 200   |        | =                              | 1 per 500                                | 1 service sink |
|     |                                      | Cafeterias in K-12 Schools <sup>d,j</sup>  | 1 per 125   | 1 per 125  | 1 per 200   |        | =                              | 1 per 500                                | 1 service sink |
|     |                                      | Casino gaming areas  | 1 per 100 for the first 400 and 1 per 250 for the remainder exceeding 400 | 1 per 50 for the first 400 and 1 per 150 for the remainder exceeding 400 | 1 per 250 for the first 750 and 1 per 500 for the remainder exceeding 750 |        | =                              | 1 per 1,000                              | 1 service sink |
|     | Assembly (see Sections 403.2, 403.2) | Auditoriums without permanent seating, art galleries, exhibition halls, museums, lecture halls, libraries. | 1 per 125   | 1 per 65   | 1 per 200   |        | =                              | 1 per 500                                | 1 service sink |

# FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

|   |                      |  |  |   |                     |   |             |                |
|---|----------------------|--|--|---|---------------------|---|-------------|----------------|
| 1 | 403.3. and 403.3.3.2 | arcades and gymnasiums <sup>d</sup>  |  |   |                     |   |             |                |
|   |                      | Indoor and outdoor public swimming pools without spectator seating <sup>d</sup>                                  |  |   |                     |   |             |                |
|   |                      | Gymnasiums in K-12 schools <sup>d,i</sup>  | 1 per 125  | 1 per 100   | 1 per 200           | = | 1 per 500   | 1 service sink |
|   |                      | Passenger terminals and transportation facilities <sup>d</sup>   | 1 per 500  | 1 per 500   | 1 per 750           | = | 1 per 1,000 | 1 service sink |
|   |                      | Places of worship and other religious services, Churches without assembly halls <sup>d,e</sup>                   | 1 per 150  | 1 per 75  | 1 per 200           | = | 1 per 1,000 | 1 service sink |
|   |                      | Coliseums, arenas, skating rinks, pools and tennis courts for indoor sporting events and activities <sup>d</sup> | 1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500 | 1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520 | 1 per 200 1 per 150 | = | 1 per 1,000 | 1 service sink |
|   |                      | Stadiums, amusement parks, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities, <sup>k,q</sup>  | 1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500 | 1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520 | 1 per 200 1 per 150 | = | 1 per 1,000 | 1 service sink |
|   |                      | K-12 stadiums, bleacher and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities <sup>d, k</sup>               | 1 per 125  | 1 per 100   | 1 per 250 1 per 200 | = | 1 per 1,000 |                |

**TABLE 403.1—continued**  
**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES<sup>a</sup> (See Sections 403.1.1 and 403.2)**

|   |   |   |   |                                  |   |                   |           |                             |
|---|---|---|---|----------------------------------|---|-------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| 2 | Business (see Sections 403.2, 403.3, and 403.3.3.1) | Buildings for the transaction of business, professional services, other services involving merchandise, office buildings, banks, ambulatory care, light industrial and similar uses | 1 per 30 for the first 30 and 1 per 50 for the remainder exceeding 30                                   |                                  | 1 per 40 for the first 80 and 1 per 80 for the remainder exceeding 80 | =                 | 1 per 100 | 1 service sink <sup>c</sup> |
| 3 | Education <sup>i</sup>                              | K-8 <sup>b</sup><br>9-12 <sup>b</sup><br>Teacher/staff <sup>b</sup>   | 1 per 25<br>1 per 30<br>1 per 30  | 1 per 25<br>1 per 25<br>1 per 25 | 1 per 60<br>1 per 100<br>1 per 100                                    | =                 | 1 per 100 | 1 service sink              |
| 4 | Factory and industrial                              | Structures in which occupants are engaged in work fabricating, assembly or processing of products or materials (see sections 403.3.1 for adjustments in occupant content)           | 1 per 100   |                                  | 1 per 100   | (see section 411) | 1 per 400 | 1 service sink              |
| 5 | Institutional                                       | Custodial care facilities   | 1 per 10  |                                  | 1 per 10  | 1 per 8           | 1 per 100 | 1 service sink              |
|   |   | Medical care recipients in hospitals, nursing homes, and other healthcare facilities <sup>b, h</sup>  | Fixture requirement are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |                                  |   |                   |           |                             |
|   |   | Employees in medical care in hospitals, and nursing homes, and other healthcare facilities <sup>b, h</sup>  | 1 per 25  | 1 per 35                         | =   | 1 per 100         | =         |                             |
|   |   | Visitors in medical care in hospitals, and nursing homes, and other healthcare facilities <sup>b, h</sup>   | 1 per 75  | 1 per 100                        | =   | 1 per 500         | =         |                             |
|   |   | Prisons <sup>b, h</sup>   | Fixture requirement are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |                                  |   |                   |           |                             |
|   |   | Reformatories, detention centers, and correctional centers <sup>b, h</sup>  | Fixture requirement are regulated and enforced by state licensing and certification jurisdictions only. |                                  |   |                   |           |                             |
|   |   | Employees in reformatories, detention centers and correctional centers <sup>b, h</sup>  | 1 per 25  | 1 per 35                         | =   | 1 per 100         | =         |                             |
|   |   | Visitors <sup>b</sup>   | 1 per 75  | 1 per 100                        | :   | 1 per 500         | :         |                             |
|   | Adult day care <sup>b, h</sup>                      | Fixture requirement are regulated   |   |                                  |   |                   |           |                             |

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

|   |                  |  | and enforced by<br>state licensing and<br>certification juris-<br>dictions only. |                     |                          |  |
|---|------------------|--|--|---------------------|--------------------------|--|
|   |                  |  |  |                     |                          |  |
|   |                  | Child Care <sup>b, h</sup>   | 1 per 15   | 1 per 25            | =                        | 1-service sink   |
|   |                  | Employees <sup>b</sup>   | 1 per 25   | 1 per 35            | =                        | 1 per 100  |
|   |                  | Visitors   | 1 per 75   | 1 per 100           | =                        | 1 per 500  |
| 6 | Mercan-<br>tile  | Retail stores, service stations, shops, salesrooms, markets and shopping centers   | 1 per 500  | 1 per 750           | =                        | 1 per 100 - 1,000 1 greater than 1,000 requires 1 more for each additional 1,000 |
| Z | Residen-<br>tial | Hotels, motels, boarding houses (transient)  | 1 per sleeping unit  | 1 per sleeping unit | 1 per sleep-<br>ing unit | =  |
|   |                  | Dormitories, fraternities, sororities and boarding houses (not transient)  | 1 per 10   | 1 per 10            | 1 per 8                  | 1 per 100  |
|   |                  | Apartment house  | 1 per dwelling unit  | 1 per dwelling unit | 1 per dwell-<br>ing unit | =  |
|   |                  | Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons  | 1 per 10   | 1 per 10            | 1 per 8                  | 1 per 100  |
|   |                  | One- and two-family dwellings and lodging houses with five eight or fewer guestrooms                                     | 1 per dwell-<br>ing unit   | 1 per dwelling unit | 1 per dwell-<br>ing unit | =  |
|   |                  | Residential care/ unlicensed assisted living facilities  | 1 per 10   | 1 per 10            | 1 per 8                  | =  |
| 8 | Storage          | Structures for the storage of goods, warehouses, storehouse and freight depots. Low and Moderate Hazard. <sup>m, n</sup> | 1 per 100  | 1 per 100           | See Sec-<br>tion 411     | 1 per 1,000  |

- The fixtures shown are based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by the *North Carolina Building Code*.
- Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates, students or care recipients.
- A single-occupant toilet room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient sleeping units shall be permitted provided that each patient sleeping unit has direct access to the toilet room and provision for privacy for the toilet room user is provided.
- The occupant load for seasonal outdoor seating and entertainment areas shall be included when determining the minimum number of facilities required.
- The number of fixtures provided shall be based on either the capacity of the church sanctuary or the church educational building (including fellowship halls and multiple purpose rooms), whichever is larger and within 300 foot horizontal travel distance (91.44 m).
- For attached one- and two-family dwellings, one automatic clothes washer connection shall be required per 20 dwelling units.
- A mop receptacle with a water supply, or a hose bibb and floor drain, may be used in lieu of a service sink.
- A can wash may be used in lieu of a service sink.
- See Section 403.8 for additional information on plumbing fixtures for public schools.
- When the rearrangement of an area or space increases the occupant content, the plumbing facilities shall be increased in accordance with this code.
- For baseball stadiums, the number of fixtures shall be reduced by 50 percent.
- Service sink may be omitted when located within a single-family dwelling.
- Self-service mini-storage facilities without an office area are exempt.
- Unheated storage buildings that are used periodically are not required to have toilet rooms.
- For business and mercantile occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or fewer, service sinks shall not be required.
- See Section 403.6 for adjustments in occupant count.

### 403.1.2 Family or assisted use toilet and bath fixtures. Single-user toilet and bathing room fixtures.

Fixtures located within family or assisted use toilet and bathing rooms required by Section 1109.2.1 of the *International Building Code* are permitted to be included in the number of required fixtures for either the male or female occupants in assembly and mercantile occupancies. The plumbing fixtures located in single-user toilet and bathing rooms, including

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms that are required by Section 1109.2 of the *International Building Code*, shall contribute toward the total number of required plumbing fixtures for a building or tenant space. Single-user toilet and bathing rooms, and family or assisted-use toilet rooms and bathing rooms shall be identified as being available for use by all persons regardless of their sex.

The total number of fixtures shall be permitted to be based on the required number of separate facilities or based on the aggregate of any combination of single-user or separate facilities.

**403.1.3 Lavatory distribution.** Where two or more toilet rooms are provided for each sex, the required number of lavatories shall be distributed proportionately to the required number of water closets.

**403.2 Separate facilities.** Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

### Exceptions:

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. ~~Separate facilities shall not be required in business occupancies with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 30 or fewer.~~ Separate facilities shall not be required in all other structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including employees and customers, of 25 or fewer.
3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile *occupancies* in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or fewer.
4. ~~Except as provided in Section 405.3.2,~~ Separate facilities shall not be required in business occupancies with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 30 or fewer.
5. ~~Where the code requires only one toilet facility for each sex, two unisex facilities may be substituted for separate sex facilities.~~ Separate facilities shall not be required to be designated by sex where single-user toilet rooms are provided in accordance with Section 403.1.2.
6. Toilet facilities within classrooms located in licensed child daycare facilities with ages 4 years and under may be designed to serve each sex, the minimum fixture count shall be calculated 100 percent within each classroom served, based on total occupant load. In such facilities, each fixture type shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1.

**403.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet facilities serving as separate facilities.** Where a building or tenant space requires a separate toilet facility for each sex and each toilet facility is required to have only one water closet, two family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall be permitted to serve as the required separate facilities. Family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall not be required to be identified for exclusive use by either sex as required by Section 403.4.

**403.3 Required employee and public toilet facilities.** ~~Customers, patrons and visitors shall be provided with public toilet facilities in~~ For structures and tenant spaces intended for *public utilization*, ~~utilization, customers, patrons and visitors shall be provided with public toilet facilities.~~ Employees associated with structures and tenant spaces shall be provided with toilet facilities. The number of plumbing fixtures located within the required toilet facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 403 for all users. ~~Employees shall be provided with toilet facilities in all occupancies.~~ Employee toilet facilities shall be either separate or combined employee and *public* toilet facilities.

**Exception:** *Public* toilet facilities shall not be required ~~in~~ for:

1. ~~Open or enclosed parking~~ Parking garages operated without ~~where there are no~~ parking attendants.
2. Structures and tenant spaces intended for quick transactions, including takeout, pickup and drop-off, having a public access area less than or equal to 300 square feet (28 m<sup>2</sup>). The Owner shall not be considered an employee.

**403.3.1 Access.** The route to the *public* toilet facilities required by Section 403.3 shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms or closets. Access to the required facilities shall be from within the building or from the exterior of the building. Routes shall comply with the accessibility requirements of the *International Building Code*. The public shall have access to the required toilet facilities at all times that the building is occupied.

~~{BC}~~ **403.3.2 Prohibited toilet room location.** Toilet rooms shall not open directly into a room or area used for the preparation of food for service to the public.

**403.3.3 Location of toilet facilities in occupancies other than malls.** In occupancies other than covered and open mall buildings, the required *public* and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the accessible path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a



## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

distance of 500 feet (152 m). Employee facilities shall be either separate facilities or combined employee and public facilities. Access to toilet facilities in occupancies other than mercantile and assembly occupancies shall be from within the employees' working area.

### ~~Exception:~~ Exceptions:

1. The location and maximum accessible distances of travel to required employee facilities in factory and industrial occupancies shall be permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum distances of travel are *approved*.
2. The location and maximum accessible distances of travel to required public and employee facilities in Group S occupancies shall be permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum distances of travel are *approved*.
3. Facilities that are required for employees in storage structures or kiosks, and are located in adjacent structures under the same ownership, lease or control, shall be a maximum accessible travel distance of 500 feet (152 m) from the employees' working area.

**403.3.3.1 Location of employee toilet facilities in occupancies other than assembly or mercantile.** Access to toilet facilities in occupancies other than mercantile and assembly occupancies shall be from within the employees' working area. Employee facilities shall be either separate facilities or combined employee and public facilities.

**Exception:** Facilities that are required for employees in ~~storage structures or kiosks,~~ kiosks and similar structures, and are located in adjacent structures under the same ownership, lease or control, shall be a maximum accessible travel distance of 500 feet (152 m) from the employees' working area.

**403.3.3.2 Location of employee toilet facilities in mercantile and assembly occupancies.** Employees shall be provided with toilet facilities in buildings and tenant spaces utilized as restaurants, nightclubs, places of public assembly and mercantile occupancies. The employee facilities shall be either separate facilities or combined employee and public facilities.

**403.3.4 Location of toilet facilities in malls.** In covered and open mall buildings, the required *public* and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the accessible path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 300 feet (91 m). In mall buildings, the required facilities shall be based on total square footage within a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, and facilities shall be installed in each individual store or in a central toilet area located in accordance with this section. The maximum distance of travel to central toilet facilities in mall buildings shall be measured from the main entrance of any store or tenant space. In mall buildings, where employees' toilet facilities are not provided in the individual store, the maximum distance of accessible travel shall be measured from the employees' work area of the store or tenant space.

**403.3.5 Pay facilities.** Where pay facilities are installed, such facilities shall be in excess of the required minimum facilities. Required facilities shall be free of charge.

**403.3.6 Door locking.** Where a toilet room is provided for the use of multiple occupants, the egress door for the room shall not be lockable from the inside of the room. This section does not apply to family or assisted-use toilet rooms.

**403.4 Signage.** Required *public* facilities shall be provided with signs that designate the sex, as required by Section 403.2. Signs shall be readily visible and located near the entrance to each toilet facility. Signs for accessible toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1111 of the *International Building Code*.

**403.4.1 Directional signage.** Directional signage indicating the route to the required *public* toilet facilities shall be posted in a lobby, corridor, aisle or similar space, such that the sign can be readily seen from the main entrance to the building or tenant space.

**403.5 Drinking fountain location.** Drinking fountains shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces provided that *public* drinking fountains are located within ~~an~~ accessible distance of travel of 500 feet (152 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Where the tenant space is in a



## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

covered or open mall, such distance shall not exceed 300 feet (91 m). ~~Drinking fountains shall be located on an accessible route.~~

**403.6 Adjustments in occupant content.** If an owner or tenant requests, the plumbing official shall make adjustments in the occupant content established by Table 403.1 for manufacturing, workshops, loft building, foundries, storage, aircraft hangars, garages and similar establishments. The owner or occupant shall provide written data accompanied by plans that substantiates a claim that the occupant content of a particular building or tenancy will, at all times, be less than provided for in the above table. Approval of such data and accompanying claims shall not prevent the plumbing official from requiring additional facilities based on the above table, should changes be made affecting the floor plan upon which the original approval was based whether such changes be made by the original or ultimate owner or building occupant or occupants. The remainder of the facilities requirements of Section 403.2 are not affected by this paragraph.

**403.7 Multiplex theaters.** Plumbing fixtures for multiple adjoining motion picture theaters with a common lobby shall be based ~~on~~upon the seating capacity of the largest single auditorium plus 50 percent of the seats in the remaining auditoriums.

### 403.8 Plumbing fixtures for public schools.

**403.8.1 Occupant content.** Occupant content of public schools for the purpose of determining the number of required facilities shall be the maximum legal class size multiplied by the number of classrooms. A public school classroom is a room or space 500 square feet (46.5 m<sup>2</sup>) or larger normally used for instructional purposes. Maximum class sizes are 29 students for grades K through 8 and 33 students for grades 9 through 12 (GS 115C-301). The occupant load for private schools shall be as listed in Table 1004.1.2 of the *North Carolina Building Code*.

**403.8.2 Occupant load and distance.** The total student occupant load shall be the sum of the occupant loads for all classrooms, labs, shops and vocational spaces. The total occupant load for all buildings on a campus may be utilized when calculating the total number of fixtures required. Toilet facilities for students and teachers may be located in an adjacent building but shall be located so that no person will have more than 200 feet (61 m) of accessible, covered horizontal travel distance from any classroom lab, shop or vocational space closest door for access to the required number of fixtures. The occupant content of kindergarten and first grade classrooms with internal toilet facilities is not required to be used in determining the number of group facilities for the entire school.

**403.8.3 Occupant load for teachers and staff.** Fixtures provided for teachers and staff shall be determined by multiplying the number of classrooms by 1.75. Staffing ratio for grades K through 8 is 80-percent female and 20-percent male. Staffing ratio for grades 9 through 12 is 70-percent female and 30-percent male.

**403.8.4 Gymnasiums, cafeterias, auditoriums and stadiums for schools.** Fixtures in group toilet facilities provided for classroom areas may be used toward satisfying the total number of required fixtures for gymnasiums, cafeterias and auditoriums provided that such facilities are located within 200 feet (61 m) from the space and cannot be locked off from access during after-school-hours' use of the gymnasium, cafeteria or auditorium. Simultaneous use of classrooms, gymnasium, cafeteria or auditoriums shall not be considered for calculation of occupant loads for toilet fixtures. Stadium facilities shall be located within 400 feet (122 m) of the closest bleacher exit from each set of bleachers that the facility serves.

### 403.8.5 Miscellaneous provisions.

**403.8.5.1 ~~Unisex~~Single-User facilities.** A ~~single unisex~~single-user facility may be used when the classroom area served is 1,200 square feet (112 m<sup>2</sup>) or less and is used either for ~~grades~~ K through grade 2 or is a modular classroom used for any grade level. ~~Unisex~~Single-user facilities may be provided for teacher/staff if their total occupant load within 200 feet (61 m) is 15 or less.

**403.8.5.2 Student group facilities.** Every public school group facility shall have a minimum of four flushing type fixtures. Four flushing male group toilets shall have a minimum of two water closets.

**403.8.5.3 Substitutions.** Water closets may be substituted for urinals for grades K through 2. Urinals may be substituted for water closets in male group toilet rooms for teachers/staff and gyms, auditoriums, cafeterias or stadiums. The number of water closets shall not be reduced to less than one-third of the required total number of flushing fixtures.

**403.8.5.4 Modular classroom buildings.** Toilet rooms may be omitted in a modular classroom building when facilities of sufficient capacity for the additional occupants are provided in an adjacent building and located within 200 feet (61 m) of horizontal travel distance from the modular classroom.

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

**403.8.5.5 Temporary modular classroom buildings.** Toilet rooms may be omitted in modular classroom buildings housing grades 9 through 12 when these temporary buildings are to be replaced by permanent facilities which are under contract. Facilities of sufficient capacity for the additional occupants shall be provided within 450 feet (137 m) of horizontal travel distance from the modular classroom.

**403.9 Service sink location.** Service sinks shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces in a covered mall provided that service sinks are located within a distance of travel of 300 feet (91 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Service sinks shall be located on an accessible route.

## SECTION 404 ACCESSIBLE PLUMBING FACILITIES

**404.1 Where required.** Accessible plumbing facilities and fixtures shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 11 of the International Building Code.

**404.2 Accessible fixture requirements.** Accessible plumbing fixtures shall be installed in accordance with ICC A117.1. □

## SECTION 405 INSTALLATION OF FIXTURES

**405.1 Water supply protection.** The supply lines and fittings for every plumbing fixture shall be installed so as to prevent backflow.

**405.2 Access for cleaning.** Plumbing fixtures shall be installed so as to afford easy access for cleaning both the fixture and the area around the fixture.

~~**Exception:** One and two family dwellings and townhouses.~~

**405.3 Setting.** Fixtures shall be set level and in proper alignment with reference to adjacent walls.

**405.3.1 Water closets, urinals, lavatories and bidets.** A water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet shall not be set closer than 15 inches (381 mm) from its center to any side wall, partition, vanity or other ~~obstruction.~~ obstruction, or closer than 30 inches (762 mm) center to center between adjacent fixtures. ~~Where partitions or other obstructions do not separate adjacent water closets, urinals, or bidets, the fixtures shall not be set closer than 30 inches (762 mm) center to center between adjacent fixtures or adjacent water closets, urinals, or bidets.~~ There shall be not less than a 21-inch (533 mm) clearance in front of a water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet to any wall, fixture or door. Water closet compartments shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width and not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in depth for floor-mounted water closets and not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width and 56 inches (1422 mm) in depth for wall-hung water closets.

### Exceptions:

- ~~1. For detached one and two family dwellings and townhouses, see the North Carolina Residential Code, Section R307.1 for minimum fixture clearances.~~ An accessible children's water closet shall be set not closer than 12 inches (305 mm) from its center to the required partition or to the wall on one side.
- ~~2. Private~~ Private side by side lavatories may be less than 30 inches (762 mm) center to center.

**405.3.2 Public lavatories.** In employee and *public* toilet rooms, the required lavatory shall be located in the same room as the required water closet except in Education K-5, lavatories may be provided in a common toilet room vestibule, visible from the corridor.

**405.3.3 Location of fixtures and piping.** Piping, fixtures or equipment shall not be located in such a manner as to interfere with the normal operation of windows, doors or other means of egress openings.

**405.3.4 Water closet compartment.** Each water closet utilized by the *public* or employees shall occupy a separate compartment with walls or partitions and a door enclosing the fixtures to ensure privacy.

### Exceptions:

- Water closet compartments shall not be required in a single-occupant toilet room with a lockable door.

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

2. ~~Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more water closets shall be permitted to have one water closet without an enclosing compartment.~~

In toilet rooms in childcare facilities in areas used exclusively by children four years of age and under, the following is permitted:

- 2.1. Toilet stall enclosures, toilet stall doors and partitions between toilets may be omitted.
- 2.2. Doors into toilet rooms may be omitted.
- 2.3. Walls enclosing toilet rooms may be full height with vision panels or may be partial height at least 42 inches (1067 mm) high in areas for children four and five years of age and 36 inches (914 mm) high in areas for children under four years of age.

3. This provision is not applicable to toilet areas located within Group I-3 housing areas.

**405.3.5 Urinal partitions.** Each urinal utilized by the *public* or employees shall occupy a separate area with walls or partitions to provide privacy. The horizontal dimension between walls or partitions at each urinal shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm). The walls or partitions shall begin at a height not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) from and extend not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor surface. The walls or partitions shall extend from the wall surface at each side of the urinal not less than 18 inches (457 mm) or to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the outermost front lip of the urinal measured from the finished backwall surface, whichever is greater.

### Exceptions:

1. Urinal partitions shall not be required in a single occupant or family/assisted-use toilet room with a lockable door.
2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more urinals shall be permitted to have one urinal without partitions.

**405.4 Floor and wall drainage connections.** Connections between the drain and floor outlet plumbing fixtures shall be made with a floor flange or a waste connector and sealing gasket. The waste connector and sealing gasket joint shall comply with the joint tightness test of ASME A112.4.3 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The flange shall be attached to the drain and anchored to the structure. Connections between the drain and wall-hung water closets shall be made with an *approved* extension nipple or horn adaptor. The water closet shall be bolted to the hanger with corrosion-resistant bolts or screws. Joints shall be sealed with an *approved* elastomeric gasket, flange-to-fixture connection complying with ASME A112.4.3 or an *approved* setting compound.

**405.4.1 Floor flanges.** Floor flanges for water closets or similar fixtures shall be not less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick for ~~brass, copper alloy~~, 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick for plastic and 0.25 inch (6.4 mm) thick and not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) caulking depth for cast iron or galvanized malleable iron.

Floor flanges of hard lead shall weigh not less than 1 pound, 9 ounces (0.7 kg) and shall be composed of lead alloy with not less than 7.75-percent antimony by weight. Closet screws and bolts shall be of copper alloy. Flanges shall be secured to the building structure with corrosion-resistant screws or bolts.

**405.4.2 Securing floor outlet fixtures.** Floor outlet fixtures shall be secured to the floor or floor flanges by screws or bolts of corrosion-resistant material.

**405.4.3 Securing wall-hung water closet bowls.** Wall-hung water closet bowls shall be supported by a concealed metal carrier that is attached to the building structural members so that strain is not transmitted to the ~~closet connector or fixture connector~~ or any other part of the plumbing system. The carrier shall conform to ASME A112.6.1M or ASME A112.6.2.

**405.5 Plumbing fixtures with a pumped waste.** Plumbing fixtures with a pumped waste shall comply with ASME A112.3.4/CSA B45.9. The plumbing fixture with a pumped waste shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~405.5~~**405.6 Watertight joints.** Joints formed where fixtures come in contact with walls or floors shall be sealed.

~~405.6~~**405.7 Plumbing in mental health centers.** ~~Deleted.~~ In mental health centers, pipes or traps shall not be exposed, and fixtures shall be bolted through walls.

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

**405.7405.8 Design of overflows.** Where any fixture is provided with an overflow, the waste shall be designed and installed so that standing water in the fixture will not rise in the overflow when the stopper is closed, and ~~no~~ water will not remain in the overflow when the fixture is empty.

**405.7.1405.8.1 Connection of overflows.** The overflow from any fixture shall discharge into the drainage system on the inlet or fixture side of the trap.

**Exception:** The overflow from a flush tank serving a water closet or urinal shall discharge into the fixture served.

**405.8405.9 Slip-joint connections.** Slip joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric gasket and shall only be installed on the trap outlet, trap inlet and within the trap seal. Fixtures with concealed slip-joint connections shall be provided with an *access* panel or utility space not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in its smallest dimension or other *approved* arrangement so as to provide *access* to the slip-joint connections for inspection and repair. Where such access cannot be provided, access doors shall not be required, provided that all joints are soldered, solvent cemented or screwed to form a solid connection.

**405.9405.10 Design and installation of plumbing fixtures.** Integral fixture fitting mounting surfaces on manufactured plumbing fixtures or plumbing fixtures constructed on site shall meet the design requirements of ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

## SECTION 406 AUTOMATIC CLOTHES WASHERS

**406.1 Water connection.** The water supply to an automatic clothes washer shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* that is integral with the machine or a backflow preventer shall be installed in accordance with Section 608. *Air gaps* shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 or A112.1.3.

**406.2 Waste connection.** The waste from an automatic clothes washer shall connect to a vertical drain of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter, or a horizontal drain of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. The 2-inch (51 mm) trap in the waste connection may be used as a cleanout for both the 2-inch (51 mm) and the 3-inch (76 mm). In retrofit or remodel work, automatic domestic clothes washers shall be permitted to drain to a laundry sink. Automatic clothes washers that discharge by gravity shall be permitted to drain to a waste receptor or an approved trench drain.

## SECTION 407 BATHTUBS

**407.1 Approval.** Bathtubs shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

**407.2 Bathtub waste outlets and overflows.** Bathtubs shall be equipped with a waste outlet and an overflow outlet. The outlets shall be connected to waste tubing or piping not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. The waste outlet shall be equipped with a water-tight stopper.

**407.3 Glazing.** ~~Deleted.~~ Windows and doors within a bathtub enclosure shall conform to the safety glazing requirements of the *International Building Code*.

**407.4 Bathtub enclosure.** ~~Deleted.~~ Doors in a bathtub enclosure shall conform to ASME A112.19.15.

**407.5 (P2713.3) Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves.** Hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a temperature of not greater than 120°F (49°C) by a water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3, except where such protection is otherwise provided by a combination tub/shower valve in accordance with Section 424.3.

## SECTION 408 BIDETS

**408.1 Approval.** Bidets shall conform to ASME ~~A112.19.2/CSA B45.1~~ A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

**408.2 Water connection.** The water supply to a bidet shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* or backflow preventer in accordance with Section ~~608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.3, 608.13.5, 608.13.6 or 608.13.8~~ 608.14.1, 608.14.2, 608.14.3, 608.14.5, 608.14.6 or 608.14.8.

**408.3 Bidet water temperature.** The discharge water temperature from a bidet fitting shall be limited to ~~a maximum temperature of not greater than~~ 110°F (43°C) by a ~~water temperature limiting~~ water temperature-limiting device conforming to ASSE ~~1070 or CSA B125.3~~ 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70.

## SECTION 409 DISHWASHING MACHINES

**409.1 Approval.** Commercial dishwashing machines shall conform to ASSE 1004 and NSF 3. Residential dishwashers shall conform to NSF 184.

**409.2 Water connection.** The water supply to a dishwashing machine shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* that is integral with the machine or a backflow preventer shall be installed in accordance with Section 608. *Air gaps* shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 or A112.1.3.

**409.3 Waste connection.** The waste connection of a commercial dishwashing machine shall comply with Section ~~802.1.6, 802.1.6 or 802.1.7, as applicable.~~

**409.4 Residential dishwasher waste connection.** The waste connection of a residential dishwasher shall connect directly to a wye branch fitting on the tailpiece of the kitchen sink, directly to the dishwasher connection of a food waste disposer, or through an *air break* to a standpipe. The waste line of a residential dishwasher shall rise and be securely fastened to the underside of the sink rim or countertop.

## SECTION 410 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

**410.1 Approval.** Drinking fountains shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA ~~B45.2 or~~ B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4, and *water coolers* shall conform to ~~AHRI 1010-ASHRAE 18.~~ Drinking ~~fountains and foun-~~ tains, water coolers and water dispensers shall conform to NSF 61, Section 9. Electrically operated, refrigerated drinking water coolers and water dispensers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 399.

**410.2 Small occupancies.** Drinking fountains shall not be required for an occupant load of 30 or fewer.

**410.3 ~~Provide high~~ High and low drinking fountains.** Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor or within a secured area, the drinking fountains shall be provided in accordance with Sections 410.3.1 and 410.3.2.

**[BE] 410.3.1 Minimum number.** ~~Where drinking fountains are required, not~~ Not fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. One drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and one drinking fountain shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

### Exceptions:

1. A single drinking fountain with two separate spouts that complies with the requirements for people who use a wheelchair and standing persons shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.
2. Where drinking fountains are primarily for children's use, the drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children's provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor.

**[BE] 410.3.2 More than the minimum number.** Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in Section 410.3.1 is provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the



## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

requirements for persons who use a wheelchair and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with the requirements for standing persons.

**410.4 Substitution.** Where restaurants, night clubs, taverns or bars provide drinking water in a container free of charge, drinking fountains shall not be required in those establishments.

**410.5 Prohibited location.** Drinking fountains, *water coolers* and *water dispensers* shall not be installed in *public* restrooms.

## SECTION 411 EMERGENCY SHOWERS AND EYEWASH STATIONS

**411.1 Approval.** Emergency showers and eyewash stations shall conform to ISEA Z358.1. Water supplies to eyewash stations shall be tepid water temperature ~~from (from~~ 60°F (15.56°C) to a maximum of ~~100°F~~ 100°F (37.78°C).

**411.2 Waste connection.** Waste connections shall not be required for emergency showers and eyewash stations.

**411.3 Water supply.** Where hot and cold water is supplied to an emergency shower or eyewash station, the temperature of the water supply shall only be controlled by a temperature-actuated mixing valve complying with ASSE 1071. Where water is supplied directly to an emergency shower or eyewash station from a water heater, the water heater shall comply with ASSE 1085.

## SECTION 412 FLOOR AND TRENCH DRAINS FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

~~424.1~~**412.1 Approval.** Faucets and fixture fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Faucets and fixture fittings that supply drinking water for human ingestion shall conform to the requirements of NSF 61, Section 9. Flexible water connectors exposed to continuous pressure shall conform to the requirements of Section 605.6.

~~424.1~~**412.1.1 Faucets and supply fittings.** Faucets and supply fittings shall conform to the water consumption requirements of Section 604.4.

~~424.1~~**412.1.2 Waste fittings.** Waste fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, ASTM F409 or to one of the standards listed in Tables 702.1 and 702.4 for aboveground drainage and vent pipe and fittings.

~~424.2~~**412.2 Hand showers.** Hand-held showers shall conform to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. Hand-held showers shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 or shall be protected against backflow by a device complying with ASME A112.18.3.

~~424.3~~**412.3 Individual shower valves.** Individual shower and tub-shower combination valves shall be balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic valves that conform to the requirements of ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1. ~~B125.1 and~~ Such valves shall be installed at the point of use. Shower control valves shall be rated for the flow rate of the installed shower head. Shower and tub-shower combination valves required by this section shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the valve to 120°F (49°C), which shall be field adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's ~~instructions.~~ instructions to provide water at a temperature not to exceed 120°F (49°C). In-line thermostatic valves shall not be utilized for compliance with this section. Scald preventative valves are not required in dwelling units with individual water heaters set at 120°F (49°C).

~~424.4~~**412.4 Multiple (gang) showers.** Multiple (gang) showers supplied with a ~~single tempered water~~ single, tempered water supply pipe shall have the water supply for such showers controlled by an *approved* automatic temperature control mixing valve that conforms to ASSE 1069 or CSA B125.3, or each shower head shall be individually controlled by a balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/thermostatic valve that conforms to ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and that is installed at the point of use. Where a shower head is individually controlled, shower control valves shall be rated for the flow rate of the installed shower head. Such valves shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the valve to 120°F (49°C), which shall be field adjusted in accordance with the ~~manufacturers' instructions.~~ manufacturer's instructions to provide water at a temperature not to exceed 120°F (49°C). Access shall be provided to an ASSE 1069 or CSA B125.3 valve.

**424.5412.5 Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves.** ~~The hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a maximum temperature of 120°F (49°C) by a water temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3.~~ Bathtubs and whirlpool bathtub valves shall have or be supplied by a water-temperature-limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70 or by a water heater complying with ASSE 1082 or ASSE 1084, except where such protection is otherwise provided by valves are combination tub/shower valvevalves in accordance with Section 424.3.412.3. The water-temperature-limiting device required by this section shall be equipped with a means to limit the maximum setting of the device to 120°F (49°C), and, where adjustable, shall be field adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to provide hot water at a temperature not to exceed 120°F (49°C). Access shall be provided to water-temperature-limiting devices that conform to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70. Scald preventative valves are not required in dwelling units with individual water heaters set at 120°F (49°C).

**Exception:** Access shall not be required for nonadjustable water-temperature-limiting devices that conform to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70 and are integral with a fixture fitting, provided that the fixture fitting itself can be accessed for replacement.

**424.6412.6 Hose-connected outlets.** Faucets and fixture fittings with hose-connected outlets shall conform to ASME A112.18.3 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

**424.7412.7 Temperature-actuated, flow-reduction valvesdevices for individual fixture fittings.** Temperature-actuated, flow-reductionflow-reduction devices, where installed for individual fixture fittings, shall conform to ASSE 1062. A temperature-actuated, flow-reduction device shall be an approved method for limiting the water temperature to not greater than 120°F (49°C) at the outlet of a faucet or fixture fitting. Such valvesdevices shall not be used alone as a substitute for the balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required in Section 424.3.412.3 or as a substitute for bathtub or whirlpool tub water-temperature-limiting valves required in Section 412.5.

**424.8412.8 Transfer valves.** Deck-mounted bath/shower transfer valves containing an integral atmospheric vacuum breaker shall conform to the requirements of ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

**424.9412.9 Water closet personal hygiene devices.** Personal hygiene devices integral to water closets or water closet seats shall conform to the requirements of ASME A112.4.2-A112.4.2/CSA B45.16.

**412.10 Head shampoo sink faucets.** Head shampoo sink faucets shall be supplied with hot water that is limited to not more than 120°F (49°C). Each faucet shall have integral check valves to prevent crossover flow between the hot and cold water supply connections. The means for regulating the maximum temperature shall be one of the following:

1. A limiting device conforming to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70.
2. A water heater conforming to ASSE 1082.
3. A temperature-actuated, flow-reduction device conforming to ASSE 1062.

**412.11 Prerinse spray valve.** Prerinse spray valves for commercial food service shall conform to ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

## SECTION 413 FOOD WASTE DISPOSER UNITSFLOOR AND TRENCH DRAINS

**412.1413.1 Approval.** Floor drains shall conform to ASME A112.3.1, ASME A112.6.3 or CSA B79. Trench drains shall comply with ASME A112.6.3.

**412.2413.2 Floor drains.** Floor drains shall have removable strainers. The floor drain shall be constructed so that the drain is capable of being cleaned. Access shall be provided to the drain inlet. Ready access shall be provided to floor drains.

**Exception:** Floor drains serving refrigerated display cases shall be provided with access.

**412.3413.3 Size of floor drains.** Floor drains shall have a drain outlet not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter.

**412.4413.4 Public laundries and central washing facilities.** In public coin-operated laundries and in the central washing facilities of multiple-family dwellings, the rooms containing automatic clothes washers shall be provided with floor drains located to readily drain the entire floor area. Such drains shall have an outlet of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter.

**412.5413.5 Location.** Floor drains shall be located to drain the entire floor area.

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

**413.6 Trap primers.** The water seal of floor drain traps shall be maintained in conformance to Section 1002.4, Trap seals, or another method acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

**Exception:** Hose bibbs located in rooms with non-absorbent floors may be used in lieu of an automatic trap primer.

## SECTION 414 GARBAGE CAN WASHERS FLOOR SINKS

**414.1 Approval.** Sanitary floor sinks shall conform to the requirements of ASME A112.6.7.

## SECTION 415 LAUNDRY TRAYS FLUSHING DEVICES FOR WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS

**415.1 Flushing devices required.** Each water closet, urinal, clinical sink and any plumbing fixture that depends on trap siphonage to discharge the fixture contents to the drainage system shall be provided with a flushometer valve, flushometer tank or a flush tank designed and installed to supply water in quantity and rate of flow to flush the contents of the fixture, cleanse the fixture and refill the fixture trap.

A flushometer valve, flush tank or similar device shall not be required for urinal fixtures that comply with the waterless test requirements of ANSI Z124 and that:

1. Provide a barrier liquid sealant contained in a removable trap to maintain the trap seal;
2. Permit the uninhibited flow of water through the trap to the sanitary drainage system;
3. Comply with ANSI Z124 and ASME 112.19.2, as applicable.

**415.1.1 Separate for each fixture.** A flushing device shall not serve more than one fixture.

**415.2 Flushometer valves and tanks.** Flushometer valves and tanks shall comply with ASSE 1037/ASME A112.1037/CSA B125.37 or CSA B125.3. Vacuum breakers on flushometer valves shall conform to the performance requirements of ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1. Access shall be provided to vacuum breakers. Flushometer valves shall be of the water-conservation type and shall not be used where the water pressure is lower than the minimum required for normal operation. When operated, the valve shall automatically complete the cycle of operation, opening fully and closing positively under the water supply pressure. Each flushometer valve shall be provided with a means for regulating the flow through the valve. The trap seal to the fixture shall be automatically refilled after each flushing cycle.

**415.3 Flush tanks.** Flush tanks equipped for manual flushing shall be controlled by a device designed to refill the tank after each discharge and to shut off completely the water flow to the tank when the tank is filled to operational capacity. The trap seal to the fixture shall be automatically refilled after each flushing. The water supply to flush tanks equipped for automatic flushing shall be controlled with a timing device or sensor control devices.

**415.3.1 Fill valves.** Flush tanks shall be equipped with an antisiphon fill valve conforming to ASSE 1002/ASME A112.1002/CSA B125.12 or CSA B125.3. The fill valve backflow preventer shall be located not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the full opening of the overflow pipe.

**415.3.2 Overflows in flush tanks.** Flush tanks shall be provided with overflows discharging to the water closet or urinal connected thereto and shall be sized to prevent flooding the tank at the maximum rate at which the tanks are supplied with water according to the manufacturer's design conditions. The opening of the overflow pipe shall be located above the flood level rim of the water closet or urinal or above a secondary overflow in the flush tank.

**415.3.3 Sheet copper.** Sheet copper utilized for flush tank linings shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall not weigh less than 10 ounces per square foot (0.03 kg/m<sup>2</sup>).

**415.3.4 Access required.** All parts in a flush tank shall be accessible provided with access for repair and replacement.

**415.4 Flush pipes and fittings.** Flush pipes and fittings shall be of nonferrous material and shall conform to ASME A112.19.5/CSA B45.15.



## SECTION 416 LAVATORIES/FOOD WASTE DISPOSER UNITS

**413.1416.1 Approval.** Domestic food waste disposers shall conform to ASSE 1008 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 430. Commercial food waste disposers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 430. Food waste disposers shall not increase the *drainage fixture unit* load on the sanitary drainage system.

**413.2416.2 Domestic food waste disposer waste outlets.** Domestic food waste disposers shall be connected to a drain of not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) in diameter.

**413.3416.3 Commercial food waste disposer waste outlets.** Commercial food waste disposers shall be connected to a drain not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) in diameter. Commercial food waste disposers shall be connected and trapped separately from any other fixtures or sink compartments.

**413.4416.4 Water supply required.** Food waste disposers shall be provided with a supply of cold water. The water supply shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* or backflow preventer in accordance with Section 608.

## SECTION 417 SHOWERS/GARBAGE CAN WASHERS

**414.1417.1 Water connection.** The water supply to a garbage can washer shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* or a backflow preventer in accordance with Section ~~608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.3, 608.13.5, 608.13.6~~ 608.14.1, 608.14.2, 608.14.3, 608.14.5, 608.14.6 or ~~608.13.8~~ 608.14.8.

**414.2417.2 Waste connection.** Garbage can washers shall be trapped separately. The receptacle receiving the waste from the washer shall have a removable basket or strainer to prevent the discharge of particles ½" (~~13 mm~~) or larger into the drainage system.

## SECTION 418 SINKS/LAUNDRY TRAYS

**415.1418.1 Approval.** Laundry trays shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

**415.2418.2 Waste outlet.** Each compartment of a laundry tray shall be provided with a waste outlet not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) in diameter and a strainer or crossbar to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

## SECTION 419 URINALS/LAVATORIES

**416.1419.1 Approval.** Lavatories shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124. Group ~~wash-up equipment~~ wash fixtures shall conform to the requirements of Section 402. ~~Every~~ For determining the number of lavatories required by Table 403.1, every 20 inches (508 mm) of rim space ~~of a group wash fixture~~ shall be considered as one lavatory.

**416.2419.2 Cultured marble lavatories.** Cultured marble vanity tops with an integral lavatory shall conform to CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

**416.3419.3 Lavatory waste outlets.** Lavatories and group wash fixtures shall have a waste ~~outlets~~ outlet not less than 1¼ inches (32 mm) in diameter. A strainer, pop-up stopper, crossbar or other device shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

**416.4419.4 Movable lavatory systems.** Movable lavatory systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

**416.5419.5 Tempered water for public hand-washing facilities.** When hot water is provided to a public hand-washing facility, such water shall be tempered water delivered through an approved water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3.

**SECTION 420**  
**WATER CLOSETS**  
**MANUAL FOOD AND**  
**BEVERAGE DISPENSING EQUIPMENT**

**426.420.1 Approval.** Manual food and beverage dispensing equipment shall conform to the requirements of NSF 18.

**SECTION 421**  
**WHIRLPOOL BATHTUBS**  
**SHOWERS**

**417.421.1 Approval.** Prefabricated showers and shower compartments shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124. Shower valves for individual showers shall conform to the requirements of Section 424.3.412.3.

**417.421.2 Water supply riser.** Water supply risers from the shower valve to the shower head outlet, whether exposed or concealed, shall be attached to the structure. The attachment to the structure shall be made by the use of support devices designed for use with the specific piping material or by fittings anchored with ~~corrosion-resistant~~ corrosion resistant screws of a minimum nominal length of  $\frac{3}{4}$ "  ~~$\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm)~~.

**417.421.3 Shower waste outlet.** Waste outlets serving showers shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and, for other than waste outlets in bathtubs, shall have removable strainers not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter with strainer openings not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in least dimension. Where each shower space is not provided with an individual waste outlet, the waste outlet shall be located and the floor pitched so that waste from one shower does not flow over the floor area serving another shower. Waste outlets shall be fastened to the waste pipe in an *approved* manner.

**Exception:** Retaining pre-existing  ~~$\frac{1}{2}$ -1-1/2 inch (38(12.3 mm)~~ in diameter waste outlets shall be permitted when removing an existing bathtub and installing a shower in its place.

**421.3.1 Waste fittings.** Waste fittings shall conform to ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

**417.421.4 Shower compartments.** Shower compartments shall be not less than 900 square inches (0.58 m<sup>2</sup>) in interior cross-sectional area. Shower compartments shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in least dimension as measured from the finished interior dimension of the compartment, exclusive of fixture valves, showerheads, soap dishes and safety grab bars or rails. Except as required in Section 404, the minimum required area and dimension shall be measured from the finished interior dimension at a height equal to the top of the threshold and at a point tangent to its centerline and shall be continued to a height not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the shower drain outlet.

**Exceptions:**

1. Shower compartments having not less than 25 inches (635 mm) in minimum dimension measured from the finished interior dimension of the compartment, provided that the shower compartment has not less than 1,300 square inches (0.838 m<sup>2</sup>) of cross-sectional area.
2. Shower compartments with prefabricated receptors conforming to the standards listed in Table ~~417.4~~ 421.4.
3. Where load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes meeting ANSI A118.10 are used, integrated bonding flange drains shall be approved. Clamping devices and weep holes are not required where shower drains include an integrated bonding flange. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be followed to achieve a watertight seal between the bonded waterproof membrane and the integrated bonding flange drain. Integrated bonding flange drains shall conform to ASME A112.6.3, ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, or CSA B79.

**TABLE ~~417.4~~ 421.4**  
**PREFABRICATED SHOWER**  
**RECEPTOR STANDARDS MATERIALS STANDARDS**

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Plastic shower receptors and shower stalls | ANSI Z124                           |
| Shower pans, nonmetallic                   | ASTM <del>D4551</del> <u>D 4551</u> |

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

**417.4.1421.4.1 Floor and wall area.** Bathtub floors, shower floors, wall areas above built-in tubs that have installed shower heads and walls in shower compartments shall be constructed of smooth, corrosion-resistant and nonabsorbent waterproof materials. Wall materials shall extend to a height of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the room floor level, and not less than 70 inches (1778 mm) above the drain of the tub or shower. Such walls shall form a watertight joint with each other and with either the tub or shower floor.

**417.4.2421.4.2 Access.** The shower compartment access and egress opening shall have a clear and unobstructed finished width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm). Shower compartments required to be designed in conformance to accessibility provisions shall comply with Section 404.1.

**417.5.421.5 Shower floors or receptors.** Floor surfaces shall be constructed of impervious, noncorrosive, nonabsorbent and waterproof materials.

**417.5.2421.5.1 Support.** Floors or receptors under shower compartments shall be laid on, and supported by, a smooth and structurally sound base.

**417.5.2421.5.2 Shower lining.** Floors under shower compartments, except where prefabricated receptors have been provided, shall be lined and made watertight utilizing material complying with Sections 417.5.2.1421.5.2.1 through 417.5.2.6421.5.2.6. Such liners shall turn up on all sides not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the finished threshold level. Liners shall be recessed and fastened to an *approved* backing so as not to occupy the space required for wall covering, and shall not be nailed or perforated at any point less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the finished threshold. Liners shall be pitched a minimum of one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) and shall be sloped toward the fixture drains and be securely fastened to the waste outlet at the seepage entrance, making a watertight joint between the liner and the outlet. The completed liner shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.9.

### Exceptions:

1. Floor surfaces under shower heads provided for rinsing laid directly on the ground are not required to comply with this section.
2. Where a sheet-applied, load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membrane is installed as the shower lining, the membrane shall not be required to be recessed.

**417.5.2.1421.5.2.1 PVC sheets.** Plasticized polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sheets shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02mm) thick and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D4551. Sheets shall be joined by solvent welding in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**417.5.2.2421.5.2.2 Chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) sheets.** Nonplasticized chlorinated polyethylene sheet shall be a minimum of 0.040 inch (1.02mm) thick and shall meet the requirements of ASTM D4068. The liner shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**417.5.2.3421.5.2.3 Sheet lead.** Sheet lead shall weigh not less than 4 pounds per square foot (19.5 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) and shall be coated with an asphalt paint or other *approved* coating. The lead sheet shall be insulated from conducting substances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or an equivalent. Sheet lead shall be joined by burning.

**417.5.2.3421.5.2.4 Sheet copper.** Sheet copper shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall weigh not less than 12 ounces per square foot (3.7 kg/m<sup>2</sup>). The copper sheet shall be insulated from conducting substances other than the connecting drain by 15-pound (6.80 kg) asphalt felt or an equivalent. Sheet copper shall be joined by brazing or soldering.

**417.5.2.5421.5.2.5 Sheet-applied, load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes.** Sheet-applied, load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes shall meet the requirements of ANSI A118.10 and shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**417.5.2.6421.5.2.6 Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials.** Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials shall meet the requirements of ANSI A118.10 and shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**417.6421.6 Glazing.** Windows and doors within a shower enclosure shall conform to the safety glazing requirements of the *International Building Code*.

## SECTION 422

### HEALTH CARE FIXTURES AND EQUIPMENTS SINKS

#### 422.1 Scope.

This section shall govern those aspects of health care plumbing systems that differ from plumbing systems in other structures. Health care plumbing systems shall conform to the requirements of this section in addition to the other requirements of this code. The provisions of this section shall apply to the special devices and equipment installed and maintained in the following *occupancies*: nursing homes, homes for the aged, orphanages, infirmaries, first aid stations, psychiatric facilities, clinics, professional offices of dentists and doctors, mortuaries, educational facilities, surgery, dentistry, research and testing laboratories, establishments manufacturing pharmaceutical drugs and medicines and other structures with similar apparatus and equipment classified as plumbing.

#### 422.2 Approval.

All special plumbing fixtures, equipment, devices and apparatus shall be of an *approved* type.

#### 422.3 Protection.

All devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus intended to serve some special function, such as sterilization, distillation, processing, cooling, or storage of ice or foods, and that connect to either the water supply or drainage system, shall be provided with protection against backflow, flooding, fouling, contamination of the water supply system and stoppage of the drain.

#### 422.4 Materials.

Fixtures designed for therapy, special cleansing or disposal of waste materials, combinations of such purposes, or any other special purpose, shall be of smooth, impervious, corrosion-resistant materials and, where subjected to temperatures in excess of 180°F (82°C), shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, higher temperatures.

#### 422.5 Access.

*Access* shall be provided to concealed piping in connection with special fixtures where such piping contains steam traps, valves, relief valves, check valves, vacuum breakers or other similar items that require periodic inspection, servicing, maintenance or repair. *Access* shall be provided to concealed piping that requires periodic inspection, maintenance or repair.

#### 422.6 Clinical sink.

A clinical sink shall have an integral trap in which the upper portion of a visible trap seal provides a water surface. The fixture shall be designed so as to permit complete removal of the contents by siphonic or blowout action and to reseal the trap. A flushing rim shall provide water to cleanse the interior surface. The fixture shall have the flushing and cleansing characteristics of a water closet.

#### 422.7 Prohibited usage of clinical sinks and service sinks.

A clinical sink serving a soiled utility room shall not be considered as a substitute for, or be utilized as, a service sink. A service sink shall not be utilized for the disposal of urine, fecal matter or other human waste.

#### 422.8 Ice prohibited in soiled utility room.

Machines for manufacturing ice, or any device for the handling or storage of ice, shall not be located in a soiled utility room.

#### 422.9 Sterilizer equipment requirements.

The approval and installation of all sterilizers shall conform to the requirements of the *International Mechanical Code*.

##### 422.9.1 Sterilizer piping.

*Access* for the purposes of inspection and maintenance shall be provided to all sterilizer piping and devices necessary for the operation of sterilizers.

##### 422.9.2 Steam supply.

Steam supplies to sterilizers, including those connected by pipes from overhead mains or branches, shall be drained to prevent any moisture from reaching the sterilizer. The condensate drainage from the steam supply shall be discharged by gravity.

## FIXTURES, FAUCETS AND FIXTURE FITTINGS

### ~~422.9.3 Steam condensate return.~~

~~Steam condensate returns from sterilizers shall be a gravity return system.~~

### ~~422.9.4 Condensers.~~

~~Pressure sterilizers shall be equipped with a means of condensing and cooling the exhaust steam vapors. Nonpressure sterilizers shall be equipped with a device that will automatically control the vapor, confining the vapors within the vessel.~~

### ~~422.10 Special elevations.~~

~~Control valves, vacuum outlets and devices protruding from a wall of an operating, emergency, recovery, examining or delivery room, or in a corridor or other location where patients are transported on a wheeled stretcher, shall be located at an elevation that prevents bumping the patient or stretcher against the device.~~

~~418.1422.1~~ **Approval.** Sinks shall conform to ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2, ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

~~418.2422.2~~ **Sink waste outlets.** Sinks shall be provided with waste outlets having a diameter not less than 1½ inches (38 mm). A strainer or crossbar shall be provided to restrict the clear opening of the waste outlet.

~~418.3422.3~~ **Movable sink systems.** Movable sink systems shall comply with ASME A112.19.12.

## SECTION 423 SPECIALTY PLUMBING FIXTURES

**423.1 Water connections.** Baptisteries, ornamental and lily pools, aquariums, ornamental fountain basins, swimming pools, and similar constructions, where provided with water supplies, shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.

**423.2 Approval.** Specialties requiring water and waste connections shall be submitted for approval.

**423.3 Footbaths, pedicure baths and head shampoo sinks.** The water supplied to specialty plumbing fixtures, such as pedicure chairs having an integral foot bathtub, bathtub and footbaths, and head shampoo sinks, shall be limited to a maximum temperature of not greater than 120°F (49°C) by a water temperature-limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70 or CSA B125.3 by a water heater complying with ASSE 1082.

## SECTION 424 FAUCETS AND OTHER FIXTURE FITTINGSURINALS

~~419.1424.1~~ **Approval.** Urinals shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.19 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124. Urinals shall conform to the water consumption requirements of Section 604.4. Water-supplied urinals shall conform to the hydraulic performance requirements of ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

Urinals that do not use water shall be permitted, provided the urinals:

1. Provide a barrier liquid sealant contained in a removable trap to maintain the trap seal;
2. Permit the uninhibited flow of water through the trap to the sanitary drainage system;
3. Comply with ANSI Z124 and ASME A112.19.2, as applicable.
4. Shall be provided with water supply for future connection.

~~419.2424.2~~ **Substitution for water closets.** In each bathroom or toilet room, urinals shall not be substituted for more than 67 percent of the required water closets in assembly and educational *occupancies*. Urinals shall not be substituted for more than 50 percent of the required water closets in all other *occupancies*.

~~[BG] 419.3 Surrounding material.~~ Deleted.

## SECTION 425 ~~FLUSHING DEVICES FOR WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS~~WATER CLOSETS

**~~420.1425.1~~ Approval.** Water closets shall conform to the water consumption requirements of Section 604.4 and shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

**425.1.1 Hydraulic performance.** Water closets shall conform to the hydraulic performance requirements of ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

**425.1.2 Water closet tanks.** Water closet tanks shall conform to ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1, ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 or CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.

**425.1.3 Dual flush water closets.** Water closets equipped with a dual flushing device shall comply with ASME A112.19.14.

**425.1.4 Electro-hydraulic water closets.** ~~Electro-hydraulic water~~Water closets shall comply with ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

**~~420.2425.2~~ Water closets for public or employee toilet facilities.** Water closet bowls for *public* or employee toilet facilities shall be of the elongated type.

**~~420.3425.3~~ Water closet seats.** Water closets shall be equipped with seats of smooth, nonabsorbent material. ~~All seats~~Seats of water closets provided for *public* or employee toilet facilities shall be of the hinged open-front type. Integral water closet seats shall be of the same material as the fixture. Water closet seats shall be sized for the water closet bowl type.

**~~420.4425.4~~ Water closet connections.** A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) closet bend shall be acceptable. Where a 3-inch (76 mm) bend is utilized on water closets, a 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) flange shall be installed to receive the fixture horn.

## SECTION 426 ~~MANUAL FOOD AND BEVERAGE DISPENSING EQUIPMENT~~WHIRLPOOL BATHTUBS

**~~421.1426.1~~ Approval.** Whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1795.

**~~421.2426.2~~ Installation.** Whirlpool bathtubs shall be installed and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The pump shall be located above the weir of the fixture trap. Leak testing and pump operation shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**~~421.3426.3~~ Drain.** The pump drain and circulation piping shall be sloped to drain the water in the volute and the circulation piping when the whirlpool bathtub is empty.

**~~421.4426.4~~ Suction fittings.** Suction fittings for whirlpool bathtubs shall comply with ASME A112.19.7/CSA B45.10.

**~~421.5426.5~~ Access to pump.** *Access* shall be provided to circulation pumps in accordance with the fixture or pump manufacturer's installation instructions. Where the manufacturer's instructions do not specify the location and minimum size of field-fabricated access openings, an opening not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) shall be installed to provide *access* to the circulation pump. Where pumps are located more than 2 feet (609 mm) from the *access* opening, an opening not less than 18 inches by 18 inches (457 mm by 457 mm) shall be installed. A door or panel shall be permitted to close the opening. In all cases, the *access* opening shall be unobstructed and of the size necessary to permit the removal and replacement of the circulation pump. A minimum clearance of 21 inches (514.5 mm) is required in front of the access door. Removal of a toilet cannot be used to obtain the required clearance.

**~~421.6426.6~~ Whirlpool enclosure.** Doors within a whirlpool enclosure shall conform to ASME A112.19.15.

**~~421.7 (P2713.3)426.7~~ Bathtub and whirlpool bathtub valves.**

Hot water supplied to bathtubs and whirlpool bathtubs shall be limited to a temperature of not greater than 120°F (49°C) by a water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3, except where such protection is otherwise provided by a combination tub/shower valve in accordance with Section ~~424.3.4~~12.5.



**SECTION 427**  
**FLOOR SINKS**

DRAFT

## CHAPTER 5

# WATER HEATERS

### SECTION 501 GENERAL

**501.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design and installation of water heaters and the related safety devices and appurtenances.

**501.2 Water heater as space heater.** Where a combination potable water heating and space heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures greater than 140°F (60°C), a master ~~temperature-actuated~~thermostatic mixing valve complying with ASSE 1017 shall be provided to limit the water supplied to the potable *hot water* distribution system to a temperature of 140°F (60°C) or less. The potability of the water shall be maintained throughout the system. Requirements for combination potable water heating and space heating systems shall be in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

**501.3 Drain valves.** Drain valves for emptying shall be installed at the bottom of each tank-type water heater and hot water storage tank. Drain valves shall conform to ASSE 1005. The drain valve inlet shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19 mm) nominal iron pipe size and the outlet shall be provided with male garden hose threads.

**501.4 Location.** Water heaters and storage tanks shall be located and connected so as to provide *access* for observation, maintenance, servicing and replacement.

**501.5 Water heater labeling.** All water heaters shall be third-party certified.

**501.6 Water temperature control in piping from tankless heaters.** The temperature of water from tankless water heaters shall be not greater than 140°F (60°C) where intended for domestic uses. This provision shall not supersede the requirement for protective shower valves in accordance with Section ~~424.3.4~~12.3.

**501.7 Pressure marking of storage tanks.** Storage tanks and water heaters installed for domestic hot water shall have the maximum allowable working pressure clearly and indelibly stamped in the metal or marked on a plate welded thereto or otherwise permanently attached. Such markings shall be in an accessible position with *access on the* outside of the tank so as to make inspection or reinspection readily possible.

**501.8 Temperature controls.** Hot water supply systems shall be equipped with automatic temperature controls capable of adjustments from the lowest to the highest acceptable temperature settings for the intended temperature operating range. In a water heating system where temperatures exceed 140°F (60°C), a temperature limiting means shall be installed to temper the water for domestic uses.

**501.9 Safety features of hot water heaters.**~~N.C.G.S. 66-27.1. The following is a reprint of N.C.G.S. 66-27.1, "Certain automatic hot water tanks or heaters to have approved relief valves; installation or sale of unapproved relief valves forbidden."~~N.C.G.S. 66-27.1 "Safety Features of Hot Water Heaters."

- a) No individual, firm, corporation or business shall install, sell or offer for sale any automatic hot water tank or heater of 120-gallon (454 L) capacity or less, except for a tankless water heater, which does not have installed thereon by the manufacturer of the tank or heater an American Society of Mechanical Engineers and National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors approved type pressure-temperature relief valve set at or below the safe working pressure of the tank as indicated, and so labeled by the manufacturer's identification stamped or cast upon the tank or heater or upon a plate secured to it.
- b) No individual, firm, corporation or business shall install, sell or offer for sale any relief valve, whether it be pressure type, temperature type or pressure-temperature type, which does not carry the stamp of approval of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers and the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors.

The following is a reprint of N.C.G.S 66-27.1A, "Water heater thermostat settings."

- a) The thermostat of any new residential water heater offered for sale or lease for use in a single-family or multifamily dwelling in the State shall be preset by the manufacturer or installer no higher than approximately 120°F (49°C). A water heater reservoir temperature may be set higher if it is supplying space heaters that require higher temperatures.



## WATER HEATERS

For purposes of this section, a water heater shall mean the primary source of hot water for any single-family or multi-family residential dwelling including, but not limited to any solar or other hot water heating systems.

- b) Nothing in this section shall prohibit the occupant of a single-family or multiunit residential dwelling with an individual water heater from resetting or having reset the thermostat on the water heater. Any such resetting shall relieve the manufacturer or installer of the water heater and, in the case of a residential dwelling that is leased or rented, also the unit's owner, from liability for damages attributed to the resetting.
- c) A warning tag or sticker shall be placed on or near the operating thermostat control of any residential water heater. This tag or sticker shall state that the thermostat settings above the preset temperature may cause severe burns. This tag or sticker may carry such other appropriate warnings as may be agreed upon by manufacturers, installers and other interested parties.

**501.10 Fossil fuel equipment installation.** The installation of the following equipment and systems shall comply with the *North Carolina Fuel Gas Code*:

- 1. Fuel piping for any fossil fuel-burning equipment.
- 2. Venting systems for fossil fuel-burning equipment which is part of the plumbing system.

## SECTION 502 INSTALLATION

**502.1 General.** Water heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired water heaters shall conform to the requirements of this code and the ~~International~~*North Carolina Mechanical Code*. Electric water heaters shall conform to the requirements of this code and provisions of NFPA 70. Gas-fired water heaters shall conform to the requirements of the ~~International~~*North Carolina Fuel Gas Code*. Solar thermal water heating systems shall conform to the requirements of the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

**502.1.1 Elevation and protection.** Elevation of water heater ignition sources and mechanical damage protection requirements for water heaters shall be in accordance with the ~~International~~*North Carolina Mechanical Code* and the ~~International~~*North Carolina Fuel Gas Code*.

**502.2 Rooms used as a plenum.** Water heaters using solid, liquid or gas fuel shall not be installed in a room containing air-handling machinery where such room is used as a plenum.

**502.3 Water heaters installed in attics.** Attics containing a water heater shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the water heater. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in height and 22 inches (559 mm) in width and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length when measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the water heater. If 6 feet (1829 mm) of headroom is provided along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the water heater, the length of the passageway is permitted to exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in length. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in width. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in length and 30 inches (762 mm) in width shall be present at the front or service side of the water heater. The clear ~~access~~*access* opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm) where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the water heater.

**502.4 Seismic supports.** Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the ~~International~~*North Carolina Building Code*, water heater supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with the ~~International~~*North Carolina Building Code*.

**502.5 Clearances for maintenance and replacement.** ~~Deleted.~~ Appliances shall be provided with access for inspection, service, repair and replacement without disabling the function of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or removing permanent construction, other appliances or any other piping or ducts not connected to the appliance being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space not less than 30 inches in length and 30 inches in width (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an appliance.

**502.6 Installation in crawl spaces.** Under-floor spaces containing appliances requiring access shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest component of the appliance. The passageway shall not be less than 22 inches (559 mm) high and 36 inches (914 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length when measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the equipment. A level service space not less than 30

## WATER HEATERS

inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the appliance. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry extending 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and having sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be a minimum of 22 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm), where such dimensions are large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the appliance.

### Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the appliance is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet high (1829 mm) for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

### 502.7 Under-floor and exterior-grade installation.

**502.7.1 Exterior-grade installations.** Equipment and appliances installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or approved material a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

**502.7.2 Under-floor installation.** Suspended equipment shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the adjoining grade.

**502.7.3 Crawl space supports.** The support shall be a minimum of a 2-inch (51 mm) thick solid base, 2-inch (51 mm) thick formed concrete, or stacked masonry units held in place by mortar or other approved method. The water heater shall be supported not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above grade.

**502.7.4 Drainage.** Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. Existing installation that can be terminated outdoors must terminate outdoors. Where the installation is such that outdoor termination is impossible, indoor termination is ~~allowable~~ allowable if approved by the plumbing official.

**502.8 Prohibited installations.** Water heaters, (using solid, liquid or gas fuel) with the exception of those having direct vent systems, shall not be installed in bathrooms and bedrooms or in a closet with access only through a bedroom or bathroom. However, water heaters of the automatic storage type may be installed as replacement in a bathroom, when approved by the plumbing official, provided they are vented and supplied with adequate combustion air.

**Exception:** When a closet, having a weather-stripped solid door with an approved closing device, has been designed exclusively for the water heater and where all air for combustion and ventilation is supplied from outdoors.

## SECTION 503 CONNECTIONS

**503.1 Cold water line valve.** The cold water *branch* line from the main water supply line to each hot water storage tank or water heater shall be provided with a valve, located within 3 feet of the equipment and serving only the hot water storage tank or water heater. The valve shall not interfere or cause a disruption of the cold water supply to the remainder of the cold water system. The valve shall be provided with *access* on the same floor level as the water heater served.

**503.2 Water circulation.** The method of connecting a circulating water heater to the tank shall provide proper circulation of water through the water heater. The pipe or tubes required for the installation of appliances that will draw from the water heater or storage tank shall comply with the provisions of this code for material and installation. Installation shall comply with the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code*.

## SECTION 504 SAFETY DEVICES

**504.1 Antisiphon devices.** An *approved* means, such as a cold water "dip" tube with a hole at the top or a vacuum relief valve installed in the cold water supply line above the top of the heater or tank, shall be provided to prevent siphoning of any storage water heater or tank.

## WATER HEATERS

**504.2 Vacuum relief valve.** Bottom fed water heaters and bottom fed tanks connected to water heaters shall have a vacuum relief valve installed. The vacuum relief valve shall comply with ANSI ~~Z21.22~~ Z21.22 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**504.3 Shutdown.** A means for disconnecting an electric hot water supply system from its energy supply shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 70. A separate valve shall be provided to shut off the energy fuel supply to all other types of hot water supply systems.

**504.4 Relief valve.** Storage water heaters operating above atmospheric pressure shall be provided with an *approved*, self-closing (levered) pressure relief valve and temperature relief valve or combination thereof. The relief valve shall conform to ANSI Z21.22. The relief valve shall not be used as a means of controlling thermal expansion.

**504.4.1 Installation.** Such valves shall be installed in the shell of the water heater tank. Temperature relief valves shall be located in the tank so as to be actuated by the water in the top 6 inches (152 mm) of the tank served. For installations with separate storage tanks, the *approved*, self-closing (levered) pressure relief valve and temperature relief valve or combination thereof conforming to ANSI Z21.22 valves shall be installed on both the storage water heater and storage tank. There shall not be a check valve or shutoff valve between a relief valve and the heater or tank served.

**504.5 Relief valve approval.** Temperature and pressure relief valves, or combinations thereof, and energy cutoff devices shall bear the label of an *approved* agency and shall have a temperature setting of not more than 210°F (99°C) and a pressure setting not exceeding the tank or water heater manufacturer's rated working pressure or 150 psi (1035 kPa), whichever is less. The relieving capacity of each pressure relief valve and each temperature relief valve shall equal or exceed the heat input to the water heater or storage tank.

**504.6 Requirements for discharge piping.** The discharge piping serving a pressure relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination thereof shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge in the same room as the water heater either on the floor, into an indirect waste receptor, into a water heater ~~pan-pan~~ or to outdoors.
  - 2.1 Discharge through an *air gap* or air gap fitting to a remote termination point that is observable by the building occupants.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the *air gap*.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Deleted.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.
10. Terminate not more than 6 inches (152 mm) above and not less than two times the discharge pipe diameter above the floor or *flood level rim* of the waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section 605.4 or materials tested, rated and *approved* for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.
14. ~~The~~ A non-metallic discharge pipe shall be clamped or otherwise supported in accordance with per Table 308.5 with not less than one clamp or support within 12-inches of the point of discharge.

**504.7 Required pan.** Where a storage tank-type water heater or a hot water storage tank is installed in a location where water leakage from the tank will cause damage, such as in: (a) remote locations such as a suspended ceiling, (b) attics, (c) above occupied spaces, (d) ~~unventilated above~~ crawl spaces, or (e) in unventilated crawl spaces, a location where water leakage from the tank will cause damage to primary structural ~~members, framing,~~ the tank or water heater shall be installed in a ~~galva-~~

## WATER HEATERS

nized steel or aluminum pan having a material thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage for steel or No. 26 gage for aluminum), or other pans *approved* for such use, pan constructed of one of the following:

1. Galvanized steel or aluminum of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) in thickness.
2. Plastic not less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) in thickness. A plastic pan shall not be installed beneath a gas-fired water heater.
3. Other materials *approved* by the plumbing official.

### Exceptions:

1. Electric water heaters may rest in a high impact plastic pan of at least ~~1/16~~ inch (1.6 mm) thickness.
2. Water heater mounted on concrete floor with a floor drain.

**Exception:** A pan shall not be required for water heater(s) installed on concrete slab construction and located on the lowest floor or in a private garage.

**504.7.1 Pan size and drain.** The pan shall be not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) in depth and shall be of sufficient size and shape to receive all dripping or condensate from the tank or water heater. ~~The pan drain shall not be obstructed by the appliance.~~ The pan shall be drained by an indirect waste pipe having a diameter of not less than 1-inch (25.4 mm) (19 mm). Piping for safety pan drains shall be of those materials listed in Table 605.4. ~~Where a pan drain was not previously installed, a pan drain shall not be required for a replacement water heater installation.~~

**504.7.1.1 Water heater located in a pan.** Water Heater(s) are subject to water damage when drain pans fill. That portion of the water heater shall be installed above the rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the appliance or equipment shall be water resistant and approved by the plumbing official.

**504.7.2 Pan drain termination.** The pan drain shall extend full size and terminate over a suitably located indirect waste receptor or floor drain or extend to the exterior of the building and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and not more than 24 inches (610 mm) above the adjacent ground surface. ~~Where a pan drain was not previously installed, a pan drain shall not be required for a replacement water heater installation.~~

## SECTION 505 INSULATION

**[E] 505.1 Unfired vessel insulation.** Unfired hot water storage tanks shall be insulated to R-12.5 ( ~~$h \times ft^2 \times ^\circ F$~~ )/Btu ( ~~$R-2.2 m^2 \times K/W$~~ ). ( ~~$h \times ft^2 \times ^\circ F$~~ )/Btu ( ~~$R-2.2 m^2 \times K/W$~~ ).

## CHAPTER 6

# WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

### SECTION 601 GENERAL

**601.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern the materials, design and installation of water supply systems, both hot and cold, for utilization in connection with human occupancy and habitation and shall govern the installation of individual water supply systems.

**601.2 Solar energy utilization.** Solar energy systems used for heating potable water or using an independent medium for heating potable water shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code. The use of solar energy shall not compromise the requirements for cross connection or protection of the potable water supply system required by this code.

**601.3 Existing piping used for grounding.** Existing metallic water service piping used for electrical grounding shall not be replaced with nonmetallic pipe or tubing until other *approved* means of grounding is provided.

**601.4 Tests.** The potable water distribution system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.5.

**601.5 Rehabilitation of piping systems.** Where pressure piping systems are rehabilitated using an epoxy lining system, such lining system shall comply with ASTM F2831.

### SECTION 602 WATER REQUIRED

**602.1 General.** Structures equipped with plumbing fixtures and utilized for human occupancy or habitation shall be provided with a potable supply of water in the amounts and at the pressures specified in this chapter.

**602.2 Potable water required.** Only potable water shall be supplied to plumbing fixtures that provide water for drinking, bathing or culinary purposes, or for the processing of food, medical or pharmaceutical products. Unless otherwise provided in this code, potable water shall be supplied to all plumbing fixtures.

**602.3 Individual water supply.** Where a potable public water supply is not available, individual sources of potable water supply shall be utilized.

### SECTION 603 WATER SERVICE

**603.1 Size of water service pipe.** The water service pipe shall be sized to supply water to the structure in the quantities and at the pressures required in this code. The water service pipe shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) in diameter.

**603.2 Separation of water service and building sewer.**

1. Where water service piping is located in the same trench with the *building sewer*, such *sewer* shall be constructed of materials listed in Table 702.2.
2. Where the *building sewer* piping is not constructed of materials listed in Table 702.2, the water service pipe and the *building sewer* shall be horizontally separated by not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth.
3. The required separation distance shall not apply where a water service pipe crosses a *sewer* pipe, provided the water service is sleeved to a point not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the *sewer* pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing. The sleeve shall be of pipe materials listed in Table 605.3, 702.2 or 702.3.

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

4. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the water service pipe, located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the *sewer*, is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the highest point of the top of the *building sewer*.

**603.2.1 Water service near sources of pollution.** Potable water service pipes shall not be located in, under or above cess-pools, septic tanks, septic tank drainage fields or seepage pits (see Section 605.1 for soil and ground water conditions) pits. Where soil or ground water causes contaminated conditions for piping, analysis shall be required in accordance with Section 605.1.

### SECTION 604 DESIGN OF BUILDING WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

**604.1 General.** The design of the water distribution system shall conform to *accepted engineering practice*. Methods utilized to determine pipe sizes shall be *approved*.

**604.2 System interconnection.** At the points of interconnection between the hot and cold water supply piping systems and the individual fixtures, appliances or devices, provisions shall be made to prevent undesired flow between such piping systems.

**604.3 Water distribution system design criteria.** The water distribution system shall be designed, and pipe sizes shall be selected such that under conditions of peak demand, the capacities at the fixture supply pipe outlets shall be not less than shown in Table 604.3. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure provided to fixtures and appliances not listed in Table 604.3 shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**TABLE 604.3  
WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM DESIGN CRITERIA  
REQUIRED CAPACITY AT FIXTURE SUPPLY PIPE OUTLETS**

| FIXTURE SUPPLY OUTLET SERVING   | FLOW RATE <sup>a</sup><br>(gpm) | FLOW PRESSURE<br>(psi) |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| Bathtub, balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/<br>thermostatic mixing valve | 4                               | 20                     |
| Bidet, thermostatic mixing valve  | 2                               | 20                     |
| Combination fixture   | 4                               | 8                      |
| Dishwasher, residential   | 2.75                            | 8                      |
| Drinking fountain   | 0.75                            | 8                      |
| Laundry tray  | 4                               | 8                      |
| Lavatory, private   | 0.8                             | 8                      |
| Lavatory, private, mixing valve   | 0.8                             | 8                      |
| Lavatory, public  | 0.4                             | 8                      |
| Shower  | 2.5                             | 8                      |
| Shower, balanced-pressure, thermostatic or combination balanced-pressure/<br>thermostatic mixing valve  | 2.5 <sup>b</sup>                | 20                     |
| Sillcock, hose bibb   | 5                               | 8                      |
| Sink, residential   | 1.75                            | 8                      |

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

|   |     |    |
|---|-----|----|
| Sink, service                             | 3   | 8  |
| Urinal, valve                             | 12  | 25 |
| Water closet, blow out, flushometer valve | 25  | 45 |
| Water closet, flushometer tank            | 1.6 | 20 |
| Water closet, siphonic, flushometer valve | 25  | 35 |
| Water closet, tank, close coupled         | 3   | 20 |
| Water closet, tank, one piece             | 6   | 20 |

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. For additional requirements for flow rates and quantities, see Section 604.4.

b. Where the shower mixing valve manufacturer indicates a lower flow rating for the mixing valve, the lower value shall be applied.

**604.4 Maximum flow and water consumption.** The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for all plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings shall be in accordance with Table 604.4.

### Exceptions:

1. Blowout design water closets having a water consumption not greater than 3½ gallons (13 L) per flushing cycle.
2. Vegetable sprays.
3. Clinical sinks having a water consumption not greater than 4½ gallons (17 L) per flushing cycle.
4. Service sinks.
5. Emergency showers.

**TABLE 604.4**  
**MAXIMUM FLOW RATES AND CONSUMPTION FOR**  
**PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE FITTINGS**

| PLUMBING FIXTURE OR<br>FIXTURE FITTING    | MAXIMUM FLOW<br>RATE OR QUANTITY <sup>b</sup> |
|---|---|
| Lavatory, private                         | 2.2 gpm at 60 psi                             |
| Lavatory, public (metering)               | 0.25 gallon per metering cycle                |
| Lavatory, public<br>(other than metering) | 0.5 gpm at 60 psi                             |
| Shower head <sup>a</sup>                  | 2.5 gpm at 80 psi                             |
| Sink faucet                               | 2.2 gpm at 60 psi                             |
| Urinal                                    | 1.0 gallon per flushing cycle                 |
| Water closet                              | 1.6 gallons per flushing cycle                |

For SI: 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m,

1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

a. A hand-held shower spray is a shower head.

b. Consumption tolerances shall be determined from referenced standards.

**604.4.1 Lavatory faucets.** Lavatory faucets shall be of the metering type when located in the following public restrooms:

1. In all occupancies in restrooms which have six or more lavatories.
2. In school occupancies in student-use restrooms.

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

3. In assembly occupancies in all customer or public-use restrooms

**604.5 Size of fixture supply.** The minimum size of a fixture supply pipe shall be as shown in Table 604.5. The fixture supply pipe shall terminate not more than 36 inches (762 mm) from the point of connection to the fixture. A reduced-size flexible water connector installed between the supply pipe and the fixture shall be of an *approved* type. The supply pipe shall extend to the floor or wall adjacent to the fixture. The minimum size of individual distribution lines utilized in gridded or parallel water distribution systems shall be as shown in Table 604.5.

**Exception:** The length of restriction shall not apply to residential dishwashers or ice makers.

**TABLE 604.5  
MINIMUM SIZES OF FIXTURE WATER SUPPLY PIPES**

| FIXTURE                                       | MINIMUM PIPE SIZE<br>(inch) |
|---|-----------------------------|
| Bathtubs <sup>a</sup> (60" × 32" and smaller) | 1/2                         |
| Bathtubs <sup>a</sup> (larger than 60" × 32") | 1/2                         |
| Bidet   | 3/8                         |
| Combination sink and tray                     | 1/2                         |
| Dishwasher, domestic <sup>a</sup>             | 1/2                         |
| Drinking fountain                             | 3/8                         |
| Hose bibbs                                    | 1/2                         |
| Kitchen sink <sup>a</sup>                     | 1/2                         |
| Laundry, 1, 2 or 3 compartments <sup>a</sup>  | 1/2                         |
| Lavatory                                      | 3/8                         |
| Shower, single head <sup>a</sup>              | 1/2                         |
| Sinks, flushing rim                           | 3/4                         |
| Sinks, service                                | 1/2                         |
| Urinal, flush tank                            | 1/2                         |
| Urinal, flushometer valve                     | 3/4                         |
| Wall hydrant                                  | 1/2                         |
| Water closet, flush tank                      | 3/8                         |
| Water closet, flushometer tank                | 3/8                         |
| Water closet, flushometer valve               | 1                           |
| Water closet, one piece <sup>a</sup>          | 1/2                         |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm,  
1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa.

- a. Where the developed length of the distribution line is 60 feet or less, and the available pressure at the meter is 35 40 psi or greater, the minimum size of an individual distribution line supplied from a manifold and installed as part of a parallel water distribution system shall be one nominal tube size smaller than the sizes indicated.



## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

**604.6 Variable street pressures.** Where street water main pressures fluctuate, the building water distribution system shall be designed for the minimum pressure available.

**604.7 Inadequate water pressure.** Wherever water pressure from the street main or other source of supply is insufficient to provide flow pressures at fixture outlets as required under Table 604.3, a water pressure booster system conforming to Section 606.5 shall be installed on the building water supply system.

**604.8 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator.** Where water pressure within a building exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, an *approved* water pressure-reducing valve conforming to ASSE 1003 or CSA B356 with strainer shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the building water distribution piping to not greater than 80 psi (552 kPa) static-static over a 24 hour period.

**Exception:** Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

**604.8.1 Valve design.** The pressure-reducing valve shall be designed to remain open to permit uninterrupted water flow in case of valve failure.

**604.8.2 Repair and removal.** Water pressure-reducing valves, regulators and strainers shall be so constructed and installed as to permit repair or removal of parts without breaking a pipeline or removing the valve and strainer from the pipeline.

**604.9 Water hammer.** The flow velocity of the water distribution system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. A water-hammer arrestor shall be installed where *quick-closing valves* (for example: clothes washers, dishwashers, ice makers) and metallic piping are used. ~~The water hammer arrestor shall not be required on any valves where plastic pipe is used for water distribution piping.~~ Water-hammer arrestors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Water-hammer arrestors shall conform to ASSE 1010.

**604.10 Gridded and parallel water distribution system manifolds.** Hot water and cold water manifolds installed with gridded or parallel connected individual distribution lines to each fixture or fixture fitting shall be designed in accordance with Sections 604.10.1 through 604.10.3.

**604.10.1 Manifold sizing.** Hot water and cold water manifolds shall be sized in accordance with Table 604.10.1. The total gallons per minute is the demand of all outlets supplied.

**TABLE 604.10.1  
MANIFOLD SIZING**

| NOMINAL SIZE<br>INTERNAL DIAMETER<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM DEMAND (gpm)             |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
|   | Velocity at<br>4 feet per second | Velocity at<br>8 feet per second |
| 1/2   | 2                                | 5                                |
| 3/4   | 6                                | 11                               |
| 1   | 10                               | 20                               |
| 1 1/4   | 15                               | 31                               |
| 1 1/2   | 22                               | 44                               |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m,  
1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

**604.10.2 Valves.** Individual fixture shutoff valves installed at the manifold shall be identified as to the fixture being supplied.

**604.10.3 Access.** *Access* shall be provided to ~~manifolds~~ manifolds with integral factory- or field-installed valves.

**604.11 Individual pressure balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings.** Where individual pressure balancing in-line valves for individual fixture fittings are installed, such valves shall comply with ASSE 1066. Such valves shall be installed in ~~an accessible location and with access.~~ The valves shall not be utilized alone as a substitute for the balanced pressure, thermostatic or combination shower valves required in Section 424.3-412.3.

## SECTION 605 MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

**605.1 Soil and ground water.** The installation of a water service or water distribution pipe shall be prohibited in soil and ground water contaminated with solvents, fuels, organic compounds or other detrimental materials causing permeation, corrosion, degradation or structural failure of the piping material. Where detrimental conditions are suspected, a chemical analysis of the soil and ground water conditions shall be required to ascertain the acceptability of the water service or water distribution piping material for the specific installation. Where detrimental conditions exist, *approved* alternative materials or routing shall be required.

**605.2 Lead content of water supply pipe and fittings.** Pipe and pipe fittings, including valves and faucets, utilized in the water supply system shall have not more than 8-percent lead content.

**605.2.1 Lead content of drinking water pipe and fittings.** Pipe, pipe fittings, joints, valves, faucets and fixture fittings utilized to supply water for drinking or cooking purposes shall comply with NSF 372 and shall have a weighted average lead content of 0.25 percent or less.

**605.3 Water service pipe.** Water service pipe shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.3. Water service pipe or tubing, installed underground and outside of the structure, shall have a working pressure rating of not less than 160 psi (1100 kPa) at 73.4°F (23°C). Where the water pressure exceeds 160 psi (1100 kPa), piping material shall have a working pressure rating not less than the highest available pressure. Water service piping materials not third-party certified for water distribution shall terminate 5 feet (1.524 m) outside of the building at or before the full open valve located at the entrance to the structure. Ductile iron water service piping shall be cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA C104/C104/A21.4.

**TABLE 605.3  
WATER SERVICE PIPE**

| MATERIAL  | STANDARD   |
|---|--|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe  | ASTM D1527; ASTM D2282                                   |
| <del>Brass pipe</del>   | <del>ASTM B43</del>                                      |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe  | ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6             |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC)         | ASTM F2855   |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe   | ASTM B42; <del>ASTM B43</del> ; ASTM B302                |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, <del>WL, M or WM</del> ) <u>WL</u> <sup>a</sup> | ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B447                 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic pipe and tubing                                       | ASTM F876; <del>ASTM F877</del> ; AWWA C904; CSA B137.5  |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe                | ASTM F1281; ASTM F2262; CSA B137.10                      |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE)                    | ASTM F1986   |
| Ductile iron water pipe   | AWWA C151/A21.51; AWWA C115/A21.15                       |
| Galvanized steel pipe   | ASTM A53   |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe  | ASTM D2239; ASTM D3035; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1            |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic tubing  | ASTM D2737; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1                        |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pipe  | ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9                                   |
| Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing                                     | <del>ASTM F2769</del> <u>F2769</u> ; CSA B137.18         |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing   | ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11                                  |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe   | ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241; ASTM D2672; CSA B137.3           |
| Stainless steel pipe (Type 304/304L)  | <del>ASTM A269</del> <u>A269M</u> ; ASTM A312; ASTM A778 |

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

Stainless steel pipe (Type 316/316L)

ASTM A269/A269M; ASTM A312; ASTM A778

a. Below grade Type K, WK, L, WL

**605.3.1 Dual check-valve-type backflow preventer.** Dual check-valve backflow preventers installed on the water supply system shall comply with ASSE 1024 or CSA B64.6.

**605.4 Water distribution pipe.** Water distribution pipe and tubing shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.4. Hot water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a pressure rating of not less than 100 psi (690 kPa) at 180°F (82°C). Cold water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a minimum pressure rating of 160 psi (1100 kPa) at 73.4°F (23°C).

**TABLE 605.4  
WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPE**

| MATERIAL  | STANDARD   |
|---|--|
| <del>Brass pipe</del>   | <del>ASTM B43</del>                                  |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe and tubing                         | ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442; CSA B137.6         |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC) | ASTM F2855   |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe ( <u>Brass</u> )  | ASTM B42; <u>ASTM B43</u> ; ASTM B302                |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, WK, L, WL, M or WM) <sup>a</sup>               | ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B447             |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing  | ASTM F876; <del>ASTM F877</del> ; CSA B137.5         |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pipe        | ASTM F1281; ASTM F2262; CSA B137.10                  |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE)            | ASTM F1986   |
| Ductile iron pipe   | AWWA C115/A21.15; AWWA C151/A21.51                   |
| Galvanized steel pipe   | ASTM A53   |
| Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) composite pipe                          | ASTM F1282   |
| Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing                             | <del>ASTM F2769</del> <u>ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18</u> |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing   | ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11                              |
| Stainless steel pipe (Type 304/304L)  | ASTM A312; ASTM A778                                 |
| Stainless steel pipe (Type 316/316L)  | ASTM A312; ASTM A778                                 |

a. Below grade Type K, WK, L, WL

**605.5 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 605.5. Pipe fittings utilized in water supply systems shall also comply with NSF 61. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Ductile and gray iron pipe and pipe fittings utilized in water service piping systems shall be cement mortar lined in accordance with AWWA ~~C104~~ C104/A21.4.

**TABLE 605.5  
PIPE FITTINGS**

| MATERIAL                                      | STANDARD   |
|---|------------|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic | ASTM D2468 |

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Cast iron   | ASME B16.4  |
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic   | ASSE 1061; ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; CSA B137.6  |
| Copper or copper alloy ( <u>Brass</u> )   | ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.51; ASSE 1061; ASTM F1476; ASTM <del>F1548</del> F1548; ASTM F3226 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/high-density polyethylene (PEX-AL-HDPE)  | ASTM F1986  |
| Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing   | ASSE 1061; ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; ASTM F2735; CSA B137.5            |
| Fittings for polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) plastic tubing  | ASSE 1061; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM <del>F2769</del> F2769; CSA B137.18                 |
| Gray iron and ductile iron  | ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548; AWWA C110/A21.10; AWWA C153/A21.53;   |
| Insert fittings for polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX)               | ASTM F1281; ASTM F1282; ASTM F1974; CSA B137.9; CSA <del>B137.10</del> B137.10  |
| Malleable iron  | ASME B16.3  |
| Metal (brass) insert fittings for polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) | ASTM F1974  |
| Polybutylene (PB) plastic   | ASSE 1061; CSA B137.8   |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe  | ASTM D2609; ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1  |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe or tubing   | ASTM F2389; CSA B137.11   |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic  | ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3  |
| Stainless steel (Type 304/304L)   | ASTM A312; ASTM A778; ASTM F1476; ASTM <del>F1548</del> F1548; ASTM F3226   |
| Stainless steel (Type 316/316L)   | ASTM A312; ASTM A778; ASTM F1476; ASTM <del>F1548</del> F1548; ASTM F3226   |
| Steel   | ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28; ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548  |

**605.5.1 Mechanically formed tee fittings.** Mechanically extracted outlets shall have a height not less than three times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

**605.5.1.1 Full flow assurance.** Branch tubes shall not restrict the flow in the run tube. A dimple serving as a depth stop shall be formed in the branch tube to ensure that penetration into the collar is of the correct depth. For inspection purposes, a second dimple shall be placed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) above the first dimple. Dimples shall be aligned with the tube run.

**605.5.1.2 Brazed joints.** Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be brazed in accordance with Section 605.14.1.

**605.6 Flexible water connectors.** Flexible water connectors exposed to continuous pressure shall conform to ASME A112.18.6/CSA B125.6. Access shall be provided to all flexible water connectors.

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

**605.7 Valves.** Valves shall be compatible with the type of piping material installed in the system. Valves shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.7 or shall be *approved*. Valves intended to supply drinking water shall meet the requirements of NSF 61.

**TABLE 605.7  
VALVES**

| MATERIAL                                      | STANDARD  |
|---|---|
| Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic | ASME A112.4.14; ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1; ASTM F1970; CSA B125.3; IAPMO Z1157; MSS SP-122                                    |
| Copper or copper alloy ( <u>Brass</u> )       | ASME A112.4.14; ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1; ASME B16.34; CSA B125.3; IAPMO Z1157; MSS SP-67; MSS SP-80; MSS SP-110; MSS SP-139 |
| Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic       | ASME A112.4.14; ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1; CSA B125.3; IAPMO Z1157; NSF 359   |
| Gray iron and ductile iron                    | AWWA C500; AWWA C504; AWWA C507; IAPMO Z1157; MSS SP-67; MSS SP-70; MSS SP-71; MSS SP-72; MSS SP-78                           |
| Polypropylene (PP) plastic                    | ASME A112.4.14; ASTM F2389; IAPMO Z1157   |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic              | ASME A112.4.14; ASTM F1970; IAPMO Z1157; MSS SP-122   |

**605.8 Manufactured pipe nipples.** Manufactured pipe nipples shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.8.

**TABLE 605.8  
MANUFACTURED PIPE NIPPLES**

| MATERIAL  | STANDARD  |
|---|-----------|
| <del>Brass, copper,</del> Copper, copper alloy (Brass), and chromium-plated | ASTM B687 |
| Steel   | ASTM A733 |

**605.9 Prohibited joints and connections.** The following types of joints and connections shall be prohibited:

1. Cement or concrete joints.
2. Joints made with fittings not *approved* for the specific installation.
3. Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.
4. Saddle-type fittings.

**605.10 ABS plastic.** Joints between ABS plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.10.1 through 605.10.3.

**605.10.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on water pipes shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D3139. Mechanical joints shall only be installed in underground systems, unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.10.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**605.10.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. ~~Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe.~~ Where pipe is to be threaded, the pipe shall have a wall thickness of not less than Schedule 80. Pipe threads shall be made with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**605.11 Brass.**

Joints between brass pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.11.1 through 605.11.4.

**605.11.1 Brazed joints.**

All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**605.11.2 Mechanical joints.**

Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.11.3 Threaded joints.**

Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**605.11.4 Welded joints.**

All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

**605.12 Gray iron and ductile iron joints.** Joints for gray and ductile iron pipe and fittings shall comply with AWWA C111/A21.11 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.13 ~~Copper pipe.~~Copper-alloy pipe (Brass).** Joints between copper pipe or copper-alloy (brass) pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.13.1 through 605.13.5.

**605.13.1 Brazed joints.** ~~All joint~~Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**605.13.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.13.3 Solder joints.** Solder joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. The joining of water supply piping shall be made with *lead-free solder and fluxes*. "Lead free" shall mean a chemical composition equal to or less than 0.2-percent lead. Solder and flux joining pipe or fittings intended to supply drinking water shall conform to NSF 61.

**605.13.4 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**605.13.5 Welded joints.** Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

**605.14 Copper tubing.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.14.1 through ~~605.14.5-605.14.7.~~

**605.14.1 Brazed joints.** Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**605.14.2 Flared joints.** Flared joints for water pipe shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

**605.14.3 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints.** Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

**605.14.4 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.14.5 Press-connect joints.** Press-connect joints shall conform to one of the standards ~~listed~~indicated in Table 605.5, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The tube shall be fully inserted into the press-connect fitting. Press-connect joints shall be pressed with a tool certified by the manufacturer.

**605.14.6 Solder joints.** Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B828. ~~All cut~~Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. ~~All joint~~Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. The joining of water supply piping shall be made with ~~lead-free solders~~ solder and fluxes. "Lead free" shall mean a chemical composition equal to or less than 0.2-percent lead. Solder and flux joining pipe or fittings intended to supply drinking water shall conform to NSF 61.

**605.14.7 Push-fit fitting joints.** Push-fit fittings shall conform to ASSE 1061 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.15 CPVC plastic.** Joints between CPVC plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.15.1 through ~~605.15.3-605.15.4.~~

**605.15.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.15.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and an approved primer shall be applied. Solvent cement, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F493, shall be applied to joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and in accordance with ASTM D2846 or ASTM F493. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**Exception:** A primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement used is yellow or red in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining ½ inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) CPVC pipe and CPVC fittings.
4. The CPVC systems are installed in accordance with ASTM D2846.

**605.15.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. ~~Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe, but the pressure rating of the pipe shall be reduced by 50 percent. Where pipe is to be threaded, the pipe shall have a wall thickness of not less than Schedule 80. Pipe threads shall be made with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. The pressure rating of threaded pipe shall be reduced by 50 percent. Thread-by-socket~~ Thread-by-socket molded fittings shall be permitted. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**605.15.4 Push-fit joints.** Push-fit joints shall conform to ASSE 1061 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.16 Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC) pipe and tubing.** Joints between CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipe or CPVC fittings shall comply with Sections 605.16.1 and 605.16.2.

**605.16.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.16.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and an approved primer shall be applied. Solvent cement, orange in color and conforming to ASTM F493, shall be applied to joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet, and in accordance with ASTM D2846 or ASTM F493. Solvent cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**Exception:** A primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement used is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining ½-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) CPVC/AL/CPVC pipe and CPVC fittings.
4. The CPVC fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

**605.17 PEX plastic.** Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.17.1 and ~~through 605.17.2-605.17.3.~~

**605.17.1 Flared joints.** Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

**605.17.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 605.5 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. PEX tubing shall be factory marked with the appropriate standards for the fittings that the PEX manufacturer specifies for use with the tubing.

**605.17.3 Push-fit joints.** Push-fit joints shall conform to ASSE 1061 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.18 Steel.** Joints between galvanized steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.18.1 through 605.18.3.

**605.18.1 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**605.18.2 Mechanical joints.** Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.18.3 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints.** Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

**605.19 PE plastic.** Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe or tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.19.1 through 605.19.4.

**605.19.1 Flared joints.** Flared joints shall be permitted where so indicated by the pipe manufacturer. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

**605.19.2 Heat-fusion joints.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. ~~All joint~~ Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657.

**605.19.3 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.19.4 Installation.** Polyethylene pipe shall be cut square, with a cutter designed for plastic pipe. Except where joined by heat fusion, pipe ends shall be chamfered to remove sharp edges. Kinked pipe shall not be installed. The minimum pipe bending radius shall be not less than 30 pipe diameters, or the minimum coil radius, whichever is greater. Piping shall not be bent beyond straightening of the curvature of the coil. Bends shall be prohibited within 10 pipe diameters of any fitting or valve. Stiffener inserts installed with compression-type couplings and fittings shall not extend beyond the clamp or nut of the coupling or fitting.

**605.20 Polypropylene (PP) plastic.** Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Section 605.20.1 or 605.20.2.

**605.20.1 Heat-fusion joints.** Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, butt-fusion polypropylene fittings or electrofusion polypropylene fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

**605.20.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints.** Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.21 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) and cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX).** Joints between PE-AL-PE or PEX-AL-PEX pipe and fittings shall comply with Section 605.21.1.

**605.21.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for PE-AL-PE and PEX-AL-PEX as described in ASTM F1281, ASTM F1282, ASTM F1974, CSA B137.9 and CSA B137.10 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.22 PVC plastic.** Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.22.1 through ~~605.22.3-605.22.4.~~



## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

**605.22.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on water pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D3139. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.22.2 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints.** Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

**605.22.3 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564 or CSA B137.3 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**605.22.4 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. ~~Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe, but the pressure rating of the pipe shall be reduced by 50 percent.~~ Where pipe is to be threaded, the pipe shall have a wall thickness of not less than Schedule 80. Pipe threads shall be made with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. The pressure rating of threaded pipe shall be reduced by 50 percent. ~~Thread-by-socket~~ Thread-by-socket molded fittings shall be permitted. ~~Approved~~ Approved thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**605.23 Stainless steel.** Joints between stainless steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 605.23.1 through 605.23.3.

**605.23.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.23.2 Welded joints.** ~~All joint~~ Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded autogenously or with an *approved* filler metal as referenced in ASTM A312.

**605.23.3 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints.** Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall comply with ASTM F1476, shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Such joints shall be exposed or concealed.

**605.24 Joints between different materials.** Joints between different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type, or ~~as permitted in Sections 605.24.1, 605.24.2 and 605.24.3.~~ shall be made in accordance with Section 605.24.1, 605.24.2 or 605.24.3. Connectors or adapters shall have an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM F477. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**605.24.1 Copper or copper-alloy tubing to galvanized steel pipe.** Joints between copper pipe or copper-alloy tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a ~~brass~~ copper-alloy fitting or dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to ASSE 1079. The copper tubing shall be soldered to the fitting in an *approved* manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

**605.24.2 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material.** Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with *approved* adapters or transition fittings.

**605.24.3 Stainless steel.** Joints between stainless steel and different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical sealing type or a dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to ASSE 1079.

**605.25 PE-RT plastic.** Joints between polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing and fittings shall be in accordance with Section 605.25.1.

**605.25.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fittings for polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing shall comply with the applicable standards ~~listed~~ indicated in Table 605.5 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Polyethylene of raised temperature plastic tubing shall be factory marked with the applicable standards for the fittings that the manufacturer of the tubing specifies for use with the tubing.

**605.26 Polybutylene plastic.** Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall comply with Sections 605.26.1 through 605.26.3.

**605.26.1 Flared joints.** Flared pipe ends shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

**605.26.2 Heat-fusion joints.** Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. All joint surfaces shall be heated to the melting temperature and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657, ASTM D3309 or CAN3-B137.8M.

**605.26.3 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION 606 INSTALLATION OF THE BUILDING WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

**606.1 Location of full-open valves.** ~~Full-open valves~~ Full-open valves shall be installed in the following locations:

1. Deleted.
2. A full-open valve shall be located either inside or outside the building within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the foundation wall in a readily accessible valve box, in the crawl space within 3 feet (914 mm) of the crawl space access door or within the building in a location where it may be accessed without the use of a ladder or a tool for each individual tenant space occupancy or address.
3. Deleted.
4. On the base of every water riser pipe in occupancies other than multiple-family residential *occupancies* that are two stories or less in height and in one- and two-family residential *occupancies*.
5. On the top of every water down-feed pipe in *occupancies* other than one- and two-family residential *occupancies*.
6. On the entrance to every water supply pipe to a dwelling unit, except where supplying a single fixture equipped with individual stops.
7. On the water supply pipe to a gravity or pressurized water tank.
8. On the water supply pipe to every water heater.

**606.2 Location of shutoff valves.** Shutoff valves shall be installed in the following locations:

1. On the fixture supply to each plumbing fixture other than bathtubs and showers in one- and two-family residential *occupancies*, and other than in individual sleeping units that are provided with unit shutoff valves in hotels, motels, boarding houses and similar *occupancies*.
2. On the water supply pipe for sillcocks.
3. On the water supply pipe to each appliance or mechanical equipment.

**606.2.1 Buildings other than dwellings or dwelling units.** Each supply branch line serving more than one fixture shall have a shutoff valve installed so as to isolate all fixtures and all pieces of equipment supplied by the branch line. The shutoff valve shall be labeled and located as close to the connection to the supply main and riser as practical.

**606.3 Access to valves.** Access shall be provided to all ~~full-open valves~~ full-open valves and shutoff valves.

**606.4 Valve identification.** ~~Service~~ Service, sillcock and hose bibb valves shall be identified. ~~All other~~ Other valves installed in locations that are not adjacent to the fixture or appliance shall be identified, indicating the fixture or appliance served.

**606.5 Water pressure booster systems.** Water pressure booster systems shall be provided as required by Sections 606.5.1 through 606.5.10.

**606.5.1 Water pressure booster systems required.** Where the water pressure in the public water main or individual water supply system is insufficient to supply the minimum pressures and quantities specified in this code, the supply shall be supplemented by an elevated water tank, a hydropneumatic pressure booster system or a water pressure booster pump installed in accordance with Section 606.5.5.

**606.5.2 Support.** ~~All water~~ Water supply tanks shall be supported in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

**606.5.3 Covers.** ~~All water~~ Water supply tanks shall be covered to keep out unauthorized persons, dirt and vermin. The covers of gravity tanks shall be vented with a return bend vent pipe with an area not less than the area of the down-feed riser pipe, and the vent shall be screened with a corrosion-resistant screen of not less than 16 by 20 mesh per inch (630 by 787 mesh per m).

**606.5.4 Overflows for water supply tanks.** A gravity or suction water supply tank shall be provided with an overflow with a diameter not less than that shown in Table 606.5.4. The overflow outlet shall discharge at a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof or roof drain; floor or floor drain; or over an open water-supplied fixture. The overflow outlet shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of not less than 16 by 20 mesh per inch (630 by 787 mesh per m) and by  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) hardware cloth or shall terminate in a horizontal angle seat check valve. Drainage from overflow pipes shall be directed so as not to freeze on roof walks.

**TABLE 606.5.4  
SIZES FOR OVERFLOW PIPES FOR WATER SUPPLY TANKS**

| MAXIMUM CAPACITY OF WATER<br>SUPPLY LINE TO TANK (gpm) | DIAMETER OF OVERFLOW PIPE<br>(inches) |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 0 – 50   | 2                                     |
| 51 – 150   | 2½                                    |
| 151 – 200  | 3                                     |
| 201 – 400  | 4                                     |
| 401 – 700  | 5                                     |
| 701 – 1,000  | 6                                     |
| Over 1,000   | 8                                     |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

**606.5.5 Low-pressure cutoff required on booster pumps.** A low-pressure cutoff shall be installed on all booster pumps in a water pressure booster system to prevent creation of a vacuum or negative pressure on the suction side of the pump when a positive pressure of 10 psi (68.94 kPa) or less occurs on the suction side of the pump.

**606.5.6 Potable water inlet control and location.** Potable water inlets to gravity tanks shall be controlled by a fill valve or other automatic supply valve installed so as to prevent the tank from overflowing. The inlet shall be terminated so as to provide an *air gap* not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the overflow.

**606.5.7 Tank drain pipes.** A ~~valved pipe~~ drain pipe with a valve shall be provided at the lowest point of each tank to permit emptying of the tank. The tank drain pipe shall discharge as required for overflow pipes and shall not be smaller in size than specified in Table 606.5.7.

**TABLE 606.5.7  
SIZE OF DRAIN PIPES FOR WATER TANKS**

| TANK CAPACITY (gallons) | DRAIN PIPE (inches) |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Up to 750               | 1                   |
| 751 to 1,500            | 1½                  |
| 1,501 to 3,000          | 2                   |
| 3,001 to 5,000          | 2½                  |
| 5,001 to 7,500          | 3                   |
| Over 7,500              | 4                   |

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

**606.5.8 Prohibited location of potable supply tanks.** Potable water gravity tanks or manholes of potable water pressure tanks shall not be located directly under any soil or waste piping or any source of contamination.

**606.5.9 Pressure tanks, vacuum relief.** ~~All water~~Water pressure tanks shall be provided with a vacuum relief valve at the top of the tank that will operate up to a maximum water pressure of 200 psi (1380 kPa) and up to a maximum temperature of 200°F (93°C). The size of such vacuum relief valve shall be not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to pressurized captive air diaphragm/bladder tanks.

**606.5.10 Pressure relief for tanks.** Every pressure tank in a hydropneumatic pressure booster system shall be protected with a pressure relief valve. The pressure relief valve shall be set at a maximum pressure equal to the rating of the tank. The relief valve shall be installed on the supply pipe to the tank or on the tank. The relief valve shall discharge by gravity to a safe place of disposal.

**606.6 Water supply system test.** Upon completion of a section of or the entire water supply system, the system, or portion completed, shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**606.7 Labeling of water distribution pipes in bundles.**

Where water distribution piping is bundled at installation, each pipe in the bundle shall be identified using stenciling or commercially available pipe labels. The identification shall indicate the pipe contents and the direction of flow in the pipe. The interval of the identification markings on the pipe shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm). There shall be not less than one identification label on each pipe in each room, space or story.

□

## SECTION 607 HOT WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM

**607.1 Where required.** In residential *occupancies*, *hot water* shall be supplied to plumbing fixtures and equipment utilized for bathing, washing, culinary purposes, cleansing, laundry or building maintenance. In nonresidential *occupancies*, *hot water* may be supplied for culinary purposes, cleansing, laundry or building maintenance purposes. In nonresidential *occupancies*, *hot water* or *tempered water* may be supplied for bathing and washing purposes.

**607.1.1 Temperature limiting means.** A thermostat control for a water heater shall ~~not only~~ serve as the temperature limiting means for the purposes of complying with the requirements of this code for maximum allowable *hot* or *tempered water* delivery temperature at ~~fixtures~~ fixtures where the water heater complies with ASSE 1082 or ASSE 1085.

**607.1.2 Tempered water temperature control.** ~~Tempered water shall be supplied through a water temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 and shall limit the tempered water to a maximum of 110°F (43°C) controlled by one the following:~~

1. A limiting device conforming to ASSE 1070/ASME A112.1070/CSA B125.70 and set to not greater than 110°F (43°C).
2. A thermostatic mixing valve conforming to ASSE 1017.
3. A water heater conforming to ASSE 1082.
4. A water heater conforming to ASSE 1084.

This provision shall not supersede the requirement for protective shower valves in accordance with Section ~~424.3~~ 412.3.

**607.2 Hot or tempered water supply to fixtures.** The *developed length* of *hot* or *tempered water* piping, from the source of hot water to the fixtures that require *hot* or *tempered water*, shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm). Recirculating system piping and heat-traced piping shall be considered to be sources of *hot* or *tempered water*.

**607.2.1 Circulation systems and heat trace systems for maintaining heated water temperature in distribution systems.** For Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, the installation of heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*. For other than Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

above grade plane, the installation of heated water circulation and heat trace systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

**607.2.1.1 Pump controls for hot water storage systems.** The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a storage tank for heated water shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

**607.2.1.2 Demand recirculation controls for distribution systems.** A water distribution system having one or more recirculation pumps that pump water from a heated water supply pipe back to the heated water source through a cold water supply pipe shall be a demand recirculation water system. Pumps shall have controls that comply with both of the following:

1. The control shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture, or sensing the flow of hot or ~~tempered water~~ tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.
2. The control shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to 104°F (40°C).

**607.2.2 Piping for recirculation systems having ~~master thermostatic~~ temperature-actuated mixing valves.** Where a ~~thermostatic~~ temperature-actuated mixing valve is used in a system with a hot water recirculating pump, the *hot water* or *tempered water* return line shall be routed to the cold water inlet pipe of the water heater and the cold water inlet pipe or the hot water return connection of the ~~thermostatic~~ temperature-actuated mixing valve.

**607.3 Thermal expansion control.** Where a storage water heater is supplied with cold water that passes through a check valve, pressure reducing valve or backflow preventer, a thermal expansion ~~tank~~ control device shall be connected to the water heater cold water supply pipe at a point that is downstream of all check valves, pressure reducing valves and backflow preventers. Thermal expansion tanks shall be sized in accordance with the tank manufacturer's instructions and shall be sized such that the pressure in the water distribution system shall not exceed that required by Section 604.8.

**607.4 Flow of hot water to fixtures.** Fixture fittings, faucets and diverters shall be installed and adjusted so that the flow of hot water from the fittings corresponds to the left-hand side of the fixture fitting.

**Exception:** Shower and tub/shower mixing valves conforming to ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16 or ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, where the flow of hot water corresponds to the markings on the device.

**[E] 607.5 Insulation of piping.** For other than Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, piping to the inlet of a water heater and piping conveying water heated by a water heater shall be insulated in accordance with Section C404.4 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*. For Group R2, R3 and R4 occupancies that are three stories or less in height above grade plane, piping to the inlet of a water heater and piping conveying water heated by a water heater shall be insulated in accordance with Section R403.5.3 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

## SECTION 608 PROTECTION OF POTABLE WATER SUPPLY

**608.1 General.** A potable water supply system shall be designed, installed and maintained in such a manner so as to prevent contamination from non-potable liquids, solids or gases being introduced into the potable water supply through cross connections or any other piping connections to the system. Backflow preventer applications shall conform to Table 608.1, except as specifically stated in Sections 608.2 through ~~608.16.10~~ 608.17.11.

TABLE 608.1  
APPLICATION OF BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

| DEVICE  | DEGREE OF HAZARD <sup>a</sup> | APPLICATION <sup>b</sup>   | APPLICABLE STANDARDS                            |
|---|-------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>Backflow prevention assemblies:</b>  |                               |  |   |
| Double check backflow prevention assembly and double check fire protection backflow prevention assembly | Low hazard                    | Backpressure or backsiphonage<br>Sizes <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> "–16" | ASSE 1015; AWWA C510;<br>CSA B64.5; CSA B64.5.1 |

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

|  |                    |   |   |
|--|--------------------|---|---|
| Double check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies   | Low hazard         | Backpressure or backsiphonage<br>Sizes 2"–16"   | ASSE 1048   |
| Pressure vacuum breaker assembly   | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only Sizes $\frac{1}{2}$ "–2"   | ASSE 1020; CSA B64.1.2                                  |
| Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly and reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow assembly | High or low hazard | Backpressure or backsiphonage<br>Sizes $\frac{3}{8}$ "–16"  | ASSE 1013; AWWA C511;<br>CSA B64.4; CSA B64.4.1         |
| Reduced pressure detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies   | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage or backpressure<br>(Fire automatic sprinkler systems)                                   | ASSE 1047   |
| Spill-resistant vacuum breaker assembly  | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only Sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ "–2"   | ASSE 1056; CSA B64.1.3                                  |
| <b>Backflow preventer plumbing devices:</b>  |                    |   |   |
| Antisiphon-type fill valves for gravity water closet flush tanks   | High hazard        | Backsiphonage only  | ASSE 1002, 1002/ASME A112.1002/CSA B125.12; CSA B125.3  |
| Backflow preventer for carbonated beverage machines  | Low hazard         | Backpressure or backsiphonage<br>Sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ "– $\frac{3}{8}$ "                               | ASSE 1022   |
| Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vents   | Low hazard         | Backpressure or backsiphonage<br>Sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ "– $\frac{3}{4}$ "                               | ASSE 1012; CSA B64.3                                    |
| <u>Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent and pressure-reducing valve.</u>                                | <u>Low hazard</u>  | <u>Backpressure or backsiphonage<br/>Sizes <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>"–<math>\frac{3}{4}</math>"</u>    | <u>ASSE 1081</u>  |
| Dual-check-valve-type backflow preventer   | Low hazard         | Backpressure or backsiphonage<br>Sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ "–1"   | ASSE 1024; CSA B64.6                                    |
| Hose connection backflow preventer   | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure, rated working pressure, backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $\frac{1}{2}$ "–1" | ASME A112.21.3;<br>ASSE 1052; CSA B64.2.1.1             |
| Hose connection vacuum breaker   | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $\frac{1}{2}$ ", $\frac{3}{4}$ ", 1"                     | ASME A112.21.3;<br>ASSE 1011; CSA B64.2;<br>CSA B64.2.1 |
| Laboratory faucet backflow preventer   | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure and backsiphonage   | ASSE 1035; CSA B64.7                                    |
| Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breaker   | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only Sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ "–4"   | ASSE 1001; CSA B64.1.1                                  |
| Vacuum breaker wall hydrants, frost-resistant, automatic-draining-type   | High or low hazard | Low head backpressure or backsiphonage Sizes $\frac{3}{4}$ ", 1"                                      | ASME A112.21.3;<br>ASSE 1019; CSA B64.2.2               |
| <b>Other means or methods:</b>   |                    |   |   |
| Air gap  | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage or backpressure   | ASME A112.1.2   |
| Air gap fittings for use with plumbing fixtures, appliances and appurtenances  | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage or backpressure   | ASME A112.1.3   |
| Barometric loop  | High or low hazard | Backsiphonage only  | (See Section 608.13.4) 608.14.4)                        |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. Low hazard—See Pollution (Section 202).  
High hazard—See Contamination (Section 202).
- b. See Backpressure, low head (Section 202)-202, Backflow).  
See Backsiphonage (Section 202)-202, Backflow).

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

**608.2 Plumbing fixtures.** The supply lines and fittings for plumbing fixtures shall be installed so as to prevent backflow. Plumbing fixture fittings shall provide backflow protection in accordance with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

**608.3 Devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus.** Devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus intended to serve some special function, such as sterilization, distillation, processing, cooling, or storage of ice or foods, and that connect to the water supply system, shall be provided with protection against backflow and contamination of the water supply system. ~~Water pumps, filters, softeners, tanks and other appliances and devices that handle or treat potable water shall be protected against contamination.~~

**608.3.1 Special equipment, water supply protection.** The water supply for hospital fixtures shall be protected against backflow with a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly, an atmospheric or spill-resistant vacuum breaker assembly, or an *air gap*. Vacuum breakers for bedpan washer hoses shall not be located less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor. Vacuum breakers for hose connections in health care or laboratory areas shall ~~not~~ be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

**608.4 Potable water handling and treatment equipment.** Water pumps, filters, softeners, tanks and other appliances and devices that handle or treat potable water to be supplied to the potable water distribution system shall be located to prevent contamination from entering the appliances and devices. Overflow, relief valve and waste discharge pipes from such appliances and devices shall terminate through an *air gap*.

~~608.4~~**608.5 Water service piping.** Water service piping shall be protected in accordance with Sections 603.2 and 603.2.1.

~~608.5~~**608.6 Chemicals and other substances.** Chemicals and other substances that produce either toxic conditions, taste, odor or discoloration in a potable water system shall not be introduced into, or utilized in, such systems.

~~608.6~~**608.7 Cross connection control.** Cross connections shall be prohibited, except where *approved* backflow prevention assemblies, backflow prevention devices or other means or methods are installed to protect the potable water supply.

~~608.6~~**608.7.1 Private water supplies.** Cross connections between a private water supply and a potable public supply shall be prohibited.

~~608.7~~**608.8 Valves and outlets prohibited below grade.** Potable water outlets and combination stop-and-waste valves shall not be installed underground or below grade. ~~Freezeproof~~A freezeproof yard hydrant ~~hydrant that drains the riser into the ground~~ shall be considered to be stop-and-waste valves as having a stop-and-waste valve below grade.

**Exception:** Freezeproof yard hydrants that drain the riser into the ground shall be permitted to be installed, provided that the potable water supply to such hydrants is protected ~~upstream of the hydrants~~ in accordance with Section ~~608.14.2 or 608.14.5~~, and the hydrants and the piping from the backflow preventer to the hydrant are ~~permanently identified as nonpotable outlets by approved signage that reads as follows: "Caution, Nonpotable Water. Do Not Drink."~~ in accordance with Section 608.9.

~~608.8~~**608.9 Identification of non-potable water systems.** Where ~~nonpotable~~non-potable water systems are installed, the piping conveying the nonpotable water shall be identified either by color marking, metal tags or tape in accordance with Sections ~~608.8.1608.9.1 through 608.8.2.3-608.9.2.3.~~

~~608.8~~**608.9.1 Signage required.** ~~Nonpotable~~Non-potable water outlets, such as hose connections, ~~open-ended~~open-ended pipes and faucets, shall be identified with signage that reads as follows: "Non-potable water is utilized for [application name]. CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK." The words shall be legibly and indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material or shall be indelibly printed on the fixture. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height and in colors in contrast to the background on which they are applied. In addition to the required wordage, the pictograph shown in Figure 608.9.1 shall appear on the required signage.



FIGURE 608.8.2-608.9.1

PICTOGRAPH—DO NOT DRINK

**608.8.2-608.9.2 Distribution pipe labeling and marking.** Non-potable distribution piping shall be purple in color and shall be embossed, or integrally stamped or marked, with the words: “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK” or the piping shall be installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Pipe identification shall include the contents of the piping system and an arrow indicating the direction of flow. Hazardous piping systems shall also contain information addressing the nature of the hazard. Pipe identification shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 25 feet (7620 mm) and at each point where the piping passes through a wall, floor or roof. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

**608.8.2-608.9.2.1 Color.** The color of the pipe identification shall be discernable and consistent throughout the building. The color purple shall be used to identify reclaimed, rain and graywater distribution systems.

**608.8.2-608.9.2.2 Lettering size.** The size of the background color field and lettering shall comply with Table 608.8.2.2-608.9.2.2.

TABLE 608.8.2-608.9.2.2  
SIZE OF PIPE IDENTIFICATION

| PIPE DIAMETER (inches)          | LENGTH BACKGROUND COLOR FIELD (inches) | SIZE OF LETTERS (inches) |
|---------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| $\frac{3}{8}$ to $1\frac{1}{4}$ | 8                                      | 0.5                      |
| $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2             | 8                                      | 0.75                     |
| $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 6             | 12                                     | 1.25                     |
| 8 to 10                         | 24                                     | 2.5                      |
| over 10                         | 32                                     | 3.5                      |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**608.8.2-608.9.2.3 Identification tape.** Where used, identification tape shall be at least not less than 3 inches (76 mm) wide and have white or black lettering on a purple field stating “CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” Identification tape shall be installed on top of nonpotable rainwater distribution pipes, fastened at least not less than every 10 feet (3048 mm) to each pipe length and run continuously the entire length of the pipe.



## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

**608.10 Reutilization prohibited.** Water utilized for the heating or cooling of equipment or other processes shall not be returned to the potable water system. Such water shall be discharged into a drainage system through an *air gap* or shall be utilized for ~~non-potable~~ non-potable purposes.

**608.11 Reuse of piping.** Piping that has been utilized for any purpose other than conveying potable water shall not be utilized for conveying potable water.

**608.12 Painting of Potable water tanks.** Where in contact with potable water intended for drinking water, water tanks, coatings for the inside of tanks and liners for water tanks shall conform to NSF 61. The interior surface of a potable water tank shall not be lined, painted or repaired with any material that changes the taste, odor, color or potability of the water supply when the tank is placed in, or returned to, service.

**608.13 Pumps and other appliances.** Water pumps, filters, softeners, tanks and other devices that handle or treat potable water shall be protected against contamination.

**608.14 Backflow protection.** Means of protection against backflow shall be provided in accordance with Sections ~~608.13-1608.14.1~~ through ~~608.13-10-608.14.9~~.

**608.14.1 Air gap.** The minimum required *air gap* shall be measured vertically from the lowest end of a potable water outlet to the *flood level rim* of the fixture or receptacle into which such potable water outlet discharges. *Air gaps* shall comply with ASME A112.1.2 and *air gap* fittings shall comply with ASME A112.1.3. Products that are listed and labeled to ASME A112.1.2 or ASME A112.1.3 shall be considered to be in compliance with this section.

**608.14.2 Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assemblies.** Reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1013, AWWA C511, CSA B64.4 or CSA B64.4.1. Reduced pressure detector assembly backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1047. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. The relief opening shall discharge by *air gap* and shall be prevented from being submerged.

**608.14.3 Backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent.** Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vents shall conform to ASSE ~~1012~~ 1012, ASSE 1081 or CSA B64.3. These devices shall be permitted to be installed where subject to continuous pressure conditions. These devices shall be prohibited as a means of protection where any hazardous chemical additives are introduced downstream of the device. The relief opening shall discharge by *air gap* and shall be prevented from being submerged.

**608.14.4 Barometric loop.** Barometric loops shall precede the point of connection and shall extend vertically to a height of 35 feet (10 668 mm). A barometric loop shall only be utilized as an atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breaker.

**608.14.5 Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies.** Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall ~~conform to~~ comply with ASSE 1020 or CSA B64.1.2. Spill-resistant vacuum breaker assemblies shall comply with ASSE ~~1056-1056~~ 1056 or CSA B64.1.3. These assemblies are designed for installation under continuous pressure conditions where the critical level is installed at the required height. The critical level of a pressure vacuum breaker and a spill resistant vacuum breaker assembly shall be set at not less than 12 inches (304 mm) above the highest elevation of downstream piping and the flood level rim of the fixture or device. shall be installed with the critical level of the assembly located not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above all downstream piping and outlets. Pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall not be installed in locations where spillage could cause damage to the structure.

**608.14.6 Atmospheric-type vacuum breakers.** Pipe-applied atmospheric-type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1. Hose-connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASME A112.21.3, ASSE 1011, ASSE 1019, ASSE 1035, ASSE 1052, CSA B64.2, CSA B64.2.1, CSA B64.2.1.1, CSA B64.2.2 or CSA B64.7. These devices shall operate under normal atmospheric pressure when the critical level is installed at the required height. Both types of vacuum breakers shall be installed with the outlet continuously open to the atmosphere. The critical level of the atmospheric vacuum breaker shall be set at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest elevation of downstream piping and the flood level rim of the fixture or device.

**608.14.7 Double check backflow prevention assemblies.** Double check backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1015, CSA B64.5, CSA B64.5.1 or AWWA C510. Double check detector fire protection backflow prevention assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1048. These assemblies shall be capable of operating under continuous pressure conditions.

**~~608.13.8~~ Spill-resistant pressure vacuum breaker**

~~assemblies. Spill-resistant pressure vacuum breaker assemblies shall conform to ASSE 1056 or CSA B64.1.3. These assemblies are designed for installation under continuous pressure conditions where the critical level is installed at the required height.~~

**~~608.13.9~~608.14.8 Chemical dispenser backflow devices.** Back-flow devices for chemical dispensers shall comply with ASSE 1055 or shall be equipped with an *air gap* fitting.

**~~608.13.10~~608.14.9 Dual check backflow preventer.** Dual check backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1024 or CSA B64.6.

**~~608.14~~608.15 Location of backflow preventers.** Access shall be provided to backflow preventers as specified by the manufacturer's instructions.

**~~608.14.1~~608.15.1 Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices.** Outdoor enclosures for backflow prevention devices shall comply with ASSE 1060.

**~~608.14.2~~608.15.2 Protection of backflow preventers.** Backflow preventers shall not be located in areas subject to freezing except where they can be removed by means of unions or are protected from freezing by heat, insulation or both.

**~~608.14.2.1~~608.15.2.1 Relief port piping.** The termination of the piping from the relief port or *air gap* fitting of a backflow preventer shall discharge to an *approved* indirect waste receptor or to the outdoors where it will not cause damage or create a nuisance. The indirect waste receptor and drainage piping shall be sized to drain the maximum discharge flow rate from the relief port as published by the backflow preventer manufacturer.

**~~608.15~~608.16 Protection of potable water outlets.** All ~~potable~~ Potable water openings and outlets shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section ~~608.15.1, 608.15.2, 608.15.3, 608.15.4, 608.15.4.1, 608.15.4.2, 608.16.1, 608.16.2, 608.16.3, 608.16.4, 608.16.4.1 or 608.15.4.2-608.16.4.2.~~

**~~608.15.1~~608.16.1 Protection by air gap.** Openings and outlets shall be protected by an *air gap* between the opening and the fixture *flood level rim* as specified in Table ~~608.15.1-608.16.1~~. Openings and outlets equipped for hose connection shall be protected by means other than an *air gap*.

**TABLE ~~608.15.1~~608.16.1  
MINIMUM REQUIRED AIR GAPS**

| FIXTURE  | MINIMUM AIR GAP                                 |   |
|--|---|---|
|  | Away from a wall <sup>a</sup> (inches)          | Close to a wall (inches)                          |
| Lavatories and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than 1/2 inch in diameter  | 1   | 1 1/2   |
| Sinks, laundry trays, gooseneck back faucets and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than 3/4 inch in diameter  | 1 1/2   | 2 1/2   |
| Over-rim bath fillers and other fixtures with effective openings not greater than 1 inch in diameter   | 2   | 3   |
| Drinking water fountains, single orifice not greater than 7/16 inch in diameter or multiple orifices with a total area of 0.150 square inch (area of circle 7/16 inch in diameter) | 1   | 1 1/2   |
| Effective openings greater than 1 inch   | Two times the diameter of the effective opening | Three times the diameter of the effective opening |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm<sup>2</sup>.

- a. Applicable where walls or obstructions are spaced from the nearest inside-edge of the spout opening a distance greater than three times the diameter of the ~~effective opening~~ effective opening for a single wall, or a distance greater than four times the diameter of the ~~effective opening~~ effective opening for two intersecting walls.

**~~608.15.2~~608.16.2 Protection by reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly.** Openings and outlets shall be protected by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly on potable water supplies.

~~608.15.3~~**608.16.3 Protection by a backflow preventer with intermediate atmospheric vent.** Openings and outlets shall be protected by a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent.

~~608.15.4~~**608.16.4 Protection by a vacuum breaker.** Openings and outlets shall be protected by atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breakers. The critical level of the vacuum breaker shall be set not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the fixture or device. Fill valves shall be set in accordance with Section ~~425.3.1~~**415.3.1**. Vacuum breakers shall not be installed under exhaust hoods or similar locations that will contain toxic fumes or vapors. Pipe-applied vacuum breakers shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the fixture, receptor or device served.

~~608.15.4.1~~**608.16.4.1 Deck-mounted and integral vacuum breakers.** *Approved* deck-mounted or equipment-mounted vacuum breakers and faucets with integral atmospheric vacuum breakers or spill-resistant vacuum breaker assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the requirements for labeling with the critical level not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the *flood level rim*.

~~608.15.4.2~~**608.16.4.2 Hose connections.** Sillcocks, hose bibbs, wall hydrants and other openings with a hose connection shall be protected by an atmospheric-type or pressure-type vacuum breaker or a permanently attached hose connection vacuum breaker.

**Exceptions:**

1. This section shall not apply to water heater and boiler drain valves that are provided with hose connection threads and that are intended only for tank or vessel draining.
2. This section shall not apply to water supply valves intended for connection of clothes washing machines where backflow prevention is otherwise provided or is integral with the machine.

~~608.16~~**608.17 Connections to the potable water system.** Connections to the potable water system shall conform to Sections ~~608.16.1~~**608.17.1** through ~~608.16.10~~**608.17.10**.

~~608.16.1~~**608.17.1 Beverage dispensers.** The water supply connection to beverage dispensers shall be protected against backflow ~~by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1022 or by an *air gap*~~ in accordance with Sections ~~608.17.1.1~~ and ~~608.17.1.2~~.

**608.17.1.1 Carbonated beverage dispensers.** The water supply connection to each carbonated beverage dispenser shall be protected against backflow by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1022 or by an *air gap*. The portion of the backflow preventer device downstream from the second check valve of the device and the piping downstream therefrom shall not be affected by carbon dioxide gas.

**608.17.1.2 Coffee machines and noncarbonated drink dispensers.** The water supply connection to each coffee machine and each noncarbonated beverage dispenser shall be protected against backflow by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1022 or ASSE 1024, or protected by an *air gap*.

~~608.16.2~~**608.17.2 Connections to boilers.** The potable supply to the boiler shall be equipped with a backflow preventer with an intermediate atmospheric vent complying with ASSE ~~1012~~**1012**, ASSE 1081 or CSA B64.3. Where conditioning chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water connection shall be protected by an *air gap* or a reduced pressure principle backflow preventer, complying with ASSE 1013, AWWA C511 or CSA B64.4.

~~608.16.3~~**608.17.3 Heat exchangers.** Heat exchangers utilizing an ~~essentially toxic transfer fluid~~*essentially toxic transfer fluid* shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An *air gap* open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. Heat exchangers utilizing an ~~essentially toxic transfer fluid~~*essentially toxic transfer fluid* shall be permitted to be of single-wall construction.

~~608.16.4~~**608.17.4 Connections to automatic sprinkler systems and standpipe systems.** The potable water supply to automatic ~~fire~~ sprinkler systems and standpipe systems shall be protected against backflow by a double check backflow prevention assembly, a double check fire protection backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where systems are installed as a portion of the water distribution system in accordance with the requirements of this code and are not provided with a fire department connection, isolation of the water supply system shall not be required.

2. Isolation of the water distribution system is not required for deluge, preaction or dry pipe systems.

~~608.16.4~~**608.17.4.1 Additives or nonpotable non-potable source.** Where systems under continuous pressure contain chemical additives or antifreeze, or where systems are connected to a nonpotable secondary water supply, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or a reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly. Where chemical additives or antifreeze are added to only a portion of an automatic fire sprinkler system or standpipe system, the reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly or the reduced pressure principle fire protection backflow prevention assembly shall be permitted to be located so as to isolate that portion of the system. Where systems are not under continuous pressure, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by an *air gap* or an atmospheric vacuum breaker conforming to ASSE 1001 or CSA B64.1.1.

~~608.16.5~~**608.17.5 Connections to lawn irrigation systems.** The potable water supply to lawn irrigation systems shall be protected against backflow by an atmospheric vacuum breaker, a pressure vacuum breaker assembly or a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly. Valves shall not be installed downstream from an atmospheric vacuum breaker. Where chemicals are introduced into the system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly.

~~608.16.6~~**608.17.6 Connections subject to backpressure.** Where a potable water connection is made to a nonpotable line, fixture, tank, vat, pump or other equipment subject to high-hazard backpressure, the potable water connection shall be protected by a reduced pressure principle backflow prevention assembly.

~~608.16.7~~**608.17.7 Chemical dispensers.** Where chemical dispensers connect to the potable water distribution system, the water supply system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section ~~608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.5, 608.13.6, 608.13.8~~608.14.1, 608.14.2, 608.14.5, 608.14.6, or ~~608.13.9~~608.14.8.

~~608.16.8~~**608.17.8 Portable cleaning equipment.** Where the portable cleaning equipment connects to the water distribution system, the water supply system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section ~~608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.3, 608.13.7~~608.14.1, 608.14.2, 608.14.3, 608.14.7 or ~~608.13.8~~608.14.8.

~~608.16.9~~**608.17.9 Dental pump pumping equipment.** Where dental pumping equipment connects to the water distribution system, ~~The water supply connection to each dental pumping equipment system,~~ the water supply system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section ~~608.13.1, 608.13.2, 608.13.5, 608.13.6~~608.14.1, 608.14.2, 608.14.5, 608.14.6 or ~~608.13.8~~608.14.8.

**608.17.10 Humidifiers.** The water supply connection to humidifiers that do not have internal backflow protection shall be protected against backflow by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1012 or by an *air gap*.

~~608.16.10~~**608.17.11 Coffee machines and noncarbonated beverage dispensers.** The water supply connection to coffee machines and noncarbonated beverage dispensers shall be protected against backflow by a backflow preventer conforming to ASSE 1022 or by an *air gap*.

~~608.17~~**608.18 Protection of individual water supplies.** ~~Deleted:DELETED~~

**608.18.1 Well locations.** ~~DELETED~~

**608.18.2 Elevation.** ~~DELETED~~

## SECTION 609 HEALTH CARE PLUMBING

**609.1 Scope.** This section shall govern those aspects of health care plumbing systems that differ from plumbing systems in other structures. Health care plumbing systems shall conform to the requirements of this section in addition to the other requirements of this code. The provisions of this section shall apply to the special devices and equipment installed and maintained in the following ~~occupancies:~~occupancies: ~~nursing homes, homes for the aged, orphanages, infirmaries, first aid stations, psychiatric facilities, clinics, professional offices of dentists and doctors, mortuaries, educational facilities, surgery, dentistry, Group I-1, Group I- 2, Group B ambulatory care facilities, medical offices, research and testing laboratories, establish-~~

## WATER SUPPLY AND DISTRIBUTION

~~ments and Group F facilities manufacturing pharmaceutical drugs and medicines, medicines, and other structures with similar apparatus and equipment classified as plumbing.~~

**609.2 Water service.** ~~service for Group I-2, Condition 2 facilities.~~ Hospitals shall have two water service pipes installed in such a manner so as to minimize the potential for an interruption of the supply of water in the event of a water main or water service pipe failure. Group I-2, Condition 2 facilities shall have not fewer than two water service pipes sized such that with the loss of the largest service pipe, the remaining service pipes will meet the water demand for the entire facility. Each water service shall have a shutoff valve in the building and a shutoff valve at the utility-provided point of connection to the water main or other source of potable water.

**609.2.1 Tracer wire for nonmetallic piping.** An insulated tracer wire listed for the purpose or other approved conductor shall be installed adjacent to underground nonmetallic piping serving as a water service for a hospital. Access shall be provided to the tracer wire or the tracer wire shall terminate above ground at each end of the nonmetallic piping. The tracer wire size shall be not less than 14 AWG and the wire insulation type shall be suitable for direct burial.

**609.3 Hot water.** *Hot water* shall be provided to supply all of the hospital fixture, kitchen and laundry requirements. Special fixtures and equipment shall have hot water supplied at a temperature specified by the manufacturer. The hot water system shall be installed in accordance with Section 607.

**609.4 Vacuum breaker installation.** Vacuum breakers shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the fixture or device in accordance with Section 608. The *flood level rim* of hose connections shall be the maximum height at which any hose is utilized.

**609.5 Prohibited water closet and clinical sink supply.** Jet- or water-supplied orifices, except those supplied by the flush connections, shall not be located in or connected with a water closet bowl or clinical sink. This section shall not prohibit an *approved* bidet installation. Clinical, hydrotherapeutic, radiological or any equipment that is supplied with water or that discharges to the waste system shall conform to the requirements of this section and Section 608.

**609.6 Clinical, hydrotherapeutic and radiological equipment.** Clinical, hydrotherapeutic, radiological or any equipment that is supplied with water or that discharges to the waste system shall conform to the requirements of this section and Section 608.

**609.7 Condensate drain trap seal.** A water supply shall be provided for cleaning, flushing and resealing the condensate trap, and the trap shall discharge through an *air gap* in accordance with Section 608.

**609.8 Valve leakage diverter.** Each water sterilizer filled with water through directly connected piping shall be equipped with an *approved* leakage diverter or bleed line on the water supply control valve to indicate and conduct any leakage of unsterile water away from the sterile zone.

## SECTION 610 DISINFECTION OF POTABLE WATER SYSTEM

**610.1 General.** Permitted new or repaired potable water systems shall be purged of deleterious matter and disinfected if required by the health authority or water purveyor prior to utilization. The method to be followed shall be that prescribed by the health authority or water purveyor having jurisdiction.

## SECTION 611 DRINKING WATER TREATMENT UNITS

**611.1 Design.** Point-of-use reverse osmosis drinking water treatment units shall comply with CSA B483.1 or NSF 58. Drinking water treatment units shall meet the requirements of CSA B483.1, NSF 42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 60 or NSF 62.

**611.2 Reverse osmosis systems.** The discharge from a reverse osmosis drinking water treatment unit shall enter the drainage system through an *air gap* or an *air gap* device that meets the requirements of CSA B483.1 or NSF 58.

**611.3 Connection tubing.** The tubing to and from drinking water treatment units shall be of a size and material as recommended by the manufacturer. The tubing shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 42, NSF 44, NSF 53, NSF 58 or NSF 61.

## SECTION 612 SOLAR SYSTEMS

**612.1 Solar systems.** The construction, installation, alterations and repair of systems, equipment and appliances intended to utilize solar energy for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating, swimming pool heating or process heating shall be in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

## SECTION 613 TEMPERATURE CONTROL DEVICES AND VALVES

**613.1 Temperature-actuated mixing valves.** Temperature-actuated mixing valves, which are installed to reduce water temperatures to defined limits, shall comply with ASSE 1016 or ASSE 1017. Such valves shall be installed at the hot water source.

## SECTION 614 PARTIAL FIRE SPRINKLER PROTECTION IN ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS

**614.1 Partial fire protection.** Nothing in this section shall be deemed to prohibit the connection to the domestic water distribution system of a system of one or more fire suppression sprinkler heads in one or more rooms of a one- or two-family dwelling, nor shall such installation impose additional requirements on the domestic water distribution system with regard to pipe size, water pressure, meter size, monitoring or alarm, provided that:

1. The sprinkler heads used are residential fast-response type.
2. Each branch feeding one or more sprinkler heads shall be provided with an isolation valve which shall be readily accessible and the function thereof shall be marked.
3. Each isolation valve shall be identified as to function with a tag or other device which shall indicate that the system does not meet the requirements of NFPA 13D.
4. The piping installation and material shall comply with the requirements of the ~~North Carolina Plumbing Code~~North Carolina Plumbing Code.

## SECTION 615 FULL FIRE SPRINKLER PROTECTION IN ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS

**615.1 Full fire protection.** Where a full fire sprinkler system is installed, it shall comply with NFPA 13D.

## CHAPTER 7

# SANITARY DRAINAGE

### SECTION 701 GENERAL

**701.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of sanitary drainage systems.

**701.2 ~~Sewer~~ Connection to sewer required.** ~~Buildings in which plumbing fixtures are installed and premises having drainage piping~~ Sanitary drainage piping from plumbing fixtures in buildings and sanitary drainage piping systems from premises shall be connected to a public ~~sewer, where available, or an approved private sewage disposal system.~~ sewer. Where a public sewer is not available, the sanitary drainage piping and systems shall be connected to a private sewage disposal system in compliance with state or local requirements.

**Exception:** Sanitary drainage piping and systems that convey only the discharge from bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays shall not be required to connect to a public sewer or to a private sewage disposal system provided that the piping or systems are connected to a system in accordance with Chapter 13.

**701.3 Separate sewer connection.** A building having plumbing fixtures installed and intended for human habitation, occupancy or use on premises abutting on a street, alley or easement in which there is a public sewer shall have a separate connection with the sewer. Where located on the same lot, multiple buildings shall not be prohibited from connecting to a common *building sewer* that connects to the public sewer.

**701.4 Sewage treatment.** Sewage or other waste from a plumbing system that is deleterious to surface or subsurface waters shall not be discharged into the ground or into any waterway unless it has first been rendered innocuous through treatment approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

**701.5 Damage to drainage system or public sewer.** ~~Wastes~~ Waste detrimental to the public sewer system or ~~detrimental~~ to the functioning of the private sewage system shall be treated and disposed of in accordance with Section 1003.

**701.6 Tests.** The sanitary drainage system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**701.7 Engineered systems.** Engineered sanitary drainage systems shall conform to the provisions of Sections ~~316, 316 and 713.~~

**701.8 Drainage piping in food service areas.** Exposed soil or waste piping shall not be installed above any working, storage or eating surfaces in food service establishments.

### SECTION 702 MATERIALS

**702.1 Above-ground sanitary drainage and vent pipe.** Above-ground soil, waste and vent pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.1. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent cemented inside of plastic pipe.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe with an inside diameter 2 inches (51 mm) and larger shall not be used for storm drainage, waste and vent conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

TABLE 702.1  
ABOVE-GROUND DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE

| MATERIAL   | STANDARD  |
|--|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D2661;<br>ASTM F628; ASTM F1488;<br>CSA B181.1 |

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Brass pipe   | ASTM B43   |
| Cast-iron pipe   | ASTM A74; ASTM A888;<br>CISPI 301                      |
| Copper or copper-alloy pipe  | ASTM B42; <u>ASTM B43</u> ;<br>ASTM B302               |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV)  | ASTM B75; ASTM B88;<br>ASTM B251; ASTM B306            |
| Ductile iron pipe  | ANSI/AWWA<br>C150/A21.50                               |
| Galvanized steel pipe  | ASTM A53   |
| Glass pipe   | ASTM C1053   |
| Polyolefin pipe  | ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3                                 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200), and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D2665;<br>ASTM F891; ASTM<br>F1488;<br>CSA B181.2 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall   | ASTM D2949;<br>ASTM F1488                              |
| Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) plastic pipe  | ASTM F1673; CSA B181.3                                 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L   | ASME A112.3.1  |

**702.2 Underground building sanitary drainage and vent pipe.** Underground building sanitary drainage and vent pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.2.

**TABLE 702.2  
UNDERGROUND BUILDING DRAINAGE AND VENT PIPE**

| MATERIAL   | STANDARD   |
|--|--|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D2661; ASTM F628;<br>ASTM F1488; CSA B181.1 |
| Cast-iron pipe   | ASTM A74; ASTM A888;<br>CISPI 301                |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV)  | ASTM B75; ASTM B88;<br>ASTM B251; ASTM B306      |
| Ductile iron pipe  | ANSI/AWWA<br>C150/A21.50                         |
| <u>Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe (SDR-PR)</u>   | <u>ASTM F714</u>                                 |



|   |  |
|---|--|
| Polyolefin pipe   | <u>ASTM F714</u> ;<br>ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3     |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D2665; ASTM F891;<br>ASTM F1488; CSA B181.2 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall  | ASTM D2949; ASTM F1488                           |
| Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) plastic pipe   | ASTM F1673; CSA B181.3                           |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L   | ASME A112.3.1                                    |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**702.3 Building sewer pipe.** *Building sewer pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.3.*

**TABLE 702.3  
BUILDING SEWER PIPE**

| MATERIAL   | STANDARD  |
|--|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall   | ASTM D2661;<br><u>ASTM D2680</u> ;<br>ASTM F628;<br>ASTM F1488;<br>CSA B181.1 |
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including SDR 42 (PS 20), PS 35, SDR 35 (PS 45), PS 50, PS 100, PS 140, SDR 23.5 (PS 150) and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM D2751; ASTM F1488  |
| Cast-iron pipe   | ASTM A74; ASTM A888;<br>CISPI 301   |
| Concrete pipe  | ASTM C14; ASTM C76;<br>CSA A257.1; CSA A257.2                                 |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K or L)  | ASTM B75; ASTM B88;<br>ASTM B251  |
| Ductile iron pipe  | ANSI/AWWA<br>C150/A21.50  |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe (SDR-PR)  | ASTM F714   |
| <u>Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe</u>   | <u>ASTM F2736</u> ; <u>ASTM F2764</u> ; CSA B182.13                           |

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall  | ASTM D2665; ASTM F891; ASTM F1488   |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters, including PS 25, SDR 41 (PS 28), PS 35, SDR 35 (PS 46), PS 50, PS 100, SDR 26 (PS 115), PS 140 and PS 200; with a solid, cellular core or composite wall | ASTM F891; ASTM F1488; ASTM D3034; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4, ANSI/AWWA C900 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D. and a solid, cellular core or composite wall   | ASTM D2949; ASTM F1488  |
| Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) plastic pipe  | ASTM F1673; CSA B181.3  |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L   | ASME A112.3.1   |
| Vitrified clay pipe  | ASTM C4; ASTM C700  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**702.4 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 702.4. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent cemented inside of plastic pipe.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe fittings and plastic plumbing appurtenances with an inside diameter 2 inches (51 mm) and larger shall not be used for drain, waste and vent conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

**TABLE 702.4  
PIPE FITTINGS**

| MATERIAL  | STANDARD   |
|---|--|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in IPS diameters             | ASME A112.4.4; ASTM D2661; ASTM F628; CSA B181.1   |
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters | ASTM D2751   |
| Cast iron   | ASME B16.4; B16.4; ASME B16.12; B16.12; ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301   |
| Copper or copper alloy  | ASME B16.15; B16.15; ASME B16.18; B16.18; ASME B16.22; B16.22; ASME B16.23; B16.23; ASME B16.26; B16.26; ASME B16.29; B16.29 |
| Glass   | ASTM C1053   |
| Gray iron and ductile iron  | AWWA C   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <del>110/A21.10</del> C110/A21.10                                    |
| Malleable iron   | ASME B 16.3  |
| Polyethylene   | ASTM D2683   |
| Polyolefin   | ASTM F1412; CSA B181.3   |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic in IPS diameters                  | ASME A112.4.4;<br>ASTM D2665; ASTM F1866                             |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe in sewer and drain diameters | ASTM D3034   |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe with a 3.25-inch O.D.        | ASTM D2949   |
| Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) plastic pipe                        | ASTM F1673; CSA B181.3   |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Types 304 and 316L               | ASME A 112.3.1A112.3.1   |
| Steel  | ASME B 16.9; B16.9; ASME B-<br>16.11; B16.11; ASME B-<br>16.28B16.28 |
| Vitrified clay   | ASTM C700  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**702.5 Temperature rating.** Direct connection of a steam exhaust, blowoff or drip pipe shall not be made with the building drainage system. Where the wastewater temperature will be greater than 140°F (60°C), the sanitary drainage piping material shall be rated for the highest temperature of the wastewater or approved cooling methods shall be provided.

**702.6 Chemical waste system.** A chemical waste system shall be completely separated from the sanitary drainage system. The chemical waste shall be treated in accordance with Section 803.2 before discharging to the sanitary drainage system. Separate drainage systems for chemical wastes and vent pipes shall be of an *approved* material that is resistant to corrosion and degradation for the concentrations of chemicals involved.

**702.7 Lead bends and traps.** The wall thickness of lead bends and traps shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).

## SECTION 703 BUILDING SEWER

**703.1 Building sewer pipe near the water service.** The proximity of a *sewer* to a water service shall comply with Section 603.2.

**703.2 Drainage pipe in filled ground.** Where a ~~building sewer~~ building sewer or ~~building drain~~ building drain is installed in unstable fill or unstable ~~ground~~ ground, the drainage pipe shall be of cast-iron or ductile iron pipe, except that nonmetallic drains may be laid upon an approved continuous supporting system if installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**703.3 Sanitary and storm sewers.** Where separate systems of sanitary drainage and storm drainage are installed in the same property, the sanitary and storm building sewers or drains shall be permitted to be laid side by side in one trench.

**703.4 Existing building sewers and building drains.** Existing ~~building sewers~~ building sewers and ~~drains~~ drains shall connect with new ~~building sewer~~ building sewer and drainage systems only where found by examination and test to conform to the new system in quality of material. Where the entire sanitary drainage system of an existing building is replaced, existing building drains under concrete slabs and existing building sewers that will serve the new system shall be internally examined to verify that the piping is sloping in the correct direction, is not broken, is not obstructed and is sized for the drainage load of the new

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

plumbing drainage system to be installed. The code official shall notify the owner to make the changes necessary to conform to this code.

**703.5 Cleanouts on building sewers.** Cleanouts on *building sewers* shall be located as ~~set forth~~indicated in Section 708.

**703.6 Combined sanitary and storm public sewer.** Where the public sewer is a combined system for both sanitary and storm water, the sanitary sewer shall be connected independently to the public sewer.

### SECTION 704 DRAINAGE PIPING INSTALLATION

**704.1 Slope of horizontal drainage piping.** Horizontal drainage piping shall be installed in uniform alignment at uniform slopes. The slope of a horizontal drainage pipe shall be not less than that indicated in Table 704.1 ~~704.1~~ except that where the drainage piping is upstream of a grease interceptor, the slope of the piping shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch per foot (2-percent slope).

TABLE 704.1  
SLOPE OF HORIZONTAL DRAINAGE PIPE

| SIZE (inches) | MINIMUM SLOPE (inch per foot) |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| 2½ or less    | $\frac{1}{4}$ <sup>a</sup>    |
| 3 to 6        | $\frac{1}{8}$ <sup>a</sup>    |
| 8 or larger   | $\frac{1}{16}$ <sup>a</sup>   |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 inch per foot = 83.33 mm/m.

**704.2 ~~Change in size.~~Reduction in pipe size in the direction of flow.** The size of the drainage piping shall not be reduced in the direction of the flow. The following shall not be considered as a reduction in size in the direction of flow:

1. A 4-inch by 3-inch (102 mm by 76 mm) water closet flange connection shall not be considered as a reduction in size.
2. A water closet bend fitting having a 4-inch (102 mm) inlet and a 3-inch (76 mm) outlet provided that the 4-inch leg of the fitting is upright and below, but not necessarily directly connected to, the water closet flange.
3. An offset closet flange with a full flow, minimum 3-inch interior diameter throat.

**704.3 Connections to offsets and bases of stacks.** Horizontal *branches* shall connect to the bases of *stacks* at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage *stack* downstream from the *stack*. Horizontal *branches* shall connect to horizontal *stack* offsets at a point located not less than 10 times the diameter of the drainage *stack* downstream from the upper *stack*.

**704.4 Future fixtures.** Drainage piping for future fixtures shall terminate with an *approved* cap or plug.

**704.5 Dead ends.** In the installation or removal of any part of a drainage system, dead ends shall be prohibited. Cleanout extensions and approved future fixture drainage piping shall not be considered as dead ends.

### SECTION 705 JOINTS

**705.1 General.** This section contains provisions applicable to joints specific to sanitary drainage piping.

**705.2 ABS plastic.** Joints between ABS plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.2.1 through ~~705.2.3~~705.2.4.

**705.2.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipes shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed only in underground systems unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.2.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235, ASTM D2661, ASTM F628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**705.2.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**705.2.4 Push-fit joints.** Push-fit DWV fittings shall be listed and labeled to ASME A112.4.4 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.3 Brass.** Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections 705.3.1 through 705.3.4.

**705.3.1 Braze joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**705.3.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.3.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**705.3.4 Welded joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

**705.4 Cast iron.** Joints between cast-iron pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.4.1 through 705.4.3.

**705.4.1 Caulked joints.** Joints for hub and spigot pipe shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp. Molten lead shall be poured in one operation to a depth of not less than 1 inch (25 mm). The lead shall not recede more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) below the rim of the hub and shall be caulked tight. Paint, varnish or other coatings shall not be permitted on the jointing material until after the joint has been tested and *approved*. Lead shall be run in one pouring and shall be caulked tight. Acid-resistant rope and acidproof cement shall be permitted.

**705.4.2 Compression gasket joints.** Compression gaskets for hub and spigot pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM C564 and shall be tested to ASTM C1563. Gaskets shall be compressed when the pipe is fully inserted.

**705.4.3 Mechanical joint coupling.** Mechanical joint couplings for hubless pipe and fittings shall consist of an elastomeric sealing sleeve and a metallic shield that comply with CISPI 310, ASTM C1277 or ASTM C1540. The elastomeric sealing sleeve shall conform to ASTM C564 or CSA B602 and shall be provided with a center stop. Mechanical joint couplings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.5 Concrete joints.** Joints between concrete pipe and fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C443, ASTM C1173, CSA A257.3M or CSA B602.

**705.6 Copper pipe.** Joints between copper and copper-alloy pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 705.6.1 through 705.6.5.

**705.6.1 Braze joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**705.6.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.6.3 Solder joints.** Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

**705.6.4 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**705.6.5 Welded joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

~~705.7.1~~**705.6 Copper tubing.** Joints between copper ~~or~~and copper-alloy tubing ~~and~~or fittings shall comply with Sections ~~705.7.1~~705.6.1 through ~~705.7.3~~705.6.3.

~~705.7.1~~**705.6.1 Brazed joints.** ~~All joint~~Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

~~705.7.2~~**705.6.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~705.7.3~~**705.6.3 Solder joints.** Solder joints shall be made in accordance with the methods of ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. ~~All joint~~Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

~~705.8.1~~**705.7 Borosilicate glass joints.** Glass-to-glass connections shall be made with a bolted compression-type, 300 series stainless steel coupling with contoured acid-resistant elastomeric compression ring and a fluorocarbon polymer inner seal ring; or with caulked joints in accordance with Section ~~705.8.1~~705.7.1.

~~705.8.1~~**705.7.1 Caulked joints.** Lead-caulked joints for hub and spigot soil pipe shall be firmly packed with oakum or hemp and filled with molten lead not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth and not to recede more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) below the rim of the hub. Paint, varnish or other coatings shall not be permitted on the jointing material until after the joint has been tested and *approved*. Lead shall be run in one pouring and shall be caulked tight. Acid-resistant rope and acidproof cement shall be permitted.

~~705.9.2~~**705.8 Steel.** Joints between galvanized steel pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections ~~705.9.1~~705.8.1 and ~~705.9.2~~705.8.2.

~~705.9.1~~**705.8.1 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

~~705.9.2~~**705.8.2 Mechanical joints.** Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~705.10.1~~**705.9 Lead.** Joints between lead pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections ~~705.10.1~~705.9.1 and ~~705.10.2~~705.9.2.

~~705.10.1~~**705.9.1 Burned.** Burned joints shall be uniformly fused together into one continuous piece. The thickness of the joint shall be ~~at least as thick as~~not less than the thickness of the lead being joined. The filler metal shall be of the same material as the pipe.

~~705.10.2~~**705.9.2 Wiped.** Joints shall be fully wiped, with an exposed surface on each side of the joint not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm). The joint shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) thick at the thickest point.

~~705.11.3~~**705.10 PVC plastic.** Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections ~~705.11.1~~705.10.1 through ~~705.11.3~~705.10.4.

~~705.11.1~~**705.10.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise *approved*. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~705.11.2~~**705.10.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564, CSA B137.3, CSA B181.2 or CSA B182.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground. Clear primer conforming to ASTM F656 may be applied to all joint surfaces where the piping is exposed under sinks and in buildings.

~~705.11.3~~**705.10.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. ~~Schedule 80 or heavier pipe shall be permitted to be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Where pipe is to be threaded, the pipe shall have a wall thickness of not less than Schedule 80. Pipe threads shall be made with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe.~~ *Approved* thread lubricant or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

~~705.11.4~~**705.10.4 Push-fit joints.** Push-fit joints shall conform to ASME A112.4.4 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**~~705.12~~705.11** **Vitrified clay.** Joints between vitrified clay pipe and fittings shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C425, ASTM C1173 or CSA B602.

**~~705.13~~705.12** **Polyethylene plastic pipe.** Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and fittings shall be underground and shall comply with Section ~~705.13.1~~705.12.1 or ~~705.13.2~~705.12.2.

**~~705.13.1~~705.12.1** **Heat-fusion joints.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. ~~All joint~~Joint surfaces shall be cut, heated to melting temperature and joined using tools specifically designed for the operation. Joints shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2657 and the manufacturer's instructions.

**~~705.13.2~~705.12.2** **Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints in drainage piping shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**~~705.14~~705.13** **Polyolefin plastic.** Joints between polyolefin plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections ~~705.14.1~~705.13.1 and ~~705.14.2~~705.13.2.

**~~705.14.1~~705.13.1** **Heat-fusion joints.** Heat-fusion joints for polyolefin pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polyolefin fittings or electrofusion polyolefin fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F1412 or CSA B181.3.

**~~705.14.2~~705.13.2** **Mechanical and compression sleeve joints.** Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**~~705.15~~705.14** **Polyvinylidene fluoride plastic.** Joints between polyvinylidene plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections ~~705.15.1~~705.14.1 and ~~705.15.2~~705.14.2.

**~~705.15.1~~705.14.1** **Heat-fusion joints.** Heat-fusion joints for polyvinylidene fluoride pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polyvinylidene fluoride fittings or electrofusion polyvinylidene fittings and couplings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F1673.

**~~705.15.2~~705.14.2** **Mechanical and compression sleeve joints.** Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.15 Polypropylene plastic.** The joint between polypropylene plastic pipe and fittings shall incorporate an elastomeric seal. The joint shall conform to ASTM D3212. Mechanical joints shall not be installed above ground.

**705.16 Joints between different materials.** Joints between different piping materials shall be made with a mechanical joint of the compression or mechanical-sealing type conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM C1460 or ASTM C1461. Connectors and adapters shall be *approved* for the application and such joints shall have an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C425, ASTM C443, ASTM C564, ASTM C1440, ASTM F477, CSA A257.3M or CSA B602, or as required in Sections 705.16.1 through 705.16.7. Joints between glass pipe and other types of materials shall be made with adapters having a TFE seal. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.16.1 Copper or copper-alloy pipe or tubing to cast-iron hub pipe.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or tubing and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made with a ~~brass~~copper or copper-alloy ferrule or compression joint. The copper or copper-alloy pipe or tubing shall be soldered to the ferrule in an *approved* manner, and the ferrule shall be joined to the cast-iron hub by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

**705.16.2 Copper or copper-alloy pipe or tubing to galvanized steel pipe.** Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or tubing and galvanized steel pipe shall be made with a ~~brass~~convertercopper-alloy fitting or dielectric fitting. The copper tubing shall be soldered to the fitting in an *approved* manner, and the fitting shall be screwed to the threaded pipe.

**705.16.3 Cast-iron pipe to galvanized steel or brass pipe.** Joints between cast iron and galvanized steel or brass pipe shall be made by either caulked or threaded joints or with an *approved* adapter fitting.

**705.16.4 Plastic pipe or tubing to other piping material.** Joints between different types of plastic pipe or between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting. Joints between plastic pipe and other piping material shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting. Joints between plastic pipe and cast-iron hub pipe shall be made by a caulked joint or a mechanical compression joint.

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

**705.16.5 Lead pipe to other piping material.** Joints between lead pipe and other piping material shall be made by a wiped joint to a caulking ferrule, soldering nipple or bushing or shall be made with an *approved* adapter fitting.

**705.16.6 Borosilicate glass to other materials.** Joints between glass pipe and other types of materials shall be made with adapters having a TFE seal and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.16.7 Stainless steel drainage systems to other materials.** Joints between stainless steel drainage systems and other piping materials shall be made with *approved* mechanical couplings.

**705.17 Drainage slip joints.** Slip joints shall comply with Section ~~405.8~~ 405.9.

**705.18 Caulking ferrules.** ~~Ferrules~~ Caulking ferrules shall be of ~~red brass~~ copper alloy and shall be in accordance with Table 705.18.

**TABLE 705.18  
CAULKING FERRULE SPECIFICATIONS**

| PIPE SIZES (inches) | INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)      | LENGTH (inches)               | MINIMUM WEIGHT EACH  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 2                   | 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 1 pound              |
| 3                   | 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 1 pound<br>12 ounces |
| 4                   | 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 2 pounds<br>8 ounces |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

**705.19 Soldering bushings.** Soldering bushings shall be of ~~red brass~~ copper or copper alloy and shall be in accordance with Table 705.19.

**TABLE 705.19  
SOLDERING BUSHING SPECIFICATIONS**

| PIPE SIZES (inches)           | MINIMUM WEIGHT EACH |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 6 ounces            |
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 8 ounces            |
| 2                             | 14 ounces           |
| 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 1 pound 6 ounces    |
| 3                             | 2 pounds            |
| 4                             | 3 pounds 8 ounces   |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

**705.20 Stainless steel drainage systems.** O-ring joints for stainless steel drainage systems shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal.

**705.21 Coextruded composite ABS pipe, joints.** Joints between coextruded composite pipe with an ABS outer layer or ABS fittings shall comply with Sections 705.21.1 and 705.21.2.

**705.21.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM C1173, ASTM D3212 or CSA B602. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.



**705.21.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Solvent cement that conforms to ASTM D 2235 or CSA B181.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2235, ASTM D2661, ASTM F628 or CSA B181.1. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**705.22 Coextruded composite PVC pipe.** Joints between coextruded composite pipe with a PVC outer layer or PVC fittings shall comply with Sections 705.22.1 and 705.22.2.

**705.22.1 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints on drainage pipe shall be made with an elastomeric seal conforming to ASTM D3212. Mechanical joints shall not be installed in above-ground systems, unless otherwise approved. Joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.22.2 Solvent cementing.** Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. A purple primer or an ultraviolet purple primer that conforms to ASTM F656 shall be applied. When an ultraviolet primer is used, the installer shall provide an ultraviolet light to the inspector to be used during the inspection. Solvent cement not purple in color and conforming to ASTM D2564, CSA B137.3, CSA B181.2 or CSA B182.1 shall be applied to all joint surfaces. The joint shall be made while the cement is wet and shall be in accordance with ASTM D2855. Solvent-cement joints shall be permitted above or below ground.

**705.23 Brass.** Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall comply with Sections 705.23.1 through 705.23.4.

**705.23.1 Brazed joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

**705.23.2 Mechanical joints.** Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**705.23.3 Threaded joints.** Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

**705.23.4 Welded joints.** All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

## SECTION 706 CONNECTIONS BETWEEN DRAINAGE PIPING AND FITTINGS

**706.1 Connections and changes in direction.** ~~All connections~~ Connections and changes in direction of the sanitary drainage system shall be made with *approved* drainage fittings. Connections between drainage piping and fixtures shall conform to Section 405.

**706.2 Obstructions.** The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type. This section shall not be applicable to tubular waste fittings used to convey vertical flow upstream of the trap seal liquid level of a fixture trap.

**706.3 Installation of fittings.** Fittings shall be installed to guide sewage and waste in the direction of flow. Change in direction shall be made by fittings installed in accordance with Table 706.3. Change in direction by combination fittings, side inlets or increasers shall be installed in accordance with Table 706.3 based on the pattern of flow created by the fitting. Double sanitary tee patterns shall not receive the discharge of appliances with pumping action discharge.

**Exception: DELETED**

TABLE 706.3  
FITTINGS FOR CHANGE IN DIRECTION

| TYPE OF FITTING PATTERN | CHANGE IN DIRECTION    |                        |                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
|                         | Horizontal to vertical | Vertical to horizontal | Horizontal to horizontal |
| Sixteenth bend          | X                      | X                      | X                        |
| Eighth bend             | X                      | X                      | X                        |

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

|                                 |                |          |        |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------|--------|
| Sixth bend                      | X              | X        | X      |
| Quarter bend                    | X              | d,f<br>X | e<br>X |
| Short sweep                     | X              | a,b<br>X | a<br>X |
| Long sweep                      | X              | X        | X      |
| Sanitary tee                    | X <sup>c</sup> | —        | —      |
| Wye                             | X              | X        | X      |
| Combination wye and eighth bend | X              | X        | X      |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- The fittings shall only be permitted for a 2-inch or smaller sink or lavatory ~~fixture drain~~ fixture drain.
- Two inches or larger.
- For a limitation on double sanitary tees, see Section 706.3.
- May be used only within 12 inches below water closet flange measured to centerline of the quarter bend.
- This fitting shall only be permitted to be used as the first fitting directly behind the fixture for drains 2 inches and smaller, except clothes washers.
- The heel inlet connection of a quarter bend may be used as a wet or dry vent if the heel inlet connection of the quarter bend is located in the vertical position. The heel or side inlet connection may be used as a wet vent if the quarter bend is located directly below a water closet or other fixture with one integral trap.

### 706.4 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends. DELETED.

## SECTION 707 PROHIBITED JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

**707.1 Prohibited joints.** The following types of joints and connections shall be prohibited:

- Cement or concrete joints.
- Mastic or hot-pour bituminous joints.
- Joints made with fittings not *approved* for the specific installation.
- Joints between different diameter pipes made with elastomeric rolling O-rings.
- Solvent-cement joints between different types of plastic pipe.
- Saddle-type fittings.

## SECTION 708 CLEANOUTS

**708.1 Cleanouts required.** Cleanouts shall be provided for drainage piping in accordance with Sections 708.1.1 through 708.1.12.

**708.1.1 Gravity ~~horizontal~~Horizontal drains and building drains.** Horizontal drainage pipes in buildings shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm). *Building drains* shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) except where manholes are used instead of cleanouts, the manholes shall be located at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). The interval length shall be measured from the cleanout or manhole opening, along the *developed length* of the piping to the next drainage fitting providing access for cleaning, the end of the horizontal drain or the end of the *building drain*.

**Exception:** Horizontal *fixture drain* piping serving a nonremovable trap shall not be required to have a cleanout for the section of piping between the trap and the vent connection for such trap.

**708.1.2 Gravity ~~building~~Building sewers.** *Building sewers* smaller than 8 inches (203 mm) shall have cleanouts located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm). *Building sewers* 8 inches (203 mm) and larger shall have a manhole located not more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from the junction of the *building drain* and *building sewer* and at intervals of not more than 400 feet (122 m). The interval length shall be measured from the cleanout or manhole opening, along the *developed length* of the piping to the next drainage fitting providing access for cleaning, a manhole or the end of the *building sewer*.

**708.1.3 Building drain and building sewer junction.** There shall be a cleanout at the junction of the building drain and the building sewer. The cleanout shall be outside the building wall and shall be brought up to the finished ground level. An approved two-way cleanout is allowed to be used at this location to serve as a required cleanout for both the building drain and building sewer. The cleanout at the junction of the building drain and building sewer shall not be required if the cleanout on a 3-inch (76 mm) or larger diameter soil stack is located within a developed length of not more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from of the building drain and building sewer connection and is extended to the outside of the building. The minimum size of the cleanout at the junction of the building drain and building sewer shall comply with Section 708.1.5.

**708.1.4 Changes of direction.** One cleanout shall be required for every four horizontal 45-degree (0.79 rad) changes located in series [a long sweep is equivalent to two 45-degree (0.79 rad) bends].

**708.1.5 Cleanout size.** Cleanouts shall be the same size as the piping served by the cleanout, except that cleanouts for piping larger than 4 inches (102 mm) need not be larger than 4 inches (102 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. P" P" traps connected to the drainage piping with slip joints or ground joint connections.
2. P" P" traps into which floor drains, shower drains or tub drains with removable strainers discharge.
3. P" P" traps into which the straight-through type waste and overflow discharge with the overflow connecting to the top of the tee.
4. P" P" traps into which residential washing machines discharge.
5. Test tees or cleanouts in a vertical pipe.
6. Cleanout near the junction of the building drain and the building sewer which may be rodded both ways.
7. Water closets for the water closet fixture drain only.
8. Cast-iron cleanout sizing shall be in accordance with referenced standards in Table 702.4, ASTM A74 for hub and spigot fittings or ASTM A888 or CISPI 301 for hubless fittings.
9. Cleanouts located on stacks can be one size smaller than the ~~stack~~stack size.
10. A removable ~~P-trap~~P-trap with slip or ground joint connections can serve as a cleanout for drain piping that is one size larger than the ~~P-trap~~P-trap size.

**708.1.6 Cleanout equivalent.** A fixture trap or a fixture with integral trap, removable without altering concealed piping, shall be acceptable as a cleanout equivalent.

**708.1.6708.1.7 Cleanout plugs.** Cleanout plugs shall be of ~~brass~~copper-alloy, plastic or other *approved* materials. Cleanout plugs for borosilicate glass piping systems shall be of borosilicate glass. ~~Brass~~Copper-alloy cleanout plugs shall conform to ASTM A74 and shall be limited for use only on metallic piping systems. Plastic cleanout plugs shall conform to the referenced standards for plastic pipe fittings, as indicated in Table 702.4. Cleanout plugs shall have a raised square head, a countersunk square head or a countersunk slot head. Where a cleanout plug will have a trim cover screw installed into the plug, the plug shall be manufactured with a blind end threaded hole for such purpose.

**708.1.7708.1.8 Manholes.** Manholes and manhole covers shall be of an *approved* type. Manholes located inside of a building shall have gas-tight covers that require tools for removal.

**708.1.8708.1.9 Installation arrangement.** The installation arrangement of a cleanout shall enable cleaning of drainage piping only in the direction of drainage flow.

**Exceptions:**

1. Test tees serving as cleanouts.
2. A two-way cleanout installation that is *approved* for meeting the requirements of Section 708.1.3.

**708.1.9708.1.10 Required clearance.** Cleanouts for 6-inch (153 mm) and smaller piping shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from, and perpendicular to, the face of the opening to any obstruction. Cleanouts for 8-inch (203 mm) and larger piping shall be provided with a clearance of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from, and perpendicular to, the face of the opening to any obstruction.

**708.1.10708.1.11 Cleanout access.** Required cleanouts shall not be installed in concealed locations. For the purposes of this section, concealed locations include, but are not limited to, the inside of plenums, within walls, within floor/ceiling assemblies, below grade and in crawl spaces where the height from the crawl space floor to the nearest obstruction along the path from the crawl space opening to the cleanout location is less than 24 inches (610 mm). Clean-outs with openings at a finished wall shall have the face of the opening located within 1½ inches (38 mm) of the finished wall surface. Cleanouts located below grade shall be extended to grade level so that the top of the cleanout plug is at or above grade. A cleanout installed in a floor or walkway that will not have a trim cover installed shall have a countersunk plug installed so the top surface of the plug is flush with the finished surface of the floor or walkway.

**708.1.10.1708.1.11.1 Cleanout plug trim covers.** Trim covers and access doors for cleanout plugs shall be designed for such purposes and shall be *approved*. Trim cover fasteners that thread into cleanout plugs shall be corrosion resistant. Cleanout plugs shall not be covered with mortar, plaster or any other permanent material.

**708.1.10.2708.1.11.2 Floor cleanout assemblies.** Where it is necessary to protect a cleanout plug from the loads of vehicular traffic, cleanout assemblies in accordance with ASME A112.36.2M shall be installed.

**708.1.11708.1.12 Prohibited use.** The use of a threaded cleanout opening to add a fixture or to extend piping shall be prohibited except where another cleanout of equal size is installed with the required access and clearance.

## SECTION 709 FIXTURE UNITS

**709.1 Values for fixtures.** *Drainage fixture unit* values as given in Table 709.1 designate the relative load weight of different kinds of fixtures that shall be employed in estimating the total load carried by a soil or waste pipe, and shall be used in connection with Tables 710.1(1) and 710.1(2) of sizes for soil, waste and vent pipes for which the permissible load is given in terms of fixture units.

**TABLE 709.1  
DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS FOR FIXTURES AND GROUPS**

| FIXTURE TYPE   | DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT<br>VALUE AS LOAD FACTORS | MINIMUM SIZE OF TRAP<br>(inches) |
|--|--|----------------------------------|
| Automatic clothes washers, commercial <sup>a,g</sup>   | 3  | 2                                |
| Automatic clothes washers, residential <sup>g</sup>  | 2  | 2                                |
| Bathroom group as defined in Section 202 (1.6 gpf water closet) <sup>f</sup>                       | 5  | —                                |
| Bathroom group as defined in Section 202 (water closet flushing greater than 1.6 gpf) <sup>f</sup> | 6  | —                                |
| Bathtub <sup>b</sup> (with or without overhead shower or whirlpool attachments)                    | 2  | 1½                               |
| Bidet  | 1  | 1¼                               |

**SANITARY DRAINAGE**

|  |                  |                  |
|--|------------------|------------------|
| Combination sink and tray  | 2                | 1½               |
| Dental lavatory  | 1                | 1¼               |
| Dental unit or cuspidor  | 1                | 1¼               |
| Dishwashing machine <sup>c</sup> , domestic  | 2                | 1½               |
| Drinking fountain  | ½                | 1¼               |
| Emergency floor drain  | 0                | 2                |
| Floor drains <sup>h</sup>  | 2 <sup>h</sup>   | 2                |
| Floor sinks  | Note h           | 2                |
| Kitchen sink, domestic   | 2                | 1½               |
| Kitchen sink, domestic with food waste disposer <sup>d</sup> , and/or dishwasher or both <sup>i</sup>  | 2                | 1½               |
| Laundry tray (1 or 2 compartments)   | 2                | 1½               |
| Lavatory   | 1                | 1¼               |
| Shower (based on the total flow rate through showerheads and body sprays)<br>Flow rate:<br>5.7 gpm or less<br>Greater than 5.7 gpm to 12.3 gpm<br>Greater than 12.3 gpm to 25.8 gpm<br>Greater than 25.8 gpm to 55.6 gpm | 2<br>3<br>5<br>6 | 2<br>2<br>3<br>4 |
| Service sink   | 2                | 1½               |
| Sink   | 2                | 1½               |
| Urinal   | 4                | Note d           |
| Urinal, 1 gallon per flush or less   | 2 <sup>e</sup>   | Note d           |
| Urinal, nonwater supplied  | ½                | Note d           |
| Wash sink (circular or multiple) each set of faucets   | 2                | 1½               |
| Water closet, flushometer tank, public or private  | 4 <sup>e</sup>   | Note d           |
| Water closet, private (1.6 gpf)  | 3 <sup>e</sup>   | Note d           |
| Water closet, private (flushing greater than 1.6 gpf)  | 4 <sup>e</sup>   | Note d           |
| Water closet, public (1.6 gpf)   | 4 <sup>e</sup>   | Note d           |
| Water closet, public (flushing greater than 1.6 gpf)   | 6 <sup>e</sup>   | Note d           |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, gpf = gallon per flushing cycle, ~~gpm = gallon per minute~~, 1 gallon per minute (gpm) = 3.785 L/m.

a. For traps larger than 3 inches, use Table 709.2.

b. A showerhead over a bathtub or whirlpool bathtub attachment does not increase the ~~drainage fixture unit~~ drainage fixture unit value.

c. See Sections 709.2 through 709.4.1 for methods of computing unit value of fixtures not listed in this table or for rating of devices with intermittent flows.

d. Trap size shall be consistent with the fixture outlet size.

e. For the purpose of computing loads on ~~building drains~~ building drains and ~~sewers~~ sewers, water closets and urinals shall not be rated at a lower ~~drainage fixture unit~~ drainage fixture unit unless the lower values are confirmed by testing.

f. For fixtures added to a ~~bathroom group~~ bathroom group, add the ~~dfu~~ value of those additional fixtures to the ~~bathroom group~~ bathroom group fixture count.

g. See Section 406.2 for sizing requirements for ~~fixture drain~~ fixture drain, branch drain and drainage ~~stack~~ stack for an automatic clothes washer standpipe.

h. See Sections 709.4 and 709.4.1.

i. Fixture arm and trap shall be ~~4½-inches~~ 1-1/2-inch minimum; vertical drain shall be ~~2-inches~~ 2-inch minimum.

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

**709.2 Fixtures not listed in Table 709.1.** Fixtures not listed in Table 709.1 shall have a *drainage fixture unit* load based on the outlet size of the fixture in accordance with Table 709.2. The minimum trap size for unlisted fixtures shall be the size of the drainage outlet but not less than 1 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm).

**TABLE 709.2**  
**DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS FOR FIXTURE DRAINS OR TRAPS**

| FIXTURE DRAIN OR TRAP SIZE (inches) | DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNIT VALUE |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 $\frac{1}{4}$                     | 1                           |
| 1 $\frac{1}{2}$                     | 2                           |
| 2                                   | 3                           |
| 2 $\frac{1}{2}$                     | 4                           |
| 3                                   | 5                           |
| 4                                   | 6                           |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**709.3 Values for continuous and semicontinuous flow.** ~~Conversion of gpm flow to dfu values. Drainage fixture unit values for continuous and semicontinuous flow into~~ Where discharges to a waste receptor or to a drainage system (hub drains, sewage lift pumps, etc.) are only known in gallons per minute (liters per second) values, the *drainage fixture unit* values for those flows shall be computed on the basis that 1 gpm (0.06 L/s) of flow is equivalent to two ~~drainage fixture units~~ *fixture units*.

**709.4 Values for indirect waste receptor.** The *drainage fixture unit* load of an indirect waste receptor receiving the discharge of indirectly connected fixtures shall be the sum of the *drainage fixture unit* values of the fixtures that discharge to the receptor, but not less than the *drainage fixture unit* value given for the indirect waste receptor in Table 709.1 or 709.2.

**709.4.1 Clear-water waste receptors.** Where waste receptors such as floor drains, floor sinks and hub drains receive only clear-water waste from display cases, refrigerated display cases, ice bins, coolers and freezers, such receptors shall have a *drainage fixture unit* value of one-half.

## SECTION 710 DRAINAGE SYSTEM SIZING

**710.1 Maximum fixture unit load.** The maximum number of *drainage fixture units* connected to a given size of *building sewer*, *building drain* or horizontal *branch* of the *building drain* shall be determined using Table 710.1(1). The maximum number of *drainage fixture units* connected to a given size of horizontal *branch* or vertical soil or waste *stack* shall be determined using Table 710.1(2).

**TABLE 710.1(1)**  
**BUILDING DRAINS AND SEWERS**

| DIAMETER OF PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS CONNECTED TO ANY PORTION OF THE BUILDING DRAIN OR THE BUILDING SEWER, INCLUDING BRANCHES OF THE BUILDING DRAIN <sup>a,b,d</sup> |                      |                      |                      |
|---------------------------|--|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|                           | Slope per foot   |                      |                      |                      |
|                           | 1 $\frac{1}{16}$ inch  | 1 $\frac{1}{8}$ inch | 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ inch | 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ inch |
| 1 $\frac{1}{4}$           | —  | —                    | 1                    | 1                    |
| 1 $\frac{1}{2}$           | —  | —                    | 3                    | 3                    |
| 2                         | —  | —                    | 21                   | 26                   |

|                |       |       |        |        |
|----------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| 2½             | —     | —     | 24     | 31     |
| 3 <sup>c</sup> | —     | 36    | 42     | 50     |
| 4              | —     | 180   | 216    | 250    |
| 5              | —     | 390   | 480    | 575    |
| 6              | —     | 700   | 840    | 1,000  |
| 8              | 1,400 | 1,600 | 1,920  | 2,300  |
| 10             | 2,500 | 2,900 | 3,500  | 4,200  |
| 12             | 3,900 | 4,600 | 5,600  | 6,700  |
| 15             | 7,000 | 8,300 | 10,000 | 12,000 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

- The minimum size of any *building drain* serving a water closet shall be 3 inches.
- No building sewer shall be less than 4 inches in size.
- No more than ~~three~~four water closets.
- Minimum of 2-inch diameter underground.

**TABLE 710.1(2)**  
**HORIZONTAL FIXTURE BRANCHES AND STACKS<sup>a, b</sup>**

| DIAMETER OF PIPE (inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS (dfu) |  |   |   |
|---------------------------|--|--|---|---|
|                           | Total for horizontal branch <sup>c</sup>       | Stacks <sup>b</sup>                      |   |   |
|                           |  | Total discharge into one branch interval | Total for stack of three branch intervals <del>in intervals</del> or less | Total for stack greater than three branch intervals |
| 1½                        | 3  | 2  | 4   | 8   |
| 2                         | 6  | 6  | 10  | 24  |
| 2½                        | 12   | 9  | 20  | 42  |
| 3 <sup>a</sup>            | 20 <sup>d</sup>                                | 20 <sup>d</sup>                          | 48  | 72  |
| 4                         | 160  | 90                                       | 240   | 500   |
| 5                         | 360  | 200                                      | 540   | 1,100   |
| 6                         | 620  | 350                                      | 960   | 1,900   |
| 8                         | 1,400  | 600                                      | 2,200   | 3,600   |
| 10                        | 2,500  | 1,000                                    | 3,800   | 5,600   |
| 12                        | 3,900  | 1,500                                    | 6,000   | 8,400   |
| 15                        | 7,000  | Note c                                   | Note c  | Note c  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- Does not include branches of the building drain. Refer to Table 710.1(1).

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

- b. Stacks shall be sized based on the total accumulated connected load at each story or branch interval. As the total accumulated connected load decreases, stacks are permitted to be reduced in size. Stack diameters shall not be reduced to less than one-half of the diameter of the largest stack size required.
- c. Sizing load based on design criteria.
- d. No more than ~~three~~four water closets.
- e. 50 percent less for circuit-vented fixture branches.
- f. Minimum of 2-inch diameter underground.
- g. The minimum size of any branches serving a water closet shall be 3 inches.

**710.1.1 Horizontal stack offsets.** Horizontal *stack* offsets shall be sized as required for ~~building drains~~building drains in accordance with Table 710.1(1), except as required by Section 711.3.

**710.1.2 Vertical stack offsets.** Vertical *stack* offsets shall be sized as required for straight ~~stacks~~stacks in accordance with Table 710.1(2), except where required to be sized as a *building drain* in accordance with Section 711.1.1.

**710.2 Future fixtures.** Where provision is made for the future installation of fixtures, those provided for shall be considered in determining the required sizes of drain pipes.

### SECTION 711 OFFSETS IN DRAINAGE PIPING IN BUILDINGS OF FIVE STORIES OR MORE

**711.1 Horizontal branch connections above or below vertical stack offsets.** If a horizontal *branch* connects to the *stack* within 2 feet (610 mm) above or below a vertical *stack* offset, and the offset is located more than four *branch intervals* below the top of the *stack*, the offset shall be vented in accordance with Section 907.

**711.1.1 Omission of vents for vertical stack offsets.** Vents for vertical offsets required by Section 711.1 shall not be required where the *stack* and its offset are sized as a *building drain* [see Table 710.1(1)].

**711.2 Horizontal stack offsets.** A *stack* with a horizontal offset located more than four *branch intervals* below the top of the *stack* shall be vented in accordance with Section 907 and sized as follows:

1. The portion of the *stack* above the offset shall be sized as for a vertical *stack* based on the total number of *drainage fixture units* above the offset.
2. The offset shall be sized in accordance with Section 710.1.1.
3. The portion of the *stack* below the offset shall be sized as for the offset or based on the total number of *drainage fixture units* on the entire *stack*, whichever is larger [see Table 710.1(2), Column 5].

**711.2.1 Omission of vents for horizontal stack offsets.** Vents for horizontal ~~stack~~stack offsets required by Section 711.2 shall not be required where the ~~stack~~stack and its offset are one pipe size larger than required for a ~~building drain~~building drain [see Table 710.1(1)] and the entire ~~stack~~stack and offset are not less in cross-sectional area than that required for a straight ~~stack~~stack plus the area of an offset vent as provided for in Section 907.

**711.3 Offsets below lowest branch.** Where a vertical offset occurs in a soil or waste *stack* below the lowest horizontal *branch*, a change in diameter of the *stack* because of the offset shall not be required. If a horizontal offset occurs in a soil or waste *stack* below the lowest horizontal *branch*, the required diameter of the offset and the *stack* below it shall be determined as for a *building drain* in accordance with Table 710.1(1).

### SECTION 712 SUMPS AND EJECTORS

**712.1 Building subdrains.** *Building subdrains* that cannot be discharged to the *sewer* by gravity flow shall be discharged into a tightly covered and vented sump from which the liquid shall be lifted and discharged into the building gravity drainage system by automatic pumping equipment or other *approved* method. In other than existing structures, the sump shall not receive drainage from any piping within the building capable of being discharged by gravity to the *building sewer*.

**712.2 Valves required.** A check valve, a ~~full-open~~full-open valve and a means for cleanout located on the discharge side of the check valve shall be installed in the pump or ejector discharge piping between the pump or ejector and the gravity drainage



system. *Access* shall be provided to such valves. Such valves shall be located above the sump cover required by Section 712.1 or, where the discharge pipe from the ejector is below grade, the valves shall be accessibly located outside the sump below grade in an access pit with a removable *access* cover.

**712.3 Sump design.** The sump pump, pit and discharge piping shall conform to the requirements of Sections 712.3.1 through 712.3.5.

**712.3.1 Sump pump.** The sump pump capacity and head shall be appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

**712.3.2 Sump pit.** The sump pit shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth, unless otherwise *approved*. The pit shall be ~~accessible~~ provided with *access* and ~~shall be~~ located such that all drainage flows into the pit by gravity. The sump pit shall be constructed of tile, concrete, steel, plastic or other *approved* materials. The pit bottom shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump. The sump pit shall be fitted with a gastight removable cover that is installed ~~flush with grade or floor level, or above~~ not more than 2 inches (51 mm) below grade or floor level. The cover shall be adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The sump pit shall be vented in accordance with Chapter 9.

**712.3.3 Discharge pipe and fittings.** Discharge pipe and fittings serving sump pumps and ejectors shall be constructed of materials pressure-rated for not less than the maximum discharge pressure of the pump in accordance with Sections 712.3.3.1 and ~~712.3.3.2 and shall be *approved*~~ 712.3.3.2.

**712.3.3.1 Materials.** Pipe and fitting materials shall be constructed of copper or ABS plastic pipe, ~~brass, copper, copper-alloy~~, CPVC, ductile iron, PE, or PVC, excluding cell-core products.

**712.3.3.2 Ratings.** Pipe and fittings shall be rated for the maximum system operating pressure and temperature. Pipe fitting materials shall be compatible with the pipe material. Where pipe and fittings are buried in the earth, they shall be suitable for burial. DWV fittings with that are properly rated and allowed by the manufacturer's installation instructions shall be acceptable.

**712.3.4 Maximum effluent level.** The effluent level control shall be adjusted and maintained to at all times prevent the effluent in the sump from rising to within 2 inches (51 mm) of the invert of the gravity drain inlet into the sump.

**712.3.4.1 Sump alarms.** Sumps that discharge by means of automatic pumping equipment shall be provided with an approved, electrically operated high-water indicating alarm. A remote sensor shall activate the alarm when the fluid level exceeds a preset level that is less than the maximum capacity of the sump. The alarm shall function to provide an audiovisual signal to occupants within the building. Electrical power for the alarm shall be supplied through a branch circuit separate from that supplying the pump motor.

**Exception:** Sump alarms are not required for single point-of-use sump pumps and macerating toilet systems.

**712.3.5 Pump connection to the drainage system.** Pumps connected to the drainage system shall connect to a *building sewer, building drain, soil stack, waste stack or horizontal branch drain*. Where the discharge line connects into horizontal drainage piping, the connection shall be made through a wye fitting into the top of the drainage piping and such wye fitting shall be located not less than 10 pipe diameters from the base of any *soil stack, waste stack or fixture drain*.

**712.4 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors.** A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall automatically discharge the contents of the sump to the building drainage system. The ejector pump discharge pipe shall not discharge directly into a septic tank. The pumped line shall discharge laterally into a 3 or 4-inch (102 mm) gravity line not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the connection to the tank through a lateral wye branch.

**712.4.1 Macerating toilet systems.** Macerating toilet systems shall comply with ASME A112.3.4/CSA B45.9 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**712.4.2 Capacity.** A sewage pump or sewage ejector shall have the capacity and head for the application requirements. Pumps or ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including 2 inches (51 mm). Other pumps or ejectors shall be capable of handling spherical solids with a diameter of up to and including  $\pm \frac{1}{2}$  inch ~~(25 mm)~~ (13 mm). The capacity of a pump or ejector based on the diameter of the discharge pipe shall be not less than that indicated in Table 712.4.2.

**Exceptions:**

## SANITARY DRAINAGE

1. Grinder pumps or grinder ejectors that receive the discharge of water closets shall have a discharge opening of not less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm).
2. Macerating toilet assemblies that serve single water closets shall have a discharge opening of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm).

TABLE 712.4.2  
MINIMUM CAPACITY OF  
SEWAGE PUMP OR SEWAGE EJECTOR

| DIAMETER OF<br>THE DISCHARGE PIPE (inches) | CAPACITY OF PUMP<br>OR EJECTOR (gpm) |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 2  | 21                                   |
| 2 $\frac{1}{2}$                            | 30                                   |
| 3  | 46                                   |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

## SECTION 713 HEALTH CARE PLUMBINGCOMPUTERIZED DRAINAGE DESIGN

**713.1 Scope.** This section shall govern those aspects of health care plumbing systems that differ from plumbing systems in other structures. Health care plumbing systems shall conform to this section in addition to the other requirements of this code. The provisions of this section shall apply to the special devices and equipment installed and maintained in the following occupancies: nursing homes; homes for the aged; orphanages; infirmaries; first aid stations; psychiatric facilities; clinics; professional offices of dentists and doctors; mortuaries; educational facilities; surgery, dentistry, research and testing laboratories; establishments manufacturing pharmaceutical drugs and medicines; and other structures with similar apparatus and equipment classified as plumbing.

**713.2 Bedpan washers and clinical sinks.** Bedpan washers and clinical sinks shall connect to the drainage and vent system in accordance with the requirements for a water closet. Bedpan washers shall also connect to a local vent.

**713.3 Indirect waste.** Sterilizers, steamers and condensers shall discharge to the drainage through an indirect waste pipe by means of an *air gap*. Where a battery of not more than three sterilizers discharges to an individual receptor, the distance between the receptor and a sterilizer shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm). The indirect waste pipe on a bedpan steamer shall be trapped.

**713.4 Vacuum system station.** Ready *access* shall be provided to vacuum system station receptacles. Such receptacles shall be built into cabinets or recesses and shall be visible.

**713.5 Bottle system.** Vacuum (fluid suction) systems intended for collecting, removing and disposing of blood, pus or other fluids by the bottle system shall be provided with receptacles equipped with an overflow prevention device at each vacuum outlet station.

**713.6 Central disposal system equipment.** Central vacuum (fluid suction) systems shall provide continuous service. Systems equipped with collecting or control tanks shall provide for draining and cleaning of the tanks while the system is in operation. In hospitals, the system shall be connected to the emergency power system. The exhausts from a vacuum pump serving a vacuum (fluid suction) system shall discharge separately to open air above the roof.

**713.7 Central vacuum or disposal systems.** Where the waste from a central vacuum (fluid suction) system of the barometric leg, collection tank or bottle disposal type is connected to the drainage system, the waste shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system through a trapped waste.

**713.7.1 Piping.** The piping of a central vacuum (fluid suction) system shall be of corrosion resistant material with a smooth interior surface. A *branch* shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) nominal pipe size for one outlet and shall

be sized in accordance with the number of vacuum outlets. A main shall be not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal pipe size. The pipe sizing shall be increased in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions as stations are increased.

**713.7.2 Velocity.** The velocity of airflow in a central vacuum (fluid suction) system shall be less than 5,000 feet per minute (25 m/s).

**713.8 Vent connections prohibited.** Connections between local vents serving bedpan washers or sterilizer vents serving sterilizing apparatus and normal sanitary plumbing systems are prohibited. Only one type of apparatus shall be served by a local vent.

**713.9 Local vents and stacks for bedpan washers.** Bedpan washers shall be vented to open air above the roof by means of one or more local vents. The local vent for a bedpan washer shall be not less than a 2-inch diameter (51 mm) pipe. A local vent serving a single bedpan washer is permitted to drain to the fixture served.

**713.9.1 Multiple installations.** Where bedpan washers are located above each other on more than one floor, a local vent *stack* is permitted to be installed to receive the local vent on the various floors. Not more than three bedpan washers shall be connected to a 2-inch (51 mm) local vent *stack*, not more than six to a 3-inch (76 mm) local vent *stack* and not more than 12 to a 4-inch (102 mm) local vent *stack*. In multiple installations, the connections between a bedpan washer local vent and a local vent *stack* shall be made with tee or tee wye sanitary pattern drainage fittings installed in an upright position.

**713.9.2 Trap required.** The bottom of the local vent *stack*, except where serving only one bedpan washer, shall be drained by means of a trapped and vented waste connection to the sanitary drainage system. The trap and waste shall be the same size as the local vent *stack*.

**713.9.3 Trap seal maintenance.** A water supply pipe not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) in diameter shall be taken from the flush supply of each bedpan washer on the discharge or fixture side of the vacuum breaker, shall be trapped to form not less than a 3-inch (76 mm) water seal and shall be connected to the local vent *stack* on each floor. The water supply shall be installed so as to provide a supply of water to the local vent *stack* for cleansing and drain trap seal maintenance each time a bedpan washer is flushed.

**713.10 Sterilizer vents and stacks.** Multiple installations of pressure and nonpressure sterilizers shall have the vent connections to the sterilizer vent *stack* made by means of inverted wye fittings. Access shall be provided to vent connections for the purpose of inspection and maintenance.

**713.10.1 Drainage.** The connection between sterilizer vent or exhaust openings and the sterilizer vent *stack* shall be designed and installed to drain to the funnel or baskettype waste fitting. In multiple installations, the sterilizer vent *stack* shall be drained separately to the lowest sterilizer funnel or basket type waste fitting or receptor.

**713.11 Sterilizer vent stack sizes.** Sterilizer vent *stack* sizes shall comply with Sections 713.11.1 through 713.11.4.

**713.11.1 Bedpan steamers.** The minimum size of a sterilizer vent serving a bedpan steamer shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) in diameter. Multiple installations shall be sized in accordance with Table 713.11.1.

**713.11.2 Boiling type sterilizers.** The size of a sterilizer vent *stack* shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter where serving a utensil sterilizer and not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) in diameter where serving an instrument sterilizer. Combinations of boiling type sterilizer vent connections shall be sized in accordance with Table 713.11.1.

**713.11.3 Pressure sterilizers.** Pressure sterilizer vent *stacks* shall be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) minimum. Those serving combinations of pressure sterilizer exhaust connections shall be sized in accordance with Table 713.11.3.

**713.11.4 Pressure instrument washer sterilizer sizes.**

The diameter of a sterilizer vent *stack* serving an instrument washer sterilizer shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Not more than two sterilizers shall be installed on a 2-inch (51 mm) *stack*, and not more than four sterilizers shall be installed on a 3-inch (76 mm) *stack*.

TABLE 713.11.1

**STACK SIZES FOR BEDPAN STEAMERS AND BOILING-TYPE STERILIZERS (Number of Connections of Various Sizes Permitted to Various-sized Sterilizer Vent Stacks)**

| STACK SIZE<br>(inches) | CONNECTION SIZE |    |
|------------------------|-----------------|----|
|                        | 1½"             | 2" |
| 1½ <sup>a</sup>        | 1 or 0          |    |
| 2 <sup>a</sup>         | 2 or 1          |    |
| 2 <sup>b</sup>         | 1 and 1         |    |
| 3 <sup>a</sup>         | 4 or 2          |    |
| 3 <sup>b</sup>         | 2 and 2         |    |
| 4 <sup>a</sup>         | 8 or 4          |    |
| 4 <sup>b</sup>         | 4 and 4         |    |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Total of each size.

b. Combination of sizes.

**TABLE 713.11.3  
STACK SIZES FOR PRESSURE STERILIZERS  
(Number of Connections of Various Sizes Permitted To Various-sized Vent Stacks)**

| STACK SIZE<br>(inches) | CONNECTION SIZE |                |       |        |
|------------------------|-----------------|----------------|-------|--------|
|                        | ¾"              | 1"             | 1½"   | 2"     |
| 1½ <sup>a</sup>        | 3 or            | 2 or           | 1     | —      |
| 1½ <sup>b</sup>        | 2 and           | 1              | —     | —      |
| 2 <sup>a</sup>         | 6 or            | 3 or           | 2 or  | 1      |
| 2 <sup>b</sup>         | 3 and           | 2              | —     | —      |
| 2 <sup>b</sup>         | 2 and           | 1 and          | 1     | —      |
| 2 <sup>b</sup>         | 1 and           | 1 and          | —     | 1      |
| 3 <sup>a</sup>         | 15 or           | 7 or           | 5 or  | 3      |
| 3 <sup>b</sup>         | 1 and           | 1 and<br>5 and | 2 and | 2<br>1 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Total of each size.

b. Combination of sizes.

**Deleted.**

**713.1 Design of drainage system.** The sizing, design and layout of the drainage system shall be permitted to be designed by approved computer design methods.

**713.2 Load on drainage system.** The load shall be computed from the simultaneous or sequential discharge conditions from fixtures, appurtenances and appliances or the peak usage design condition.

**713.2.1 Fixture discharge profiles.** The discharge profiles for flow rates versus time from fixtures and appliances shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

**713.3 Selections of drainage pipe sizes.** Pipe shall be sized to prevent full-bore flow.

**713.3.1 Selecting pipe wall roughness.** Pipe size calculations shall be conducted with the pipe wall roughness factor (ks), in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and as modified for aging roughness factors with deposits and corrosion.

**713.3.2 Slope of horizontal drainage piping.** Horizontal drainage piping shall be designed and installed at slopes in accordance with Table 704.1.

## SECTION 714 COMPUTERIZED DRAINAGE DESIGN BACKWATER VALVES

**~~715.1714.1~~ Sewage backflow.** Where plumbing fixtures are installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation below the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public *sewer*, such fixtures shall be protected by a backwater valve installed in the *building drain*, or horizontal *branch* serving such fixtures. Plumbing fixtures installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public *sewer* shall not discharge through a backwater valve.

**Exception:**

1. In existing buildings, fixtures above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the public *sewer* shall not be prohibited from discharging through a backwater valve.
2. Where the sewer service line ties directly to a manhole, that manhole is considered to be the next upstream manhole.
3. Where hub drains are located in the crawl space for condensate waste, a backwater valve shall be installed.

**~~715.2714.2~~ Material.** ~~Bearing parts of backwater valves shall be of corrosion-resistant material.~~ Backwater valves shall comply with ASME A112.14.1, CSA B181.1 or CSA B181.2.

**~~715.3714.3~~ Seal.** Backwater valves shall be so constructed as to provide a mechanical seal against backflow.

**~~715.4714.4~~ Diameter.** Backwater valves, when fully opened, shall have a capacity not less than that of the pipes in which they are installed.

**~~715.5714.5~~ Location.** Backwater valves shall be installed so that *access* is provided to the working ~~parts for service and repair parts.~~

**~~715.6714.6~~ Crawl Spaces.** All hub drains or floor drains installed in crawl spaces shall be protected from backflow into the building by a ~~check valve or~~ backwater valve installed in the lateral serving the said hub drain or floor drain. Trap seal protection shall be by the use of a deep seal trap.

## SECTION 715 BACKWATER VALVES VACUUM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

**~~716.1715.1~~ Scope.** Vacuum drainage systems shall be in accordance with Sections ~~716.2715.2~~ through ~~716.4.715.4~~.

**~~716.2715.2~~ System design.** Vacuum drainage systems shall be designed in accordance with the vacuum drainage system manufacturer's instructions. The system layout, including piping layout, tank assemblies, vacuum pump assembly and other components necessary for proper function of the system shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Plans, specifications and other data for such systems shall be submitted to the code official for review and approval prior to installation.

**~~716.2.1715.2.1~~ Fixtures.** Gravity-type fixtures installed in vacuum drainage systems shall comply with Chapter 4.

**~~716.2.2715.2.2~~ Drainage fixture units.** *Drainage fixture units* for gravity drainage systems that discharge into, or receive discharge from, vacuum drainage systems shall be based on the values in this chapter.

**~~716.2.3715.2.3~~ Water supply fixture units.** Water supply fixture units shall be based on the values in Chapter 6 of this code, except that the water supply fixture unit for a vacuum-type water closet shall be 1.

**~~716.2.4715.2.4~~ Traps and cleanouts.** Gravity drainage fixtures shall be provided with traps and cleanouts in accordance with this chapter and Chapter 10.

**~~716.2.5715.2.5~~ Materials.** Vacuum drainage pipe, fitting and valve materials shall be in accordance with the vacuum drainage system manufacturer's instructions and the requirements of this chapter.

**~~716.3715.3~~ Testing and demonstrations.** After completion of the entire system installation, the system shall be subjected to a vacuum test of 19 inches (483 mm) of mercury and shall be operated to function as required by the code official and the manufacturer of the vacuum drainage system. Recorded proof of all tests shall be submitted to the code official.

~~716.4~~715.4 **Written instructions.** Written instructions for the operation, maintenance, safety and emergency procedures shall be provided to the building owner. The code official shall verify that the building owner is in receipt of such instructions.

**SECTION 716**  
**VACUUM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS**  
**REPLACEMENT OF UNDERGROUND**  
**BUILDING SEWERS AND BUILDING**  
**DRAINS BY PIPE-BURSTING METHODS**

~~717.4~~716.1 **General.** This section shall govern the replacement of existing *building sewer* and *building drain* piping by pipe-bursting methods.

~~717.2~~716.2 **Applicability.** The replacement of *building sewer* and *building drain* piping by pipe-bursting methods shall be limited to gravity drainage piping of sizes 6 inches (152 mm) and smaller. The replacement piping shall be of the same nominal size as the existing piping.

~~717.3~~716.3 **Pre-installation inspection.** The existing piping sections to be replaced shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey. The survey shall include notations of the position of cleanouts and the depth of connections to the existing piping.

~~717.4~~716.4 **Pipe.** The replacement pipe shall be made of high-density polyethylene (HDPE) ~~that conforms to cell classification number PE3608, PE4608 or PE4710 as indicated in ASTM F714 and shall have a standard dimension ratio (SDR) of 17.~~ The replacement piping pipe shall be ~~manufactured with a standard dimension ratio (SDR) of 17 and~~ in compliance with ASTM F714.

~~717.5~~716.5 **Pipe fittings.** Pipe fittings to be connected to the replacement piping pipe shall be made of high-density polyethylene (HDPE) ~~that conforms to cell classification number PE3608, PE4608 or PE4710 as indicated in ASTM F714 and shall be in compliance with ASTM D2683,~~ and shall be manufactured with an SDR of 17 and in compliance with ASTM D2683.

~~717.6~~716.6 **Cleanouts.** Where the existing *building sewer* or *building drain* did not have cleanouts meeting the requirements of this code, cleanout fittings shall be installed as required by this code.

~~717.7~~716.7 **Post-installation inspection.** The completed replacement piping section shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey. The video survey shall be reviewed and *approved* by the code official prior to pressure testing of the replacement piping system.

~~717.8~~716.8 **Pressure testing.** The replacement piping system piping shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**SECTION 717**  
**REPLACEMENT OF UNDERGROUND-**  
**BUILDING SEWERS AND BUILDING-**  
**DRAINS BY PIPE-BURSTING METHODS**  
**RELINING BUILDING SEWERS**  
**AND BUILDING DRAINS**

**717.1 General.** This section shall govern the relining of existing *building sewers* and *building drainage* piping.

**717.2 Applicability.** The relining of existing *building sewers* and *building drainage* piping shall be limited to gravity drainage piping 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter and larger. The relined piping shall be of the same nominal size as the existing piping.

**717.3 Preinstallation requirements.** Prior to commencement of the relining installation, the existing piping sections to be relined shall be descaled and cleaned. After the cleaning process has occurred and water has been flushed through the system, the piping shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey.

**717.3.1 Preinstallation recorded video camera survey.** The video survey shall include verification of the project address location. The video shall include notations of the cleanout and fitting locations, and the approximate depth of the existing piping. The video shall also include notations of the length of piping at intervals not greater than 25 feet (7620 mm).

**717.4 Permitting.** Prior to permit issuance, the code official shall review and evaluate the preinstallation recorded video camera survey to determine if the piping system is able to be relined in accordance with the proposed lining system manufacturer's installation requirements and applicable referenced standards.

**717.5 Prohibited applications.** Where review of the preinstallation recorded video camera survey reveals that piping systems are not installed correctly or defects exist, relining shall not be permitted. The defective portions of piping shall be exposed and repaired with pipe and fittings in accordance with this code. Defects include, but are not limited to, backgrade or insufficient slope, complete pipe wall deterioration or complete separations such as from tree root invasion or improper support.

**717.6 Relining materials.** The relining materials shall be manufactured in compliance with applicable standards and certified as required in Section 303. Fold-and-form pipe reline materials shall be manufactured in compliance with ASTM F1504 or ASTM F1871.

**717.7 Installation.** The installation of relining materials shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, applicable referenced standards and this code.

**717.7.1 Material data report.** The installer shall record the data as required by the relining material manufacturer and applicable standards. The recorded data shall include but is not limited to the location of the project, relining material type, amount of product installed and conditions of the installation. A copy of the data report shall be provided to the code official prior to final approval.

**717.8 Post-installation recorded video camera survey.** The completed, relined piping system shall be inspected internally by a recorded video camera survey after the system has been flushed and flow-tested with water. The video survey shall be submitted to the code official prior to finalization of the permit. The video survey shall be reviewed and evaluated to provide verification that no defects exist. Any defects identified shall be repaired and replaced in accordance with this code.

**717.9 Certification.** A certification shall be provided in writing to the code official, from the permit holder, that the relining materials have been installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, the applicable standards and this code.

**717.10 Approval.** Upon verification of compliance with the requirements of Sections 717.1 through 717.9, the code official shall approve the installation.

## **SECTION 718**

### **CURED-IN PLACE PIPING (CIPP) REHABILITATION OF BUILDING SEWERS AND BUILDING DRAINS**

**718.1 General.** This section shall govern the replacement, rehabilitation or repair of existing *building sewer* piping by cured in-place piping methods.

**718.2 Scope.** Cured in Place Piping (CIPP) installations shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1216 and be installed per the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**718.1 Cure-in-place.** Sectional cure-in-place rehabilitation of *building sewer* piping and sewer service lateral piping shall be in accordance with ASTM F2599. Main and lateral cure-in-place rehabilitation of *building sewer* and sewer service lateral pipe and their connections to the main sewer pipe shall be in accordance with ASTM F2561. Hydrophilic rings or gaskets in cure-in-place rehabilitation of *building sewer* piping and sewer service laterals shall be in accordance with ASTM F3240 to ensure water tightness and elimination of ground water penetration.

## CHAPTER 8

# INDIRECT/SPECIAL WASTE

### SECTION 801 GENERAL

**801.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern matters concerning indirect waste piping and special wastes. This chapter shall further control matters concerning food-handling establishments, sterilizers, humidifiers, clear-water waste, swimming pools, methods of providing *air breaks* or *air gaps*, and neutralizing devices for corrosive wastes.

**801.2 Protection.** Devices, appurtenances, appliances and apparatus intended to serve some special function, such as sterilization, humidification, distillation, processing, cooling, or storage of ice or foods, and that discharge to the drainage system, shall be provided with protection against backflow, flooding, fouling, contamination and stoppage of the drain.

### SECTION 802 INDIRECT WASTES

**802.1 Where required.** Food-handling equipment, in other than dwelling units, clear-water waste, humidifiers, dishwashing machines and utensils, pots, pans and dishwashing sinks shall discharge through an indirect waste pipe as specified in Sections 802.1.1 through 802.1.8. ~~Health care related fixtures, devices and equipment shall discharge to the drainage system through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air gap in accordance with this chapter and Section 713.3. Fixtures not required by this section to be indirectly connected by this section and the exception to Section 301.6 shall be directly connected to the plumbing system in accordance with Chapter 7.~~

**802.1.1 Food handling.** Equipment and fixtures utilized for the storage, preparation and handling of food shall discharge through an indirect waste pipe by means of an *air gap*. Each well of a multiple-compartment sink shall discharge independently to a waste receptor.

**802.1.2 Floor drains in food storage areas.** Floor drains located within walk-in refrigerators or freezers in food service and food establishments shall be indirectly connected to the sanitary drainage system by means of an *air gap*. Where a floor drain is located within an area subject to freezing, the waste line serving the floor drain shall not be trapped and shall indirectly discharge into a waste receptor located outside of the area subject to freezing.

**802.1.3 Potable clear-water waste.** Where devices and equipment, such as sterilizers and relief valves, discharge potable water to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an *air gap*. Drinking fountains may be connected directly or indirectly.

**802.1.4 Swimming pools.** Where wastewater from swimming pools, backwash from filters and water from pool deck drains discharge to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air break or *air gap*.

**802.1.5 Nonpotable clear-water waste.** Where devices and equipment such as process tanks, filters, condensate drains, drips and boilers discharge nonpotable water to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an *air break* or an *air gap*.

**802.1.6 Domestic dishwashing machines.** Domestic dishwashing machines shall discharge indirectly through an *air gap* or *air break* into a waste receptor in accordance with Section 802.2, or discharge into a wye branch fitting on the tailpiece of the kitchen sink or the dishwasher connection of a food waste disposer. The waste line of a domestic dishwashing machine discharging into a kitchen sink tailpiece or food waste disposer shall connect to a deck-mounted air gap or the waste line shall rise and be securely fastened to the underside of the sink rim or counter.

**802.1.7 Commercial dishwashing machines.** The discharge from a commercial dishwashing machine shall be through an *air gap* or *air break* into a waste receptor in accordance with ~~Section 802.2.1~~ Section 802.3.



## INDIRECT/SPECIAL WASTE

**802.1.8 Food utensils, dishes, pots and pans sinks.** Sinks, in other than dwelling units, used for the washing, rinsing or sanitizing of utensils, dishes, pots, pans or service ware used in the preparation, serving or eating of food shall discharge indirectly through an *air gap* or an *air break* to the drainage system.

**802.2 Material, joints and connections.** The materials, joints, connections and methods utilized for the construction and installation of indirect waste piping systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.

**802.2.3 Installation.** Indirect waste piping shall discharge through an *air gap* or *air break* into a waste receptor. Waste receptors shall be trapped and vented and shall connect to the building drainage system. Indirect waste piping that exceeds 30 inches (762 mm) in *developed length* measured horizontally, or 54 inches (1372 mm) in total *developed length*, shall be trapped.

**Exception:** Where a waste receptor receives only clearwater waste and does not directly connect to a sanitary drainage system, the receptor shall not require a trap.

**802.2.1802.3.1 Air gap.** The *air gap* between the indirect waste pipe and the *flood level rim* of the waste receptor shall be not less than twice the *effective opening* of the indirect waste pipe.

**802.2.2802.3.2 Air break.** An *air break* shall be provided between the indirect waste pipe and the trap seal of the waste receptor.

**802.3802.4 Waste receptors.** Every waste receptor shall be of an *approved* type. A removable strainer or basket shall cover the waste outlet of waste receptors. Waste receptors shall be installed in ventilated spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in concealed spaces. Waste receptors shall not be installed in plenums, crawl spaces, attics, interstitial spaces above ceilings and below floors. *Ready access* shall be provided to waste receptors.

**ExceptionExceptions:**

1. Where hub drains are installed in a crawl space for condensate waste.
2. This section shall not apply to hub drains in equipment rooms and furnace rooms in dwelling units.
3. Hub drains shall not be required to have strainers.

**802.3.1802.4.1 Size of receptors.** A waste receptor shall be sized for the maximum discharge of all indirect waste pipes served by the receptor. Receptors shall be installed to prevent splashing or flooding.

**802.3.2802.4.2 Hub drains.** A hub drain shall be in the form of a hub or a pipe extending not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above a water-impervious floor and shall not be required to have a strainer.

**802.3.3802.4.3 Standpipes.** Standpipes shall be individually trapped. *Access* shall be provided to standpipes and drains for rodding. Standpipes shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter and not less than 18 inches (762 mm) or more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in height as measured from the crown weir. The standpipe shall extend 34 inches (864 mm) minimum above the base of the clothes washer unless recommended otherwise by the manufacturer. The connection of a laundry tray waste line may be made into a standpipe for the automatic clothes-washer drain. The standpipe shall extend above the flood level rim of the laundry tray. The outlet of the laundry tray shall be a maximum horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm) from the standpipe trap.

**802.4.3.1 Connection of laundry tray to standpipe.** As an alternative for a laundry tray fixture connecting directly to a drainage system, a laundry tray waste line without a fixture trap shall connect to a standpipe for an automatic clothes washer drain. The standpipe shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the weir of the standpipe trap and shall extend above the flood level rim of the laundry tray. The outlet of the laundry tray shall not be greater than 30 inches (762 mm) horizontal distance from the side of the standpipe.

## SECTION 803 SPECIAL WASTES

**803.1 Neutralizing device required for corrosive wastes.** Corrosive liquids, spent acids or other harmful chemicals that destroy or injure a drain, sewer, soil or waste pipe, or create noxious or toxic fumes or interfere with sewage treatment processes shall not be discharged into the plumbing system without being thoroughly diluted, neutralized or treated by passing through an *approved* dilution or neutralizing device. Such devices shall be automatically provided with a sufficient supply of diluting wa-

ter or neutralizing medium so as to make the contents non-injurious before discharge into the drainage system. The nature of the corrosive or harmful waste and the method of its treatment or dilution shall be *approved* prior to installation.

**803.2 System design.** ~~Deleted. A chemical drainage and vent system shall be designed and installed in accordance with this code. Chemical drainage and vent systems shall be completely separated from the sanitary systems. Chemical waste shall not discharge to a sanitary drainage system until such waste has been treated in accordance with Section 803.1.~~

**803.3 Piscina drain.** The drain from a wash basin (piscina) located in a sacristy may be connected directly to a dry well.

**803.4 Acid soil and waste piping.** For engineered acid soil and waste drainage systems, the type of pipe shall be selected by a registered design professional. For non-engineered acid soil and waste drainage systems, the piping shall be of a material which is designed and recommended by the manufacturer as suitable for the type of waste drained. Piping shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. When installed within buildings, piping of combustible materials shall be of a flame-retardant type rated at least V-2 in accordance with UL-94. Concentrations of acid waste which are sufficient to adversely affect the conventional drainage system shall be suitably diluted or neutralized before interconnection. Fittings shall conform to the type of piping used.

**803.5 Wastewater temperature.** Steam pipes shall not connect to any part of a drainage or plumbing system and water above 140°F (60°C) shall not be discharged into any part of a drainage system. Such pipes shall discharge into an indirect waste receptor connected to the drainage system.

## **SECTION 804**

### **MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS**

**804.1 General.** ~~The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of indirect waste pipes and systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.~~

## CHAPTER 9 VENTS

### SECTION 901 GENERAL

**901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of vent systems. This chapter shall control the minimum diameter of vent pipes, circuit vents, branch vents and individual vents, and the size and length of vents and various aspects of vent stacks and stack vents. Additionally, this chapter regulates vent grades and connections, height above fixtures and relief vents for stacks and fixture traps, and the venting of sumps and sewers.

**901.2 Trap seal protection.** The plumbing system shall be provided with a system of vent piping that will permit the admission or emission of air so that the seal of any fixture trap shall not be subjected to a pressure differential of more than 1 inch of water column (249 Pa).

**901.2.1 Venting required.** Traps and trapped fixtures shall be vented in accordance with one of the venting methods specified in this chapter. All fixtures discharging downstream from a water closet shall be individually vented except as provided in Section ~~914~~914.

**901.3 Chemical waste vent systems.** The vent system for a chemical waste system shall be independent of the sanitary vent system and shall terminate separately through the roof to the outdoors and not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above roof or parapet or to an air admittance valve that complies with ASSE 1049. Air admittance valves for chemical waste systems shall be constructed of materials *approved* in accordance with Section ~~702.5~~702.6 and shall be tested for chemical resistance in accordance with ASTM F1412.

**901.4 Use limitations.** The plumbing vent system shall not be utilized for purposes other than the venting of the plumbing system.

**901.5 Tests.** The vent system shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**901.6 Engineered systems.** ~~Deleted.~~ Engineered venting systems shall conform to the provisions of Section 919.

### SECTION 902 MATERIALS

**902.1 Vents.** The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of venting systems shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 702.

**902.2 Sheet copper.** Sheet copper for vent pipe flashings shall conform to ASTM B152 and shall weigh not less than 8 ounces per square foot (2.5 kg/m<sup>2</sup>).

**902.3 Sheet lead.** Sheet lead for vent pipe flashings shall weigh not less than 3 pounds per square foot (15 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) for field-constructed flashings and not less than 2<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> pounds per square foot (12 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) for prefabricated flashings.

### SECTION 903 VENT TERMINALS

**903.1 Vent terminal required.** The vent pipe shall terminate by extending to the outdoors through the roof or the side wall in accordance with one of the methods identified in Sections 903.1.1 through 903.1.4.

**~~903.1~~903.1.1 Roof extension unprotected.** Open vent pipes that extend through a roof shall be terminated not less than 6 inches (mm) above the roof. ~~Where a roof is to be used for assembly or as a promenade, observation deck, sunbathing deck or similar purposes, open vent pipes shall terminate not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the roof.~~

## VENTS

**903.1.2 Roof used for recreational or assembly purposes.** Where a roof is to be used as a promenade, restaurant, bar, or sunbathing deck, as an observation deck, or for similar purposes, open vent pipes shall terminate not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the roof.

**Exception:** Vent terminals greater than 10 feet from a demarcation line of the occupied area.

**903.1.3 Protected vent terminal.** Where an open vent pipe terminates above a sloped roof and is covered by either a roof-mounted panel (such as a solar collector or photovoltaic panel mounted over the vent opening) or a roof element (such as an architectural feature or a decorative shroud), the vent pipe shall terminate not less than 6 inches (153 mm) above the roof surface. Such roof elements shall be designed to prevent the adverse effects of snow accumulation and wind on the function of the vent. The placement of a panel over a vent pipe and the design of a roof element covering the vent pipe shall provide for an open area for the vent pipe to the outdoors that is not less than the area of the pipe, as calculated from the inside diameter of the pipe. Such vent terminals shall be protected by a method that prevents birds and rodents from entering or blocking the vent pipe opening.

~~903.6~~**903.1.4 Extension through the wall.****Sidewall vent terminal.** Vent terminals extending through the wall shall terminate at a point not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the lot line and not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above average ground level, the highest adjacent grade within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of the vent terminal. Vent terminals shall not terminate under the overhang of a structure with soffit vents. ~~Side wall~~**Sidewall** vent terminals shall be protected to prevent birds or rodents from entering or blocking the vent opening.

**903.2 Frost closure.** Deleted.

**903.3 Flashings.** The juncture of each vent pipe with the roof line shall be made ~~water tight~~**watertight** by an *approved* flashing. Vent extensions in walls and soffits shall be made weather tight by caulking.

**903.4 Prohibited use.** A vent terminal shall not be used for any purpose other than a vent terminal. Vent terminals shall not be used as a flag pole or to support flag poles, television aerials or similar items, except when the piping has been anchored in an approved manner.

**903.5 Location of vent terminal.** An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building or property line, and any such vent terminal shall not be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is 2 feet (610 mm) or more above the top of such opening.

~~903.7~~**903.6 Extension outside a structure.** Deleted.

## SECTION 904 OUTDOOR VENT EXTENSIONS

**904.1 Stack required.** Every building in which plumbing is installed shall have at least one stack the size of which is not less than one-half of the required diameter of the building drain, and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in diameter. Such stack shall run undiminished in size and as directly as possible from the building drain through to the open air or to a vent header that extends to the open air.

**904.1.1 Connection to drainage system.** A vent stack shall connect to the building drain or to the base of a drainage stack in accordance with Section 904.4. A stack vent shall be an extension of the drainage stack. For townhouses and one- and two-family dwellings, the main vent shall connect to the building drain, building stack or branch thereof not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in size.

**904.2 Vent stack required.** A vent *stack* shall be required for every drainage *stack* that has five *branch intervals* or more.

**Exception:** Drainage *stacks* installed in accordance with Section 913.

**904.3 Vent termination.** Vent *stacks* or *stack vents* shall terminate outdoors to the open air or to a stack-type air admittance valve in accordance with Section 918.

**904.4 Vent connection at base.** Vent *stacks* shall connect to the base of the drainage *stack*. The vent *stack* shall connect at or below the lowest horizontal *branch*. Where the vent *stack* connects to the *building drain*, the connection shall be located downstream of the drainage *stack* and within a distance of 10 times the diameter of the drainage *stack*.

## VENTS

**904.5 Vent headers.** *Stack vents* and vent stacks connected into a common vent header at the top of the *stacks* and extending to the open air at one point shall be sized in accordance with the requirements of Section 906.1. The number of fixture units shall be the sum of all fixture units on all *stacks* connected thereto, and the *developed length* shall be the longest vent length from the intersection at the base of the most distant *stack* to the vent terminal in the open air, as a direct extension of one *stack*.

### SECTION 905 VENT CONNECTIONS AND GRADES

**905.1 Connection.** Individual, *branch* and circuit vents shall connect to a vent *stack*, *stack vent*, air admittance valve or extend to the open air.

**905.2 Grade.** Vent and *branch vent* pipes shall be so graded and connected as to drain back to the drainage pipe by gravity.

**905.3 Vent connection to drainage system.** Every dry vent connecting to a horizontal drain shall connect above the centerline of the horizontal drain ~~pipe-pipe and may be connected through the use of a sanitary tee, except when installed under a slab-on-grade.~~

**905.4 Vertical rise of vent.** Every dry vent shall rise vertically to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the highest trap or trapped fixture being vented.

#### Exceptions

1. Vents for interceptors located outdoors.
2. When vents for interceptors and isolated floor drains are not located near an adjacent wall, the vent must rise 6 inches (152 mm) vertically before turning horizontally and continuing to the nearest wall. For cleaning purposes, a cleanout the same size as the vent shall be installed.

**905.5 Height above fixtures.** A connection between a vent pipe and a vent *stack* or *stack vent* shall be made at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the highest fixture served by the vent. Horizontal vent pipes forming *branch vents*, relief vents or loop vents shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the highest fixture served.

**905.6 Vent for future fixtures.** Where the drainage piping has been roughed-in for future fixtures, a rough-in connection for a vent shall be installed. The vent size shall be not less than one-half the diameter of the rough-in drain to be served. The vent rough-in shall connect to the vent system, or shall be vented by other means as provided for in this chapter. The connection shall be identified to indicate that it is a vent.

### SECTION 906 VENT PIPE SIZING

**906.1 Size of stack vents and vent stacks.** The minimum required diameter of *stack vents* and vent *stacks* shall be determined from the *developed length* and the total of *drainage fixture units* connected thereto in accordance with Table 906.1, but in no case shall the diameter be less than one-half the diameter of the drain served or less than 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (32 mm).

TABLE 906.1  
SIZE AND DEVELOPED LENGTH OF STACK VENTS AND VENT STACKS

| DIAMETER OF<br>SOIL OR WASTE STACK<br>(inches) | TOTAL FIXTURE<br>UNITS BEING VENTED<br>(dfu) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPED LENGTH OF VENT (feet) <sup>a</sup> DIAMETER OF VENT (inches) |                               |     |                               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
|--|--|--|-------------------------------|-----|-------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
|  |  | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>  | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 2   | 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 12 |
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>                  | 2  | 30   | —                             |     |                               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>                  | 8  | 50   | 150                           | —   | —                             | — | — | — | — | — | —  | —  |
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>                  | 10   | 30   | 100                           |     |                               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| 2  | 12   | —  | 75                            | 200 | —                             |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |
| 2  | 20   | 30   | 50                            | 150 | —                             | — | — | — | — | — | —  | —  |
| 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>                  | 42   | 26   | 30                            | 100 | 300                           |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |

## VENTS

|    |        |   |    |     |     |       |     |     |       |     |     |     |
|----|--------|---|----|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 3  | 10     |   | 42 | 150 | 360 | 1,040 |     |     |       |     |     |     |
| 3  | 21     | — | 32 | 110 | 270 | 810   | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| 3  | 53     |   | 27 | 94  | 230 | 680   |     |     |       |     |     |     |
| 3  | 102    |   | 25 | 86  | 210 | 620   | —   |     |       |     |     |     |
| 4  | 43     | — | —  | 35  | 85  | 250   | 980 | —   | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| 4  | 140    |   | —  | 27  | 65  | 200   | 750 |     |       |     |     |     |
| 4  | 320    |   |    | 23  | 55  | 170   | 640 | —   |       |     |     |     |
| 4  | 540    | — | —  | 21  | 50  | 150   | 580 | —   | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| 5  | 190    |   |    | —   | 28  | 82    | 320 | 990 |       |     |     |     |
| 5  | 490    |   |    |     | 21  | 63    | 250 | 760 |       |     |     |     |
| 5  | 940    | — | —  | —   | 18  | 53    | 210 | 670 | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| 5  | 1,400  |   |    |     | 16  | 49    | 190 | 590 |       |     |     |     |
| 6  | 500    |   |    |     |     | 33    | 130 | 400 | 1,000 |     |     |     |
| 6  | 1,100  | — | —  | —   | —   | 26    | 100 | 310 | 780   | —   | —   | —   |
| 6  | 2,000  |   |    |     |     | 22    | 84  | 260 | 660   |     |     |     |
| 6  | 2,900  |   |    |     |     | 20    | 77  | 240 | 600   | —   |     |     |
| 8  | 1,800  | — | —  | —   | —   | —     | 31  | 95  | 240   | 940 | —   | —   |
| 8  | 3,400  |   |    |     |     | —     | 24  | 73  | 190   | 729 |     |     |
| 8  | 5,600  |   |    |     |     |       | 20  | 62  | 160   | 610 | —   | —   |
| 8  | 7,600  | — | —  | —   | —   | —     | 18  | 56  | 140   | 560 | —   | —   |
| 10 | 4,000  |   |    |     |     |       | —   | 31  | 78    | 310 | 960 |     |
| 10 | 7,200  |   |    |     |     |       |     | 24  | 60    | 240 | 740 |     |
| 10 | 11,000 | — | —  | —   | —   | —     | —   | 20  | 51    | 200 | 630 | —   |
| 10 | 15,000 |   |    |     |     |       |     | 18  | 46    | 180 | 571 |     |
| 12 | 7,300  |   |    |     |     |       |     |     | 31    | 120 | 380 | 940 |
| 12 | 13,000 | — | —  | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | 24    | 94  | 300 | 720 |
| 12 | 20,000 |   |    |     |     |       |     |     | 20    | 79  | 250 | 610 |
| 12 | 26,000 |   |    |     |     |       |     |     | 18    | 72  | 230 | 500 |
| 15 | 15,000 | — | —  | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | —     | 40  | 130 | 310 |
| 15 | 25,000 |   |    |     |     |       |     |     | —     | 31  | 96  | 240 |
| 15 | 38,000 | — | —  | —   | —   | —     | —   | —   | —     | 26  | 81  | 200 |
| 15 | 50,000 |   |    |     |     |       |     |     | —     | 24  | 74  | 180 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. The developed length shall be measured from the vent connection to the open air.

**906.2 Vents other than stack vents or vent stacks.** The diameter of individual vents, *branch vents*, circuit vents and relief vents shall be not less than one-half the required diameter of the drain served. The required size of the drain shall be determined in accordance with Table 710.1(2). Vent pipes shall ~~not~~ be not less than 1¼ inches (32 mm) in diameter. Vents exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in *developed length* shall be increased by one nominal pipe size for the entire *developed length* of the vent pipe. Relief vents for soil and waste *stacks* in buildings having more than 10 *branch intervals* shall be sized in accordance with Section 908.2.

**906.3 Developed length.** The *developed length* of individual, *branch*, circuit and relief vents shall be measured from the farthest point of vent connection to the drainage system to the point of connection to the vent *stack*, *stack vent* or termination outside of the building.

**906.4 Multiple branch vents.** Where multiple *branch vents* are connected to a common *branch vent*, the common *branch vent* shall be sized in accordance with this section based on the size of the common horizontal drainage *branch* that is or would be required to serve the total *drainage fixture unit* load being vented.

## VENTS

**906.5 Sump vents.** Sump vent sizes shall be determined in accordance with Sections 906.5.1 and 906.5.2.

**906.5.1 Sewage pumps and sewage ejectors other than pneumatic.** Drainage piping below *sewer* level shall be vented in the same manner as that of a gravity system. Building sump vent sizes for sumps with sewage pumps or sewage ejectors, other than pneumatic, shall be determined in accordance with Table 906.5.1. An open vent terminal from a drainage system shall not be located directly beneath any door, openable window, or other air intake opening of the building or of an adjacent building or property line, and any such vent terminal shall not be within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of such an opening unless it is at least 2 feet (610 mm) above the top of such opening.

**TABLE 906.5.1  
SIZE AND LENGTH OF SUMP VENTS**

| DISCHARGE<br>CAPACITY OF PUMP<br>(gpm) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPED LENGTH OF VENT (feet) <sup>a</sup> |               |               |               |          |          |
|--|--|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------|----------|
|  | Diameter of vent (inches)                            |               |               |               |          |          |
|  | 1¼   | 1½            | 2             | 2½            | 3        | 4        |
| 10                                     | No limit <sup>b</sup>                                | No limit      | No limit      | No limit      | No limit | No limit |
| 20                                     | 270  | No limit      | No limit      | No limit      | No limit | No limit |
| 40                                     | 72   | 160           | No limit      | No limit      | No limit | No limit |
| 60                                     | 31   | 75            | 270           | No limit      | No limit | No limit |
| 80                                     | 16   | 41            | 150           | 380           | No limit | No limit |
| 100                                    | 10   | 25            | 97            | 250           | No limit | No limit |
| 150                                    | Not permitted  | 10            | 44            | 110           | 370      | No limit |
| 200                                    | Not permitted  | Not permitted | 20            | 60            | 210      | No limit |
| 250                                    | Not permitted  | Not permitted | 10            | 36            | 132      | No limit |
| 300                                    | Not permitted  | Not permitted | 10            | 22            | 88       | 380      |
| 400                                    | Not permitted  | Not permitted | Not permitted | 10            | 44       | 210      |
| 500                                    | Not permitted  | Not permitted | Not permitted | Not permitted | 24       | 130      |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

a. Developed length plus an appropriate allowance for entrance losses and friction due to fittings, changes in direction and diameter. Suggested allowances shall be obtained from NBS Monograph 31 or other approved sources. An allowance of 50 percent of the developed length shall be assumed if a more precise value is not available.

b. Actual values greater than 500 feet.

**906.5.2 Pneumatic sewage ejectors.** The air pressure relief pipe from a pneumatic sewage ejector shall be connected to an independent vent *stack* terminating as required for vent extensions through the roof. The relief pipe shall be sized to relieve air pressure inside the ejector to atmospheric pressure, but shall be not less than 1¼ inches (32 mm) in size.

## SECTION 907 VENTS FOR STACK OFFSETS

**907.1 Vent for horizontal offset of drainage stack.** Horizontal offsets of drainage *stacks* shall be vented where five or more *branch intervals* are located above the offset. The offset shall be vented by venting the upper section of the drainage *stack* and the lower section of the drainage *stack*.

**907.2 Upper section.** The upper section of the drainage *stack* shall be vented as a separate *stack* with a vent *stack* connection installed in accordance with Section 904.4. The offset shall be considered to be the base of the *stack*.

## VENTS

**907.3 Lower section.** The lower section of the drainage *stack* shall be vented by a yoke vent connecting between the offset and the next lower horizontal *branch*. The yoke vent connection shall be permitted to be a vertical extension of the drainage *stack*. The size of the yoke vent and connection shall be ~~a minimum of not less than~~ the size required for the vent *stack* of the drainage *stack*.

### SECTION 908 RELIEF VENTS—STACKS OF MORE THAN 10 BRANCH INTERVALS

**908.1 Where required.** Soil and waste *stacks* in buildings having more than 10 *branch intervals* shall be provided with a relief vent at each tenth interval installed, beginning with the top floor.

**908.2 Size and connection.** The size of the relief vent shall be equal to the size of the vent *stack* to which it connects. The lower end of each relief vent shall connect to the soil or waste *stack* through a wye below the horizontal *branch* serving the floor, and the upper end shall connect to the vent *stack* through a wye not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor.

### SECTION 909 FIXTURE VENTS

**909.1 Distance of trap from vent.** Each fixture trap shall have a protecting vent located so that the slope and the *developed length* in the *fixture drain* from the trap weir to the vent fitting are within the requirements set forth in Table 909.1.

**Exception:** The *developed length* of the *fixture drain* from the trap weir to the vent fitting for self-siphoning fixtures, such as water closets, shall not be limited.

TABLE 909.1  
MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF FIXTURE TRAP FROM VENT

| SIZE OF TRAP (inches)         | SLOPE (inch per foot)         | DISTANCE FROM TRAP (feet) |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 5                         |
| 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 6                         |
| 2                             | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> | 8                         |
| 3                             | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> | 12                        |
| 4                             | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> | 16                        |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch per foot = 83.3 mm/m.

**909.2 Venting of fixture drains.** The total fall in a *fixture drain* due to pipe slope shall not exceed the diameter of the *fixture drain*, nor shall the vent connection to a *fixture drain*, except for water closets, be below the weir of the trap.

**909.3 Crown vent prohibited.** A vent shall not be installed within two pipe diameters of the trap weir.

### SECTION 910 INDIVIDUAL VENT

**910.1 Individual vent permitted.** Each trap and trapped fixture is permitted to be provided with an individual vent. The individual vent shall connect to the *fixture drain* of the trap or trapped fixture being vented.



## VENTS

### SECTION 911 COMMON VENT

**911.1 Individual vent as common vent.** An individual vent is permitted to vent two traps or trapped fixtures as a common vent. The traps or trapped fixtures being common vented shall be located on the same floor level.

**911.2 Connection at the same level.** Where the *fixture drains* being common vented connect at the same level, the vent connection shall be at the interconnection of the *fixture drains*.

**911.3 Connection at different levels.** Where the *fixture drains* connect at different levels, the vent shall connect as a vertical extension of the vertical drain. The vertical drain pipe connecting the two *fixture drains* shall be considered to be the vent for the lower *fixture drain*, and shall be sized in accordance with Table 911.3. The upper fixture shall not be a water closet or clothes washer.

TABLE 911.3  
COMMON VENT SIZES

| PIPE SIZE<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM DISCHARGE<br>FROM UPPER FIXTURE DRAIN<br>(dfu) |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1½                    | 1  |
| 2                     | 4  |
| 2½ to 3               | 6  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### SECTION 912 WET VENTING

**912.1 Horizontal wet vent permitted.** Any combination of fixtures located on the same floor level is permitted to be vented by a wet vent. The wet vent shall be considered to be the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent along the direction of the flow in the drain pipe to the most downstream *fixture drain* connection to the *horizontal branch drain*. Each wet-vented *fixture drain* shall connect independently to the horizontal wet vent. A residential clothes washer drain line shall not be used as a wet vent.

**912.1.1 Vertical wet vent permitted.** Any combination of fixtures located on the same floor level is permitted to be vented by a vertical wet vent. The vertical wet vent shall be considered to be the vent for the fixtures and shall extend from the connection of the dry vent down to the lowest *fixture drain* connection. Each wet-vented fixture shall connect independently to the vertical wet vent. Water closet drains shall connect at the same elevation. Other *fixture drains* shall connect above or at the same elevation as the water closet *fixture drains*. The dry-vent connection to the vertical wet vent shall be an individual or common vent serving one or two fixtures. A residential clothes washer drain line shall not be used as a wet vent.

**912.2 Dry vent connection.** The required dry-vent connection for wet-vented systems shall comply with Sections 912.2.1 and 912.2.2.

**912.2.1 Horizontal wet vent.** The dry-vent connection for a horizontal wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or a common vent for any fixture, except an *emergency floor drain*. Where the dry-vent connects to a water closet *fixture drain*, the drain shall connect horizontally to the horizontal wet-vent system.

**912.2.2 Vertical wet vent.** The dry-vent connection for a vertical wet-vent system shall be an individual vent or common vent for the most upstream *fixture drain*.

**912.3 Size.** The dry vent serving the wet vent shall be sized based on the largest required diameter of pipe within the wet-vent system served by the dry vent. The wet vent shall be of a size not less than that specified in Table 912.3, based on the fixture unit discharge to the wet vent.

TABLE 912.3  
WET VENT SIZE

## VENTS

| WET VENT PIPE SIZE<br>(inches) | DRAINAGE FIXTURE<br>UNIT LOAD (dfu) |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1-1/2                          | 1                                   |
| 2                              | 4                                   |
| 2-1/2                          | 6                                   |
| 3                              | 12                                  |
| 4                              | 32                                  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

### SECTION 913 WASTE STACK VENT

**913.1 Waste stack vent permitted.** A waste *stack* shall be considered to be a vent for all of the fixtures discharging to the *stack* where installed in accordance with the requirements of this section.

**913.2 Stack installation.** The waste *stack* shall be vertical, and both horizontal and vertical offsets shall be prohibited between the lowest *fixture drain* connection and the highest *fixture drain* connection. *Fixture drains* shall connect separately to the waste *stack*. The *stack* shall not receive the discharge of water closets or urinals.

**913.3 Stack vent.** A *stack vent* shall be provided for the waste *stack*. The size of the *stack vent* shall be not less than the size of the waste *stack*. Offsets shall be permitted in the *stack vent*, shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood level of the highest fixture and shall be in accordance with Section 905.2. The *stack vent* shall be permitted to connect with other *stack vents* and vent *stacks* in accordance with Section 904.5.

**913.4 Waste stack size.** The waste *stack* shall be sized based on the total discharge to the *stack* and the discharge within a *branch interval* in accordance with Table 913.4. The waste *stack* shall be the same size throughout its length.

TABLE 913.4  
WASTE STACK VENT SIZE

| STACK SIZE<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF<br>DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS (dfu) |                              |
|------------------------|---|------------------------------|
|                        | Total discharge into<br>one branch interval       | Total discharge<br>for stack |
| 1½                     | 1   | 2                            |
| 2                      | 2   | 4                            |
| 2½                     | No limit  | 8                            |
| 3                      | No limit  | 24                           |
| 4                      | No limit  | 50                           |
| 5                      | No limit  | 75                           |
| 6                      | No limit  | 100                          |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## SECTION 914 CIRCUIT VENTING

**914.1 Circuit vent permitted.** ~~A maximum of~~ Not more than eight fixtures connected to a *horizontal branch drain* shall be permitted to be circuit vented. Each *fixture drain* shall connect horizontally to the horizontal *branch* being circuit vented. The *horizontal branch drain* shall be classified as a vent from the most downstream *fixture drain* connection to the most upstream *fixture drain* connection to the horizontal *branch*.

**914.1.1 Multiple circuit-vented branches.** Circuit-vented *horizontal branch drains* are permitted to be connected together. Each group of ~~a maximum of~~ not more than eight fixtures shall be considered to be a separate circuit vent and shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**914.2 Vent connection.** The circuit vent connection shall be located between the two most upstream *fixture drains*. The vent shall connect to the horizontal *branch* and shall be installed in accordance with Section 905. The circuit vent pipe shall not receive the discharge of any soil or waste.

**914.3 Slope and size of horizontal branch.** The slope of the vent section of the *horizontal branch drain* shall be not greater than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3-percent slope). The entire length of the vent section of the *horizontal branch drain* shall be sized for the total drainage discharge to the *branch*. Drainage discharge dfu values for horizontal fixture branches shall be reduced 50% in Table 710.1(2) for circuit vented fixture branches.

**914.3.1 Size of multiple circuit vent.** Each separate circuit-vented horizontal *branch* that is interconnected shall be sized independently in accordance with Section 914.3. The downstream circuit-vented horizontal *branch* shall be sized for the total discharge into the *branch*, including the upstream *branches* and the fixtures within the *branch*.

**914.4 Relief vent.** A relief vent shall be provided for circuit-vented horizontal *branches* receiving the discharge of four or more water closets and connecting to a drainage *stack* that receives the discharge of soil or waste from upper horizontal *branches*.

**914.4.1 Connection and installation.** The relief vent shall connect to the *horizontal branch drain* between the *stack* and the most downstream *fixture drain* of the circuit vent. The relief vent shall be installed in accordance with Section 905.

**914.4.2 Fixture drain or branch.** The relief vent is permitted to be a *fixture drain* or fixture *branch* for fixtures located within the same *branch interval* as the circuit-vented horizontal *branch*. The maximum discharge to a relief vent shall be four fixture units.

**914.5 Additional fixtures.** Fixtures, other than the circuit-vented fixtures, are permitted to discharge to the *horizontal branch drain*. Such fixtures shall be located on the same floor as the circuit-vented fixtures and shall be either individually or common vented.

## SECTION 915 COMBINATION WASTE AND VENT SYSTEM

**915.1 Approval.** Plans and specifications for each combination waste and vent system shall be submitted to the plumbing official, and approval shall be obtained before any installation is started.

### 915.2 Limits.

**915.2.1** A combination waste and vent system is limited to sinks, dishwashers, floor sinks, indirect waste receptors, floor drains or similar applications where the fixtures are not adjacent to walls or partitions. It consists of the installation of waste piping in which the trap of the fixture is not individually vented.

**915.2.2** Appurtenances delivering large quantities of water or sewage (such as pumps) shall be excluded in a combination waste and vent system in order that adequate venting will be maintained.

**915.2.3 Connection.** Deleted.

**915.2.4** ~~915.2.3~~ **Vent size.** The vent shall be sized for the total *drainage fixture unit* load in accordance with Section ~~906.2~~ 906.1.

## VENTS

**915.2.5915.2.4 Fixture branch or drain.** The *fixture branch* or *fixture drain* shall connect to the combination waste and vent within a distance specified in Table 909.1. The combination waste and vent pipe shall be considered the vent for the fixture.

**915.3 Dishwashers.** Dishwashers and scullery sinks in commercial buildings shall drain through a grease interceptor sized in accordance with this code, and the dishwasher shall discharge into a floor sink through a minimum air gap.

### 915.4 General design.

**915.4.1** Every waste pipe and trap in this system shall be at least two pipe sizes larger than the size required in Chapter 7, and at least two pipe sizes larger than any fixture tailpiece or connection, except that when P“P” traps are installed above the floor, the P“P” trap and horizontal fixture drain need not meet this requirement. The vertical waste pipe two sizes larger than the fixture outlet connection shall be extended above the floor to normal roughing height, and a cleanout shall be installed in top of the connecting waste tee. The fixture drain length shall be limited by Table 909.1. Floor sinks shall be connected through a running trap two pipe sizes larger than the sink outlet. Floor sink and waste piping from the floor sink to the trap shall be sized for the total fixture units draining thereto, based on Table 709.1, but in no case shall the line be less than 2-inch (51 mm) soil pipe when piping is underground.

**915.4.2** A vent shall be provided at the upstream end of each branch, washed over or under by the last fixture on the branch. No vent shall take off from the horizontal waste branch at an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.785 rad) from the horizontal unless washed by a fixture. A minimum size vent shall be located at all points where branches intersect. A vent shall be located downstream from all fixtures in the system, in addition to the upstream vent, separating this system from all other systems in the building. No fixtures other than those permitted in Section 915.2 shall discharge into any branch or portion of this system.

**915.4.3** The design of the system shall ensure that the vertical distance from fixture or drain outlet to trap weir does not exceed 24 inches (610 mm). Long runs shall be provided with additional relief vents located at intervals of not more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) to equalize pressure in the system.

**915.5 Size of vents.** The size of vents shall be in accordance with requirements of Section 906.1 and Table 906.1, but the diameter shall be not less than one-half of the diameter of the waste pipe served.

**915.6 Receptor drain size.** Indirect waste receptors shall be sized for the fixture units draining thereto, regardless of other requirements of this code.

## SECTION 916 ISLAND FIXTURE VENTING

**916.1 Limitation.** Island fixture venting shall not be permitted for fixtures other than sinks and lavatories. Residential kitchen sinks with a dishwasher waste connection, a food waste disposer, or both, in combination with the kitchen sink waste, shall be permitted to be vented in accordance with this section.

**916.2 Vent connection.** The island fixture vent shall connect to the *fixture drain* as required for an individual or common vent. The vent shall rise vertically to above the drainage outlet of the fixture being vented before offsetting horizontally or vertically downward. The vent or *branch vent* for multiple island fixture vents shall extend to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest island fixture being vented before connecting to the outside vent terminal.

**916.3 Vent installation below the fixture flood level rim.** The vent located below the *flood level rim* of the fixture being vented shall be installed as required for drainage piping in accordance with Chapter 7, except for sizing. The vent shall be sized in accordance with Section 906.2. The lowest point of the island fixture vent shall connect full size to the drainage system. The connection shall be to a vertical drain pipe or to the top half of a horizontal drain pipe. Clean-outs shall be provided in the island fixture vent to permit rodding of all vent piping located below the *flood level rim* of the fixtures. Rodding in both directions shall be permitted through a cleanout.

## VENTS

### SECTION 917 SINGLE-STACK VENT SYSTEM

**917.1 Single-stack vent system permitted.** A drainage *stack* shall serve as a single-stack vent system where sized and installed in accordance with Sections 917.2 through 917.9. The drainage *stack* and *branch* piping shall be the vents for the drainage system. The drainage *stack* shall have a *stack vent*.

**917.1.1 Engineered Single Stack Systems.** Engineered single stack systems shall be listed in accordance to the standards of the specific material utilized in the system, designed by a design professional and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**917.2 Stack size.** Drainage *stacks* shall be sized in accordance with Table 917.2. *Stacks* shall be uniformly sized based on the total connected *drainage fixture unit* load. The *stack vent* shall be the same size as the drainage *stack*. A 3-inch (76 mm) *stack* shall serve not more than two water closets.

**TABLE 917.2  
SINGLE STACK SIZE**

| STACK SIZE (inches) | MAXIMUM CONNECTED DRAINAGE FIXTURE UNITS |  |                                       |
|---------------------|--|--|---------------------------------------|
|                     | Stacks less than 75 feet in height       | Stacks 75 feet to less than 160 feet in height | Stacks 160 feet and greater in height |
| 3                   | 24                                       | NP   | NP                                    |
| 4                   | 225                                      | 24   | NP                                    |
| 5                   | 480                                      | 225  | 24                                    |
| 6                   | 1,015                                    | 480  | 225                                   |
| 8                   | 2,320                                    | 1,015  | 480                                   |
| 10                  | 4,500                                    | 2,320  | 1,015                                 |
| 12                  | 8,100                                    | 4,500  | 2,320                                 |
| 15                  | 13,600                                   | 8,100  | 4,500                                 |

NP = Not permitted.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**917.3 Branch size.** Horizontal *branches* connecting to a single-stack vent system shall be sized in accordance with Table 710.1(2). Not more than one water closet shall discharge into a 3-inch (76 mm) horizontal *branch* at a point within a *developed length* of 18 inches (457 mm) measured horizontally from the *stack*.

Where a water closet is within 18 inches (457 mm) measured horizontally from the *stack* and not more than one fixture with a drain size of not more than 1½ inches (38 mm) connects to a 3-inch (76 mm) horizontal *branch*, the *branch* drain connection to the *stack* shall be made with a sanitary tee.

**917.4 Length of horizontal branches.** The length of horizontal *branches* shall conform to the requirements of Sections 917.4.1 through 917.4.3.

**917.4.1 Water closet connection.** Water closet connections shall be not greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) in *developed length* measured horizontally from the *stack*.

**Exception:** Where the connection is made with a sanitary tee, the maximum *developed length* shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**917.4.2 Fixture connections.** Fixtures other than water closets shall be located not greater than 12 feet (3657 mm) in *developed length*, measured horizontally from the *stack*.

**917.4.3 Vertical piping in branch.** The length of vertical piping in a *fixture drain* connecting to a horizontal *branch* shall not be considered in computing the fixture's distance in *developed length* measured horizontally from the *stack*.

## VENTS

**917.5 Minimum vertical piping size from fixture.** The vertical portion of piping in a *fixture drain* to a horizontal *branch* shall be 2 inches (51 mm). The minimum size of the vertical portion of piping for a water-supplied urinal or standpipe shall be 3 inches (76 mm). The maximum vertical drop shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). *Fixture drains* that are not increased in size, or have a vertical drop in excess of 4 feet (1219 mm), shall be individually vented.

**917.6 Additional venting required.** Additional venting shall be provided where more than one water closet discharges to a horizontal *branch* and where the distance from a fixture trap to the *stack* exceeds the limits in Section 917.4. Where additional venting is required, the fixture(s) shall be vented by individual vents, common vents, wet vents, circuit vents, or a combination waste and vent pipe. The dry vent extensions for the additional venting shall connect to a *branch vent*, vent *stack*, *stack vent*, air admittance valve, or shall terminate outdoors.

**917.7 Stack offsets.** Where *fixture drains* are not connected below a horizontal offset in a *stack*, a horizontal offset shall not be required to be vented. Where horizontal *branches* or *fixture drains* are connected below a horizontal offset in a *stack*, the offset shall be vented in accordance with Section 907. Fixture connections shall not be made to a *stack* within 2 feet (610 mm) above or below a horizontal offset.

**917.8 Prohibited lower connections.** *Stacks* greater than 2 *branch intervals* in height shall not receive the discharge of horizontal *branches* on the lower two floors. There shall not be connections to the *stack* between the lower two floors and a distance of not less than 10 pipe diameters downstream from the base of the single stack vented system.

**917.9 Sizing building drains and sewers.** The *building drain* and *building sewer* receiving the discharge of a single stack vent system shall be sized in accordance with Table 710.1(1).

## SECTION 918 AIR ADMITTANCE VALVES

**918.1 General.** Vent systems utilizing air admittance valves shall comply with this section. Stack-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1050. Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall conform to ASSE 1051.

**918.2 Installation.** The valves shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the manufacturer's instructions. Air admittance valves shall be installed after the DWV testing required by Section 312.2 or 312.3 has been performed.

**918.3 Where permitted.** Individual, *branch* and circuit vents shall be permitted to terminate with a connection to an individual or branch-type air admittance valve in accordance with Section 918.3.1. *Stack vents* and vent *stacks* shall be permitted to terminate to stack-type air admittance valves in accordance with Section 918.3.2.

**918.3.1 Horizontal branches.** Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall vent only fixtures that are on the same floor level and connect to a *horizontal branch drain*. Where the horizontal *branch* is located more than four *branch intervals* from the top of the *stack*, the horizontal *branch* shall be provided with a relief vent that shall connect to a vent *stack* or *stack vent*, or extend outdoors to the open air. The relief vent shall connect to the *horizontal branch drain* between the *stack* and the most downstream *fixture drain* connected to the *horizontal branch drain*. The relief vent shall be sized in accordance with Section 906.2 and installed in accordance with Section 905. The relief vent shall be permitted to serve as the vent for other fixtures.

**918.3.2 Stack.** Stack-type air admittance valves shall be prohibited from serving as the vent terminal for vent *stacks* or *stack vents* that serve drainage *stacks* having more than six *branch intervals*.

**918.4 Location.** Individual and branch-type air admittance valves shall be located ~~a minimum of~~ not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the *horizontal branch drain* or *fixture drain* being vented. Stack-type air admittance valves shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the *flood level rim* of the highest fixture being vented. The air admittance valve shall be located within the maximum *developed length* permitted for the vent. The air admittance valve shall be installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above insulation materials.

**918.5 Access and ventilation.** *Access* shall be provided to all air admittance valves. Such valves shall be installed in a location that allows air to enter the valve.

**918.6 Size.** The air admittance valve shall be rated in accordance with the standard for the size of the vent to which the valve is connected.

## VENTS

**918.7 Vent required.** Within each plumbing system, not less than one *stack vent* or vent *stack* shall extend outdoors to the open air.

**918.8 Prohibited installations.** Air admittance valves shall not be installed in nonneutralized special waste systems as described in Chapter 8 except where such valves are in compliance with ASSE 1049, are constructed of materials *approved* in accordance with Section 702.5, and are tested for chemical resistance in accordance with ASTM F1412. Air admittance valves shall not be located in spaces utilized as supply or return air plenums. Air admittance valves ~~without an engineered design~~ shall not be ~~utilized~~ used to vent sumps or tanks ~~of any type except where the vent system for the sump or tank has been designed by an engineer.~~ Air admittance valves shall not be installed on outdoor vent terminals for the sole purpose of reducing clearances to gravity air intakes or mechanical air intakes.

## SECTION 919 ENGINEERED VENT SYSTEMS

~~Deleted.~~

**919.1 General.** Engineered vent systems shall comply with this section and the design, submittal, approval, inspection and testing requirements of Section 316.

**919.2 Individual branch fixture and individual fixture header vents.** The maximum developed length of individual fixture vents to vent branches and vent headers shall be determined in accordance with Table 919.2 for the minimum pipe diameters at the indicated vent airflow rates.

The individual vent airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with the following:

$$Q_{h,b} = N_{n,b} Q_v \quad \text{(Equation 9-1)}$$

For SI:  $Q_{h,b} = N_{n,b} Q_v$  (0.4719 L/s)

where:

$N_{n,b}$  = Number of fixtures per header (or vent *branch*) ÷ total number of fixtures connected to vent *stack*.

$Q_{h,b}$  = Vent *branch* or vent header airflow rate (cfm).

$Q_v$  = Total vent *stack* airflow rate (cfm).

$$Q_v(\text{gpm}) = \frac{27.8 r_s^{2/3} (1 - r_s) D^{8/3}}{1}$$

$$Q_v(\text{cfm}) = 0.134 Q_v(\text{gpm})$$

where:

$D$  = Drainage *stack* diameter (inches).

$Q_w$  = Design discharge load (gpm).

$r_s$  = Wastewater flow area to total area.

$$r_s = \frac{Q_w}{27.8 D^{8/3}}$$

Individual vent airflow rates are obtained by equally distributing  $Q_{h,b}$  into one-half the total number of fixtures on the *branch* or header for more than two fixtures; for an odd number of total fixtures, decrease by one; for one fixture, apply the full value of  $Q_{h,b}$ .

Individual vent *developed length* shall be increased by 20 percent of the distance from the vent *stack* to the fixture vent connection on the vent *branch* or header.

## VENTS

**TABLE 919.2  
MINIMUM DIAMETER AND MAXIMUM LENGTH OF INDIVIDUAL  
BRANCH FIXTURE VENTS AND INDIVIDUAL FIXTURE HEADER VENTS FOR SMOOTH PIPES**

| DIAMETER<br>OF VENT PIPE<br>(inches) | INDIVIDUAL VENT AIRFLOW RATE (cubic feet per minute) |    |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|--------------------------------------|--|----|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|----|----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|                                      | Maximum developed length of vent (feet)              |    |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|                                      | 1  | 2  | 3   | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8   | 9  | 10 | 11  | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20  |
| $\frac{1}{2}$                        | 95   | 25 | 13  | 8  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2   | 1  | 1  | 1   | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1   |
| $\frac{3}{4}$                        | 100  | 88 | 47  | 30 | 20 | 15 | 10 | 9   | 7  | 6  | 5   | 4  | 3  | 3  | 3  | 2  | 2  | 2  | 2  | 1   |
| 1                                    | =  | =  | 100 | 94 | 65 | 48 | 37 | 29  | 24 | 20 | 17  | 14 | 12 | 11 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 7  | 6  | 6   |
| $1\frac{1}{4}$                       | =  | =  | =   | =  | =  | =  | =  | 100 | 87 | 73 | 62  | 53 | 46 | 40 | 36 | 32 | 29 | 26 | 23 | 21  |
| $1\frac{1}{2}$                       | =  | =  | =   | =  | =  | =  | =  | =   | =  | =  | 100 | 96 | 84 | 75 | 65 | 60 | 54 | 49 | 45 |     |
| 2                                    | =  | =  | =   | =  | =  | =  | =  | =   | =  | =  | =   | =  | =  | =  | =  | =  | =  | =  | =  | 100 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

## SECTION 920 COMPUTERIZED VENT DESIGN

### Deleted

**920.1 Design of vent system.** The sizing, design and layout of the vent system shall be permitted to be determined by *approved* computer program design methods.

**920.2 System capacity.** The vent system shall be based on the air capacity requirements of the drainage system under a peak load condition.



## CHAPTER 10

# TRAPS, INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS

### SECTION 1001 GENERAL

**1001.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern the material and installation of traps, interceptors and separators.

### SECTION 1002 TRAP REQUIREMENTS

**1002.1 Fixture traps.** Each plumbing fixture shall be separately trapped by a liquid-seal trap, except as otherwise permitted by this code. The vertical distance from the fixture outlet to the trap weir shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm), and the horizontal distance shall not exceed 30 inches (610 mm) measured from the centerline of the fixture outlet to the centerline of the inlet of the trap. The height of a clothes washer standpipe above a trap shall conform to Section ~~802.3.3~~ 802.4.3. A fixture shall not be double trapped.

#### Exceptions:.

1. This section shall not apply to fixtures with integral traps.
2. A combination plumbing fixture or up to three similar fixtures is permitted to be installed on one trap, provided that one compartment is not more than 6 inches (152 mm) deeper than the other compartment and the waste outlets are not more than 30 inches (762 mm) apart. □
3. ~~A grease interceptor intended to serve as a fixture trap in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions shall be permitted to serve as the trap for a single fixture or a combination sink of not more than three compartments where the vertical distance from the fixture outlet to the inlet of the interceptor does not exceed 30 inches (762 mm) and the developed length of the waste pipe from the most upstream fixture outlet to the inlet of the interceptor does not exceed 60 inches (1524 mm).~~ Floor drains in multilevel parking structures that discharge to a building storm sewer shall not be required to be individually trapped. Where floor drains in multilevel parking structures are required to discharge to a combined building sewer system, the floor drains shall not be required to be individually trapped provided that they are connected to a main trap in accordance with Section 1103.1.
4. The connection of a laundry tray complying with section 802.3.3.

**1002.2 Design of traps.** Fixture traps shall be self-scouring. Fixture traps shall not have interior partitions, except where such traps are integral with the fixture or where such traps are constructed of an *approved* material that is resistant to corrosion and degradation. Slip joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric gasket and shall be installed only on the trap inlet, trap outlet and within the trap seal.

**1002.3 Prohibited traps.** The following types of traps are prohibited:

1. Traps that depend on moving parts to maintain the seal.
2. Bell traps.
3. Crown-vented traps.
4. Traps not integral with a fixture and that depend on interior partitions for the seal, except those traps constructed of an *approved* material that is resistant to corrosion and degradation.
5. "S" traps.
6. Drum traps.

**Exception:** Drum traps used as solids interceptors and drum traps serving chemical waste systems shall not be prohibited.

## TRAPS, INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS

**1002.4 Trap seals.** Each fixture trap shall have a liquid seal of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and not more than 4 inches (102 mm), or deeper for special designs relating to accessible fixtures.

**1002.4.1 Trap seal protection.** Trap seals of *emergency floor drain* traps and trap seals subject to evaporation shall be protected by one of the methods in Sections 1002.4.1.1 through ~~1002.4.1.4~~ 1002.4.1.5.

**1002.4.1.1 Potable water-supplied trap seal primer valve.** A potable water-supplied trap seal primer valve shall supply water to the trap. Water-supplied trap seal primer valves shall conform to ASSE 1018. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer valve shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

**1002.4.1.2 Reclaimed or graywater-supplied trap seal primer valve.** A reclaimed or graywater-supplied trap seal primer valve shall supply water to the trap. Water-supplied trap seal primer valves shall conform to ASSE 1018. The quality of reclaimed or graywater supplied to trap seal primer valves shall be in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer of the trap seal primer valve. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer valve shall connect to the trap above the trap seal, on the inlet side of the trap.

**1002.4.1.3 Wastewater-supplied trap primer device.** A wastewater-supplied trap primer device shall supply water to the trap. Wastewater-supplied trap primer devices shall conform to ASSE 1044. The discharge pipe from the trap seal primer device shall connect to the trap above the trap seal on the inlet side of the trap.

**1002.4.1.4 Barrier-type trap seal protection device.** A barrier-type trap seal protection device shall protect the floor drain trap seal from evaporation. Barrier-type floor drain trap seal protection devices shall conform to ASSE 1072. The devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**1002.4.1.5 Fixture drain connection for trap priming.** A fixture drain from a lavatory or hand sink shall serve as a method of providing trap seal protection for an emergency floor drain, a trench drain, or a floor sink where such fixtures are located in the same room. A fixture drain from a drinking fountain shall serve as a method of providing trap seal protection for an emergency floor drain, a trench drain, or a floor sink where such fixtures are in the same room or in a room adjacent to the room having the drinking fountain. The fixture drain shall not be routed on or above the surface of the floor and shall connect to the floor drain, trench drain, or floor sink at a point that is below the flood level rim and above the inlet to the trap of the receiving fixture. This is not considered double trapping the sink.

**1002.5 Size of fixture traps.** Fixture trap size shall be sufficient to drain the fixture rapidly and not less than the size indicated in Table 709.1. A trap shall not be larger than the drainage pipe into which the trap discharges.

**1002.6 Building traps.** Building (house) traps shall be prohibited.

**1002.7 Trap setting and protection.** Traps shall be set level with respect to the trap seal and, where necessary, shall be protected from freezing.

**1002.8 Recess for trap connection.** A recess provided for connection of the underground trap, such as one serving a bathtub in slab-type construction, shall have sides and a bottom of corrosion-resistant, insect- and verminproof construction.

**1002.9 Acid-resisting traps.** Where a vitrified clay or other brittleware, acid-resisting trap is installed underground, such trap shall be embedded in concrete extending 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bottom and sides of the trap.

**1002.10 Plumbing in mental health centers.** ~~DELETED~~

## SECTION 1003 INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS

**1003.1 Where required.** Interceptors and separators shall be provided to prevent the discharge of oil, grease, sand and other substances harmful or hazardous to the *public sewer*, the private sewage system or the sewage treatment plant or processes.

**1003.2 Approval.** The size, type and location of each interceptor and of each separator shall be designed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the local utility or health department requirements and the requirements of this section based on the anticipated conditions of use. Wastes that do not require treatment or separation shall not be discharged into any interceptor or separator.

**1003.3 Grease interceptors.** Grease interceptors shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through ~~1003.3.5~~1003.3.8 and the local utility or health department requirements.

**1003.3.1 Grease interceptors and automatic grease removal devices required.** A grease interceptor or automatic grease removal device shall be required to receive the drainage from fixtures and equipment with grease-laden waste located in food preparation areas, such as in restaurants, hotel kitchens, hospitals, school kitchens, bars, factory cafeterias and clubs. Fixtures and equipment shall include pot sinks, prerinse sinks; soup kettles or similar devices; wok stations; floor drains or sinks into which kettles are drained; automatic hood wash units and dishwashers without prerinse sinks. Grease interceptors and automatic grease removal devices shall receive waste only from fixtures and equipment that allow fats, oils or grease to be discharged. Where lack of space or other constraints prevent the installation or replacement of a grease interceptor, one or more grease interceptors may be permitted to be installed on or above the floor and upstream of an existing grease interceptor.

**1003.3.2 Food waste disposers.** Where food waste disposers connect to grease interceptors, a solids interceptor shall separate the discharge before connecting to the grease interceptor. Solids interceptors and grease interceptors shall be sized and rated for the discharge of the food waste disposers. Emulsifiers, chemicals, enzymes and bacteria shall not discharge into the food waste disposer.

**1003.3.3 Additives to grease interceptors.** Dispensing systems that dispense interceptor performance additives to grease interceptors shall not be installed except where such systems dispense microbes for the enhancement of aerobic bioremediation of grease and other organic material, or for inhibiting growth of pathogenic organisms by anaerobic methods. Such microbial dispensing systems shall be installed only where the grease interceptor manufacturer's instructions allow such systems and the systems conform to ASME A112.14.6. Systems that discharge emulsifiers, chemicals or enzymes to grease interceptors shall be prohibited.

~~1003.3.3~~**1003.3.4 Grease interceptors and automatic grease removal devices not required.** A grease interceptor or an automatic grease removal device shall not be required for individual dwelling units or any *private* living quarters.

~~1003.3.4~~**1003.3.5 Hydromechanical grease interceptors, fats, oils and greases disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices.** Hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and greases disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be sized in accordance with ASME A112.14.3, ASME A112.14.4, ASME A112.14.6, CSA B481.3 or PDI G101. Hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and greases disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be designed and tested in accordance with ASME A112.14.3, ASME A112.14.4, CSA B481.1, PDI G101 or PDI G102. Hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and greases disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Where manufacturer's instructions are not provided, hydromechanical grease interceptors; fats, oils, and greases disposal systems and automatic grease removal devices shall be installed in compliance with ASME A112.14.3, ASME A112.14.4, ASME A112.14.6, CSA B481.3 or PDI G101.

~~1003.3.4~~**1003.3.5.1 Grease interceptor capacity.** Grease interceptors shall have the grease retention capacity indicated in Table 1003.3.5.1 for the flow-through rates indicated.

**TABLE ~~1003.3.4~~1003.3.5.1**  
**CAPACITY OF GREASE INTERCEPTORS<sup>a</sup>**

| TOTAL FLOW-THROUGH RATING (gpm) | GREASE RETENTION CAPACITY (pounds) |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 4                               | 8                                  |
| 6                               | 12                                 |
| 7                               | 14                                 |
| 9                               | 18                                 |
| 10                              | 20                                 |
| 12                              | 24                                 |
| 14                              | 28                                 |
| 15                              | 30                                 |

## TRAPS, INTERCEPTORS AND SEPARATORS

|     |     |
|-----|-----|
| 18  | 36  |
| 20  | 40  |
| 25  | 50  |
| 35  | 70  |
| 50  | 100 |
| 75  | 150 |
| 100 | 200 |

For SI: 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For total flow-through ratings greater than 100 (gpm), double the flow-through rating to determine the grease retention capacity (pounds).

**1003.3.4.21003.3.5.2 Rate of flow controls.** Grease interceptors shall be equipped with devices to control the rate of water flow so that the water flow does not exceed the rated flow. The flow-control device shall be vented and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the flood rim level or be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**1003.3.3.51003.3.6 Automatic grease removal devices.** Where automatic grease removal devices are installed, such devices shall be located downstream of each fixture or multiple fixtures in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The automatic grease removal device shall be sized to pretreat the measured or calculated flows for all connected fixtures or equipment. *Ready access* shall be provided for inspection and maintenance.

**1003.3.61003.3.7 Gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems.** The required capacity of gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be determined by multiplying the peak drain flow into the interceptor in gallons per minute by a retention time of 30 minutes. Gravity grease interceptors shall be designed and tested in accordance with IAPMO/ANSI Z1001. Gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be designed and tested in accordance with ASME A112.14.6 and IAPMO/ANSI Z1001. Gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Where manufacturer's instructions are not provided, gravity grease interceptors and gravity grease interceptors with fats, oils, and greases disposal systems shall be installed in compliance with ASME A112.14.6 and IAPMO/ANSI Z1001.

**1003.3.7 1003.3.8 Direct connection.** The discharge piping from a grease interceptor shall be directly connected to the sanitary drainage system.

**1003.4 Oil separators required.** At repair garages where floor or trench drains are provided, car washing facilities, factories where oily and flammable liquid wastes are produced, and hydraulic elevator pits, oil separators shall be installed into which oil-bearing, grease-bearing or flammable wastes shall be discharged before emptying into the building drainage system or other point of disposal.

**Exception:** An oil separator is not required in hydraulic elevator pits where an *approved* alarm system is installed. ~~Elevator sump pits with oil minder pumps shall discharge the oil into a temporary storage tank.~~ Such alarm systems shall not terminate the operation of pumps utilized to maintain emergency operation of the elevator by fire fighters.

**1003.4.1 Separation of liquids.** A mixture of treated or untreated light and heavy liquids with various specific gravities shall be separated in an *approved* receptacle.

**1003.4.2 Oil separator design.** Oil separators shall be listed and labeled, or designed in accordance with Sections 1003.4.2.1 and 1003.4.2.2.

**1003.4.2.1 General design requirements.** Oil separators shall have a depth of not less than 2 feet (610 mm) below the invert of the discharge drain. The outlet opening of the separator shall have not less than an 18-inch (457 mm) water seal.

**1003.4.2.2 Garages and service stations.** Where automobiles are serviced, greased, repaired or washed or where gasoline is dispensed, oil separators shall have a capacity of not less than 6 cubic feet (0.168 m<sup>3</sup>) for the first 100 square feet (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of area to be drained, plus 1 cubic foot (0.028 m<sup>3</sup>) for each additional 100 square feet (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of area to be drained into the separator. Parking garages in which servicing, repairing or washing is not conducted, and in which gaso-

line is not dispensed, shall not require a separator. Areas of commercial garages utilized only for storage of automobiles are not required to be drained through a separator.

**1003.5 Sand interceptors in commercial establishments.** Sand and similar interceptors for heavy solids shall be designed and located so as to be provided with *ready access* for cleaning, and shall have a water seal of not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

**1003.6 Clothes washer discharge interceptor.** Clothes washers shall discharge through an interceptor that is provided with a wire basket or similar device, removable for cleaning, that prevents passage into the drainage system of solids  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) or larger in size, string, rags, buttons or other materials detrimental to the public sewage system.

**Exceptions:**

1. Clothes washers in individual dwelling units shall not be required to discharge through an interceptor.
2. A single clothes washer designed for use in individual dwelling units and installed in a location other than an individual dwelling unit shall not be required to discharge through an interceptor.

**1003.7 Bottling establishments.** Bottling plants shall discharge process wastes into an interceptor that will provide for the separation of broken glass or other solids before discharging waste into the drainage system.

**1003.8 Slaughterhouses.** Slaughtering room and dressing room drains shall be equipped with *approved* separators. The separator shall prevent the discharge into the drainage system of feathers, entrails and other materials that cause clogging.

**1003.9 Venting of interceptors and separators.** Interceptors and separators shall be designed so as not to become air bound. Interceptors and separators shall be vented in accordance with one of the methods in Chapter 9.

**1003.10 Access and maintenance of interceptors and separators.** *Access* shall be provided to each interceptor and separator for service and maintenance. Interceptors and separators shall be maintained by periodic removal of accumulated grease, scum, oil, or other floating substances and solids deposited in the interceptor or separator.

## **SECTION 1004 MATERIALS, JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS**

**1004.1 General.** The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of traps, interceptors and separators shall comply with this chapter and the applicable provisions of Chapters 4 and 7. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow of the piping.

# CHAPTER 11

## STORM DRAINAGE

### SECTION 1101 GENERAL

**1101.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of storm ~~drainage except one and two family dwellings drainage.~~

**1101.2 Disposal.** Rainwater from roofs and storm water from paved areas, yards, courts and courtyards shall drain to an *ap-proved* place of disposal.

**1101.3 Prohibited drainage.** Storm water shall not be drained into *sewers* intended for sewage only.

**1101.4 Tests.** The conductors and the building *storm drain* shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**1101.5 Change in size.** The size of a drainage pipe shall not be reduced in the direction of flow.

**1101.6 Fittings and connections.** ~~All connections~~ Connections and changes in direction of the storm drainage system shall be made with *approved* drainage-type fittings in accordance with Table 706.3. The fittings shall not obstruct or retard flow in the system.

**[BS] 1101.7 Roof design.** Roofs shall be designed for the maximum possible depth of water that will pond thereon as deter-mined by the relative levels of roof deck and overflow weirs, scuppers, edges or serviceable drains in combination with the deflected structural elements. In determining the maximum possible depth of water, all primary roof drainage means shall be assumed to be blocked. The maximum possible depth of water on the roof shall include the height of the water required above the inlet of the secondary roof drainage means to achieve the required flow rate of the secondary drainage means to accommo-date the design rainfall rate as required by Section 1106.

**1101.8 Cleanouts required.** Cleanouts shall be installed in the storm drainage system and shall comply with the provisions of this code for sanitary drainage pipe cleanouts.

**Exception:** Subsurface drainage system.

**1101.9 Backwater valves.** Storm drainage systems shall be provided with backwater valves as required for sanitary drainage systems in accordance with Section ~~715-714.~~

### SECTION 1102 MATERIALS

**1102.1 General.** The materials and methods utilized for the construction and installation of storm drainage systems shall com-ply with this section and the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.

**1102.2 Inside storm drainage conductors.** Inside storm drainage conductors installed above ground shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.1.

~~**Exception:** Plastic pipe with an inside diameter of 2 inches and larger shall not be used for storm drainage conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.~~

**1102.3 Underground building storm drain pipe.** Underground building *storm drain* pipe shall conform to one of the stand-ards listed in Table 702.2.

**1102.4 Building storm sewer pipe.** Building storm *sewer* pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 1102.4.

TABLE 1102.4  
BUILDING STORM SEWER PIPE

| MATERIAL | STANDARD |
|----------|----------|
|----------|----------|

## STORM DRAINAGE

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe <u>in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall</u>                                    | ASTM D2661; <del>ASTM D2751</del> ; ASTM F628; <u>ASTM F1488</u> ; CSA B181.1; CSA B182.1 |
| Cast-iron pipe   | ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301  |
| Concrete pipe  | ASTM C14; ASTM C76; CSA A257.1; CSA A257.2  |
| Copper or copper-alloy tubing (Type K, L, M or DWV)  | ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B251; ASTM B306  |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe   | <u>ASTM F667</u> ; ASTM F2306/F2306M; <u>ASTM F2648/F2648M</u>                            |
| <u>Polypropylene (PP) pipe</u>   | <u>ASTM F2881; CSA B182.13</u>  |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe (Type DWV, SDR26, SDR35, SDR41, PS50 or PS100) <u>in IPS diameters, including Schedule 40, DR 22 (PS 200) and DR 24 (PS 140); with a solid, cellular core or composite wall.</u> | ASTM D2665; ASTM D3034; ASTM F891; <u>ASTM F1488</u> ; CSA B181.2; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4 |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L  | ASME A112.3.1   |
| Vitrified clay pipe  | ASTM C4; ASTM C700  |

**1102.5 Subsoil drain pipe.** Subsoil drains shall be open-jointed, horizontally split or perforated pipe conforming to one of the standards listed in Table 1102.5.

**TABLE 1102.5  
SUBSOIL DRAIN PIPE**

| MATERIAL  | STANDARD   |
|---|--|
| Cast-iron pipe  | ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301                                   |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe  | ASTM F405; <u>ASTM F667</u> ; CSA B182.1; CSA B182.6; CSA B182.8 |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe (type sewer pipe, SDR35, PS25, PS50 or PS100) | ASTM D2729; ASTM D3034; ASTM F891; CSA B182.2; CSA B182.4        |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L   | ASME A112.3.1  |
| Vitrified clay pipe   | ASTM C4; ASTM C700   |

**1102.6 Roof drains.** Roof drains shall conform to ASME A112.3.1 or ASME A112.6.4. Roof drains, other than siphonic roof drains, shall be tested and rated in accordance with ASME A112.6.4 or ASPE/IAPMO Z1034.

**1102.7 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed, and shall conform to the respective pipe standards or one of the standards listed in Table 1102.7. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe fittings and plastic plumbing appurtenances with an inside diameter of 2 inches and larger shall not be used for storm drainage conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height.

**TABLE 1102.7  
PIPE FITTING FITTINGS**

| MATERIAL   | STANDARD   |
|--|--|
| Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic  | ASTM D2661; ASTM D3311; CSA B181.1   |
| Cast iron  | ASME B16.4; ASME B16.12; ASTM A74; ASTM A888; CISPI 301                      |
| Coextruded composite ABS and drain DR-PS in PS35, PS50, PS100, PS140, PS200            | ASTM D2751   |
| Coextruded composite ABS DWV Schedule 40 IPS pipe (solid or cellular core)             | ASTM D2661; ASTM D3311; ASTM F628  |
| Coextruded composite PVC DWV Schedule 40 IPS-DR, PS140, PS200 (solid or cellular core) | ASTM D2665; ASTM D3311; ASTM F891  |
| Coextruded composite PVC sewer and drain DR-PS in PS35, PS50, PS100, PS140, PS200      | ASTM D3034   |
| Copper or copper alloy   | ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.23; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.29 |
| Gray iron and ductile iron   | AWWA C110/A21.10   |
| Malleable iron   | ASME B16.3   |
| Plastic, general   | ASTM F409  |
| Polyethylene (PE) plastic pipe   | ASTM F2306/F2306M  |
| Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic   | ASTM D2665; ASTM D3311; ASTM F1866 (10 inches in diameter and larger)        |
| Stainless steel drainage systems, Type 316L  | ASME A112.3.1  |
| Steel  | ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28   |



### SECTION 1103 TRAPS

Deleted.

### SECTION 1104 CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTIONS

**1104.1 Prohibited use.** Conductor pipes shall not be used as soil, waste or vent pipes, and soil, waste or vent pipes shall not be used as conductors.

**1104.2 ~~Floor drains.~~ Waste receptors.** ~~Floor drains~~ Waste receptors shall not be connected to a *storm drain*.

**Exception:** Shall not apply to open and enclosed parking garages.

### SECTION 1105 ROOF DRAINS

**1105.1 General.** Roof drains shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The inside opening for the roof drain shall not be obstructed by the roofing membrane material.

**1105.1.1 Strainers.** Roof drains shall have strainers extending not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the surface of the roof immediately adjacent to the roof drain. Strainers shall have an available inlet area, above roof level, of not less than one and one-half times the area of the conductor or leader to which the drain is connected.

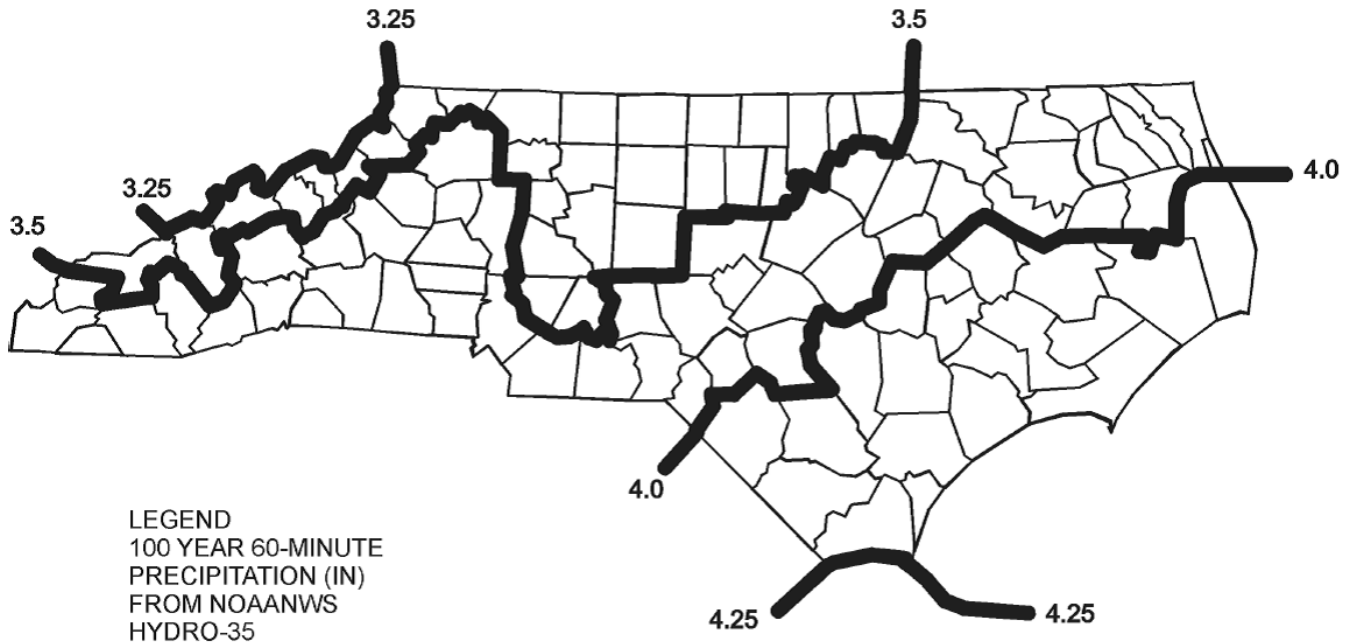
**1105.1.2 Flat decks.** Roof drain strainers for use on sun decks, parking decks and similar areas that are normally serviced and maintained shall comply with Section 1105.1 or shall be of the flat-surface type, installed level with the deck, with an available inlet area not less than two times the area of the conductor or leader to which the drain is connected.

**1105.1.3 Roof drain flashings.** The connection between roofs and roof drains which pass through the roof and into the interior of the building shall be made water-tight by the use of *approved* flashing material.

**1105.2 Roof drain flow rate.** The published roof drain flow rate, based on the head of water above the roof drain, shall be used to size the storm drainage system in accordance with Section 1106. The flow rate used for sizing the storm drainage piping shall be based on the maximum anticipated ponding at the roof drain.

### SECTION 1106 SIZE OF CONDUCTORS, LEADERS AND STORM DRAINS

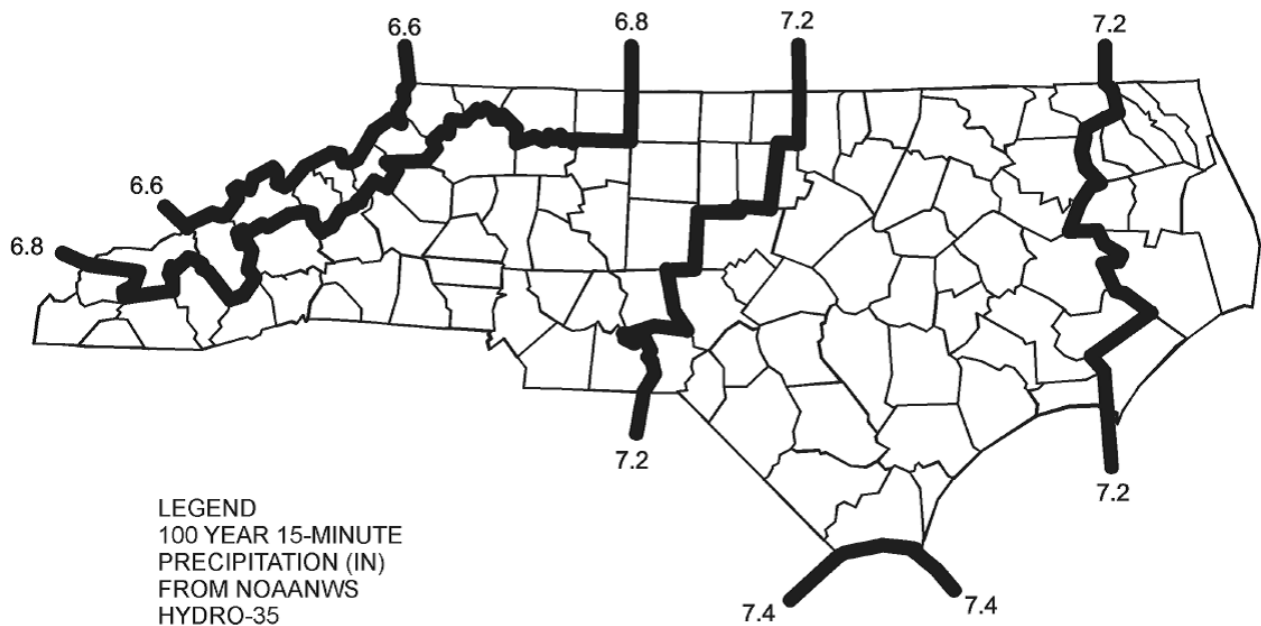
**1106.1 General.** The size of the vertical conductors and leaders, building *storm drains*, building storm *sewers* and any horizontal branches of such drains or *sewers* shall be based on the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figures 1106.1(a) and 1106.1(b) or on other rainfall rates determined from *approved* local weather data.



**FIGURE 1106.1(a)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES/HOUR) NORTH CAROLINA FOR PRIMARY ROOF DRAINS**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington D.C.



**FIGURE 1106.1(b)**  
**100-YEAR, 15-MINUTE RAINFALL (INCHES/HOUR) NORTH CAROLINA FOR SECONDARY ROOF DRAINS**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington D.C.

## STORM DRAINAGE

**1106.2 Vertical conductors and leaders.** Vertical conductors and leaders shall be sized for the maximum projected roof area, in accordance with Tables 1106.2(1) and 1106.2(2).

**TABLE 1106.2(1)**  
**SIZE OF CIRCULAR VERTICAL CONDUCTORS AND LEADERS**

| DIAMETER OF LEADER (inches) <sup>a</sup> | HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet) |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |
|--|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|
|  | Rainfall rate (inches per hour)                |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |
|  | 1  | 2      | 3      | 4      | 5      | 6      | 7      | 8      | 9      | 10     | 11     | 12    |
| 2  | 2,880  | 1,440  | 960    | 720    | 575    | 480    | 410    | 360    | 320    | 290    | 260    | 240   |
| 3  | 8,800  | 4,400  | 2,930  | 2,200  | 1,760  | 1,470  | 1,260  | 1,100  | 980    | 880    | 800    | 730   |
| 4  | 18,400   | 9,200  | 6,130  | 4,600  | 3,680  | 3,070  | 2,630  | 2,300  | 2,045  | 1,840  | 1,675  | 1,530 |
| 5  | 34,600   | 17,300 | 11,530 | 8,650  | 6,920  | 5,765  | 4,945  | 4,325  | 3,845  | 3,460  | 3,145  | 2,880 |
| 6  | 54,000   | 27,000 | 17,995 | 13,500 | 10,800 | 9,000  | 7,715  | 6,750  | 6,000  | 5,400  | 4,910  | 4,500 |
| 8  | 116,000  | 58,000 | 38,660 | 29,000 | 23,200 | 19,315 | 16,570 | 14,500 | 12,890 | 11,600 | 10,545 | 9,600 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Sizes indicated are the diameter of circular piping. This table is applicable to piping of other shapes, provided the cross-sectional shape fully encloses a circle of the diameter indicated in this table. For rectangular leaders, see Table 1106.2(2). Interpolation is permitted for pipe sizes that fall between those listed in this table.

**TABLE 1106.2(2)**  
**SIZE OF RECTANGULAR VERTICAL CONDUCTORS AND LEADERS**

| DIMENSIONS OF COMMON LEADER SIZES width x length (inches) <sup>a</sup> | HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet) |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |
|--|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
|  | Rainfall rate (inches per hour)                |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |        |       |       |
|  | 1  | 2      | 3      | 4      | 5      | 6      | 7      | 8      | 9      | 10     | 11    | 12    |
| 1 3/4 x 2 1/2  | 3,410  | 1,700  | 1,130  | 850    | 680    | 560    | 480    | 420    | 370    | 340    | 310   | 280   |
| 2 x 3  | 5,540  | 2,770  | 1,840  | 1,380  | 1,100  | 920    | 790    | 690    | 610    | 550    | 500   | 460   |
| 2 3/4 x 4 1/4  | 12,830   | 6,410  | 4,270  | 3,200  | 2,560  | 2,130  | 1,830  | 1,600  | 1,420  | 1,280  | 1,160 | 1,060 |
| 3 x 4  | 13,210   | 6,600  | 4,400  | 3,300  | 2,640  | 2,200  | 1,880  | 1,650  | 1,460  | 1,320  | 1,200 | 1,100 |
| 3 1/2 x 4  | 15,900   | 7,950  | 5,300  | 3,970  | 3,180  | 2,650  | 2,270  | 1,980  | 1,760  | 1,590  | 1,440 | 1,320 |
| 3 1/2 x 5  | 21,310   | 10,650 | 7,100  | 5,320  | 4,260  | 3,550  | 3,040  | 2,660  | 2,360  | 2,130  | 1,930 | 1,770 |
| 3 3/4 x 4 3/4  | 21,960   | 10,980 | 7,320  | 5,490  | 4,390  | 3,660  | 3,130  | 2,740  | 2,440  | 2,190  | 1,990 | 1,830 |
| 3 3/4 x 5 1/4  | 25,520   | 12,760 | 8,500  | 6,380  | 5,100  | 4,250  | 3,640  | 3,190  | 2,830  | 2,550  | 2,320 | 2,120 |
| 3 1/2 x 6  | 27,790   | 13,890 | 9,260  | 6,940  | 5,550  | 4,630  | 3,970  | 3,470  | 3,080  | 2,770  | 2,520 | 2,310 |
| 4 x 6  | 32,980   | 16,490 | 10,990 | 8,240  | 6,590  | 5,490  | 4,710  | 4,120  | 3,660  | 3,290  | 2,990 | 2,740 |
| 5 1/2 x 5 1/2  | 44,300   | 22,150 | 14,760 | 11,070 | 8,860  | 7,380  | 6,320  | 5,530  | 4,920  | 4,430  | 4,020 | 3,690 |
| 7 1/2 x 7 1/2  | 100,500  | 50,250 | 33,500 | 25,120 | 20,100 | 16,750 | 14,350 | 12,560 | 11,160 | 10,050 | 9,130 | 8,370 |

a. Sizes indicated are nominal width x length of the opening for rectangular piping.

b. For shapes not included in this table, Equation 11-1 shall be used to determine the equivalent circular diameter,  $D_e$ , of rectangular piping for use in interpolation using the data from Table 1106.2(1).

$$D_e = [\text{width} \times \text{length}]^{1/2} \text{ (Equation 11-1)}$$

where:

$D_e$  = equivalent circular diameter and  $D_e$ , width and length are in inches.

**1106.3 Building storm drains and sewers.** The size of the building *storm drain*, building storm sewer and their horizontal branches having a slope of one-half unit or less vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope) shall be based on the maximum projected roof area in accordance with Table 1106.3. The minimum slope of horizontal branches shall be one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope) unless otherwise *approved*.

**TABLE 1106.3  
SIZE OF HORIZONTAL STORM DRAINAGE PIPING<sup>a</sup>**

| SIZE OF<br>HORIZONTAL<br>PIPING<br>(inches)  | HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet) |         |         |         |        |        |
|--|--|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
|  | Rainfall rate (inches per hour)                |         |         |         |        |        |
|  | 1  | 2       | 3       | 4       | 5      | 6      |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope) |  |         |         |         |        |        |
| 3  | 3,288  | 1,644   | 1,096   | 822     | 657    | 548    |
| 4  | 7,520  | 3,760   | 2,506   | 1,800   | 1,504  | 1,253  |
| 5  | 13,360   | 6,680   | 4,453   | 3,340   | 2,672  | 2,227  |
| 6  | 21,400   | 10,700  | 7,133   | 5,350   | 4,280  | 3,566  |
| 8  | 46,000   | 23,000  | 15,330  | 11,500  | 9,200  | 7,600  |
| 10   | 82,800   | 41,400  | 27,600  | 20,700  | 16,580 | 13,800 |
| 12   | 133,200  | 66,600  | 44,400  | 33,300  | 26,650 | 22,200 |
| 15   | 218,000  | 109,000 | 72,800  | 59,500  | 47,600 | 39,650 |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) |  |         |         |         |        |        |
| 3  | 4,640  | 2,320   | 1,546   | 1,160   | 928    | 773    |
| 4  | 10,660   | 5,330   | 3,533   | 2,650   | 2,120  | 1,766  |
| 5  | 18,880   | 9,440   | 6,293   | 4,720   | 3,776  | 3,146  |
| 6  | 30,200   | 15,100  | 10,066  | 7,550   | 6,040  | 5,033  |
| 8  | 65,200   | 32,600  | 21,733  | 16,300  | 13,040 | 10,866 |
| 10   | 116,800  | 58,400  | 38,950  | 29,200  | 23,350 | 19,450 |
| 12   | 188,000  | 94,000  | 62,600  | 47,000  | 37,600 | 31,350 |
| 15   | 336,000  | 168,000 | 112,000 | 84,000  | 67,250 | 56,000 |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope) |  |         |         |         |        |        |
| 3  | 6,576  | 3,288   | 2,295   | 1,644   | 1,310  | 1,096  |
| 4  | 15,040   | 7,520   | 5,010   | 3,760   | 3,010  | 2,500  |
| 5  | 26,720   | 13,360  | 8,900   | 6,680   | 5,320  | 4,450  |
| 6  | 42,800   | 21,400  | 13,700  | 10,700  | 8,580  | 7,140  |
| 8  | 92,000   | 46,000  | 30,650  | 23,000  | 18,400 | 15,320 |
| 10   | 171,600  | 85,800  | 55,200  | 41,400  | 33,150 | 27,600 |
| 12   | 266,400  | 133,200 | 88,800  | 66,600  | 53,200 | 44,400 |
| 15   | 476,000  | 238,000 | 158,800 | 119,000 | 95,300 | 79,250 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> For Tables 1106.3 and 1106.6, when rainfall rates exceed 6 inches per hour, then the figures for roof area shall be adjusted proportionally by multiplying the figure by six and dividing by the maximum rate of rainfall in inches per hour [see Figure 1106.1(a)].

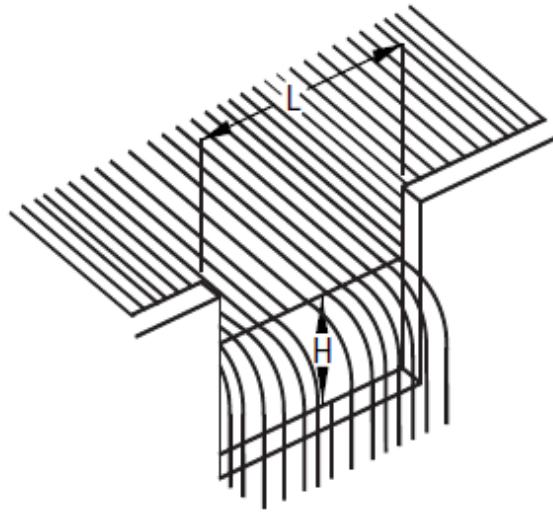
**1106.4 Vertical walls.** In sizing roof drains and storm drainage piping, one-half of the area of any vertical wall or parapet that diverts rainwater to the roof shall be added to the projected roof area for inclusion in calculating the required size of vertical conductors, leaders and horizontal storm drainage piping.

**1106.5 Parapet wall scupper location.** Parapet wall roof drainage scupper and overflow scupper location shall comply with the requirements of Figure 1106.5.

(Note:  $1 \text{ gpm} = 0.0104 \text{ * (rainfall rate) * }$  )

**1106.5 Parapet wall scuppers location.** Where scuppers are used for primary roof drainage or for secondary (emergency overflow) roof drainage or both, the quantity, size, location and inlet elevation of the scuppers shall be chosen to prevent the depth of ponding water on the roof from exceeding the maximum water depth that the roof was designed for as determined by Section 1611.1 of the *International Building Code*. Scupper openings shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height and be designed in accordance with Figure 1106.5 (Note:  $1 \text{ gpm} = 0.0104 \text{ * (rainfall rate) * area}$ ). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when locating and sizing secondary scuppers.

## STORM DRAINAGE



| Head (H)<br>(inches) | CAPACITY OF SCUPPER (gallons per minute) |       |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |        |
|----------------------|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
|                      | Length (L) of scupper (inches)           |       |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |        |
|                      | 4  | 6     | 8     | 10    | 12    | 18    | 24     | 30     | 36     | 48     |
| 1                    | 10.7                                     | 17.4  | 23.4  | 29.3  | 35.4  | 53.4  | 71.5   | 89.5   | 107.5  | 143.7  |
| 2                    | 30.5                                     | 47.5  | 64.4  | 81.4  | 98.5  | 149.4 | 200.3  | 251.1  | 302.1  | 404.0  |
| 3                    | 52.9                                     | 84.1  | 115.2 | 146.3 | 177.8 | 271.4 | 364.9  | 458.5  | 552.0  | 739.0  |
| 4                    | 76.7                                     | 124.6 | 172.6 | 220.5 | 269.0 | 413.3 | 557.5  | 701.8  | 846.0  | 1135.0 |
| 6                    | 123.3                                    | 211.4 | 299.5 | 387.5 | 476.5 | 741.1 | 1005.8 | 1270.4 | 1535.0 | 2067.5 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

Based on the Francis formula:

$$Q = 3.33 (L - 0.2H) H^{1.5}$$

where:

$Q$  = Flow rate (cubic feet per second).

$L$  = Length of scupper opening (feet).

$H$  = Head on scupper [feet (measured 6 feet back from opening)].

**FIGURE 1106.5**  
**SIZE OF SCUPPERS**

**1106.6 Size of roof gutters.** The size of semicircular gutters shall be based on the maximum projected roof area in accordance with Table 1106.6.

**TABLE 1106.6  
SIZE OF SEMICIRCULAR ROOF GUTTERS<sup>a</sup>**

| DIAMETER OF<br>GUTTERS<br>(inches)  | HORIZONTALLY PROJECTED ROOF AREA (square feet) |        |        |        |       |       |
|---|--|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
|   | Rainfall rate (inches per hour)                |        |        |        |       |       |
|   | 1  | 2      | 3      | 4      | 5     | 6     |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>16</sub> unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (0.5-percent slope) |  |        |        |        |       |       |
| 3   | 680  | 340    | 226    | 170    | 136   | 113   |
| 4   | 1,440  | 720    | 480    | 360    | 288   | 240   |
| 5   | 2,500  | 1,250  | 834    | 625    | 500   | 416   |
| 6   | 3,840  | 1,920  | 1,280  | 960    | 768   | 640   |
| 7   | 5,520  | 2,760  | 1,840  | 1,380  | 1,100 | 918   |
| 8   | 7,960  | 3,980  | 2,655  | 1,990  | 1,590 | 1,325 |
| 10  | 14,400   | 7,200  | 4,800  | 3,600  | 2,880 | 2,400 |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> unit vertical 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope)       |  |        |        |        |       |       |
| 3   | 960  | 480    | 320    | 240    | 192   | 160   |
| 4   | 2,040  | 1,020  | 681    | 510    | 408   | 340   |
| 5   | 3,520  | 1,760  | 1,172  | 880    | 704   | 587   |
| 6   | 5,440  | 2,720  | 1,815  | 1,360  | 1,085 | 905   |
| 7   | 7,800  | 3,900  | 2,600  | 1,950  | 1,560 | 1,300 |
| 8   | 11,200   | 5,600  | 3,740  | 2,800  | 2,240 | 1,870 |
| 10  | 20,400   | 10,200 | 6,800  | 5,100  | 4,080 | 3,400 |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope)    |  |        |        |        |       |       |
| 3   | 1,360  | 680    | 454    | 340    | 272   | 226   |
| 4   | 2,880  | 1,440  | 960    | 720    | 576   | 480   |
| 5   | 5,000  | 2,500  | 1,668  | 1,250  | 1,000 | 834   |
| 6   | 7,680  | 3,840  | 2,560  | 1,920  | 1,536 | 1,280 |
| 7   | 11,040   | 5,520  | 3,860  | 2,760  | 2,205 | 1,840 |
| 8   | 15,920   | 7,960  | 5,310  | 3,980  | 3,180 | 2,655 |
| 10  | 28,800   | 14,400 | 9,600  | 7,200  | 5,750 | 4,800 |
| <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope)    |  |        |        |        |       |       |
| 3   | 1,920  | 960    | 640    | 480    | 384   | 320   |
| 4   | 4,080  | 2,040  | 1,360  | 1,020  | 816   | 680   |
| 5   | 7,080  | 3,540  | 2,360  | 1,770  | 1,415 | 1,180 |
| 6   | 11,080   | 5,540  | 3,695  | 2,770  | 2,220 | 1,850 |
| 7   | 15,600   | 7,800  | 5,200  | 3,900  | 3,120 | 2,600 |
| 8   | 22,400   | 11,200 | 7,460  | 5,600  | 4,480 | 3,730 |
| 10  | 40,000   | 20,000 | 13,330 | 10,000 | 8,000 | 6,660 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. For Tables 1106.3 and 1106.6, when rainfall rates exceed 6 inches per hour, then the figures for roof area shall be adjusted proportionally by multiplying the figure by six and dividing by the maximum rate of rainfall in inches per hour [see Figure 1106.1(a)].

## SECTION 1107 SIPHONIC ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

**1107.1 General.** Siphonic roof drains and drainage systems shall be designed in accordance with ASME A112.6.9 and ASPE 45.

## SECTION 1108 SECONDARY (EMERGENCY) ROOF DRAINS

**1108.1 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers.** Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. Where primary and secondary roof drains are manufactured as a single assembly, the inlet and outlet for each drain shall be independent.

## STORM DRAINAGE

**1108.2 Separate systems required.** Secondary roof drain systems shall have the end point of discharge separate from the primary system. Discharge shall be above grade, in a location that would normally be observed by the building occupants or maintenance personnel.

**1108.3 Sizing of secondary drains.** Secondary (emergency) roof drain systems shall be sized in accordance with Section 1106 based on the rainfall indicated in Figure 1106.1(b). Scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1101.7. Scuppers shall have an opening dimension of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height and have an opening width equal to the circumference of the roof drain required for the area served. The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when sizing the secondary roof drain system.

### SECTION 1109 COMBINED SANITARY AND STORM PUBLIC SEWER

**1109.1 General.** Where the *public sewer* is a combined system for both sanitary and storm water, the *storm sewer* shall be connected independently to the *public sewer*.

### SECTION 1110 CONTROLLED FLOW ROOF DRAIN SYSTEMS

**1110.1 General.** The roof of a structure shall be designed for the storage of water where the storm drainage system is engineered for controlled flow. The controlled flow roof drain system shall be an engineered system in accordance with this section and the design, submittal, approval, inspection and testing requirements of Section 316.1. The controlled flow system shall be designed based on the required rainfall rate in accordance with Section 1106.1.

**1110.2 Control devices.** The control devices shall be installed so that the rate of discharge of water per minute shall not exceed the values for continuous flow as indicated in Section 1110.1.

**1110.3 Installation.** Runoff control shall be by control devices. Control devices shall be protected by strainers.

**1110.4 Minimum number of roof drains.** Not less than two roof drains shall be installed in roof areas 10,000 square feet (929 m<sup>2</sup>) or less and not less than four roof drains shall be installed in roofs over 10,000 square feet (929 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.

### SECTION 1111 SUBSOIL DRAINS

**1111.1 Subsoil drains.** Subsoil drains shall be open-jointed, horizontally split or perforated pipe conforming to one of the standards listed in Table 1102.5. Such drains shall ~~not~~ be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Where the building is subject to backwater, the subsoil drain shall be protected by an accessibly located backwater valve. Subsoil drains shall discharge to a trapped area drain, sump, dry well or *approved* location above ground. The subsoil sump shall not be required to have either a gastight cover or a vent. The sump and pumping system shall comply with Section 1113.1.

### SECTION 1112 BUILDING SUBDRAINS

**1112.1 Building subdrains.** *Building subdrains* located below the *public sewer* level shall discharge into a sump or receiving tank, the contents of which shall be automatically lifted and discharged into the drainage system as required for building sumps. The sump and pumping equipment shall comply with Section 1113.1.

### SECTION 1113 SUMPS AND PUMPING SYSTEMS

**1113.1 Pumping system.** The sump pump, pit and discharge piping shall conform to Sections 1113.1.1 through 1113.1.4.

**1113.1.1 Pump capacity and head.** The sump pump shall be of a capacity and head appropriate to anticipated use requirements.

**1113.1.2 Sump pit.** The sump pit shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in diameter and not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth, unless otherwise *approved*. The pit shall be ~~accessible~~provided with access and shall be located such that all drainage flows into the pit by gravity. The sump pit shall be constructed of tile, steel, plastic, cast iron, concrete or other *ap-proved* material, with a removable cover adequate to support anticipated loads in the area of use. The pit floor shall be solid and provide permanent support for the pump.

**1113.1.3 Electrical.** Electrical service outlets, ~~when~~where required, shall meet the requirements of NFPA 70.

**1113.1.4 Piping.** Discharge piping shall meet the requirements of Section 1102.2, 1102.3 or 1102.4 and shall include a gate valve and a full flow check valve. Pipe and fittings shall be the same size as, or larger than, the pump discharge tapping.

**Exception:** ~~In one- and two-family dwellings, only a check valve shall be required, located on the discharge piping from the pump or ejector.~~

## SECTION 1114 VALUES FOR CONTINUOUS FLOW

**1114.1 Equivalent roof area.** Where there is a continuous or ~~semicontinuous~~semi-continuous discharge into the building *storm drain* or building storm sewer, such as from a pump, ejector, air conditioning plant or similar device, each gallon per minute (L/m) of such discharge shall be computed as being equivalent to 96 square feet (9m<sup>2</sup>) of roof area, based on a rainfall rate of 1 inch (25.4 mm) per hour.



**CHAPTER 12**  
**SPECIAL PIPING AND STORAGE SYSTEMS**  
**Deleted.**

DRAFT

## CHAPTER 13

# NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

### SECTION 1301 GENERAL

**1301.1 ~~Scope-General.~~** The provisions of Chapter 13 shall govern the materials, design, construction and installation of systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of non-potable water. For non-potable rainwater systems, the provisions of CSA B805/ICC 805 shall be an alternative for regulating the materials, design, construction and installation of systems for rainwater collection, storage, treatment and distribution of non-potable water. The use and application of non-potable water shall comply with laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the jurisdiction.

**1301.2 Water quality.** Non-potable water for each end use application shall meet the minimum water quality requirements as established for the intended application by the laws, rules and ordinances applicable in the jurisdiction. Where non-potable water from different sources is combined in a system, the system shall comply with the most stringent of the requirements of this code that are applicable to such sources.

**1301.2.1 Residual disinfectants.** Where chlorine is used for disinfection, the non-potable water shall contain not more than 4 ppm (4 mg/L) of chloramines or free chlorine when tested in accordance with ASTM D1253. Where ozone is used for disinfection, the non-potable water shall not contain gas bubbles having elevated levels of ozone at the point of use.

**Exception:** Reclaimed water sources shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

**1301.2.2 Filtration required.** Non-potable water utilized for water closet and urinal flushing applications shall be filtered by a 100-micron (0.1 mm) or finer filter. Non-potable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

**Exception:** Reclaimed water sources shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

**1301.2.3 Applications.** ~~Untreated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section 1301.2.3.1. Treated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section 1301.2.3.2.~~

**~~1301.2.3.1 Examples of Acceptable Uses without Treatment.~~**

- ~~1. Outdoor Irrigation~~
- ~~2. Decorative Fountains~~
- ~~3. Yard Hydrants~~
- ~~4. Industrial Processes (eg. Dust Control, Indoor Hose Bibs Spray)~~
- ~~5. Vehicle Washing~~
- ~~6. Outdoor Hose Bibs (not routed through building wall)~~

**~~1301.2.3.2 Examples of Acceptable Uses with Disinfection and Filtration.~~**

- ~~1. Toilet Flushing~~
- ~~2. Urinal Flushing~~
- ~~3. Evaporative Cooling Tower Make-up~~
- ~~4. Trap Primers~~
- ~~5. Fire Suppression Systems~~
- ~~6. Clothes Washers~~
- ~~7. Outdoor Pools and Spas~~
- ~~8. Hose Bibs—Residential~~

**1301.3 Signage required.** Non-potable water outlets such as hose connections, sillcocks, hose bibs, wall hydrants, yard hydrants, other outdoor outlets, open-ended pipes and faucets shall be identified at the point of use for each outlet with signage that reads as follows: “Non-potable water is utilized for [application name]. CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” The words shall be legibly and indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material or shall be indelibly printed on the fixture. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height and in colors in contrast to the background on which they are applied. In addition to the required wordage, the pictograph shown in Figure 1301.3 shall appear on the signage required by this section.



**FIGURE 1301.3  
PICTOGRAPH—DO NOT DRINK**

**1301.4 Permits.** Permits shall be required for the construction, installation, alteration and repair of non-potable water systems. Construction documents, engineering calculations, diagrams and other such data pertaining to the non-potable water system shall be submitted with each permit application.

**1301.5 Potable water connections.** Where a potable system is connected to a non-potable water system, the potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608.

**1301.6 ~~Approved components~~Components and materials.** Piping, plumbing components and materials used in collection and conveyance systems shall be ~~manufactured~~ of material approved by the manufacturer for the intended ~~application and compatible with any disinfection and treatment systems used.~~ application.

**1301.6.1 Identification of non-potable water systems.** Where non-potable ~~water~~ plumbing systems (drainage or supply within gray water, rain water or reclaimed water systems) are installed, the piping conveying the non-potable water shall be identified either by color marking, metal tags or tape in accordance with Section 1301.6.2.

**1301.6.2 Non-potable pipe labeling and marking.**  
Non-potable distribution piping shall be purple in color ~~and~~ or shall be embossed, or integrally stamped or marked, with the words: “CAUTION: NON-POTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK” or the piping shall be installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Pipe identification shall include the contents of the piping system and an arrow indicating the direction of flow. Hazardous piping systems shall also contain information addressing the nature of the hazard. Pipe identification shall be repeated at intervals not exceeding 25 feet (7620 mm) and at each point where the piping passes through a wall, floor or roof. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

**1301.6.2.1 Color.** The color of the pipe identification shall be discernable and consistent throughout the building. The color purple shall be used to identify reclaimed, rain and gray water distribution systems.

**1301.6.2.2 Lettering size.** The size of the background color field and lettering shall comply with Table 1301.6.2.2.

**TABLE 1301.6.2.2  
SIZE OF PIPE IDENTIFICATION**

| PIPE DIAMETER | LENGTH BACKGROUND COLOR | SIZE OF LETTERS |
|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
|---------------|-------------------------|-----------------|

| (inches)              | FIELD<br>(inches) | (inches) |
|-----------------------|-------------------|----------|
| 3/8 to 1-1/4          | 8                 | 0.5      |
| 1- $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 | 8                 | 0.75     |
| 2- $\frac{1}{2}$ to 6 | 12                | 1.25     |
| 8 to 10               | 24                | 2.5      |
| over 10               | 32                | 3.5      |

For SI 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**1301.6.2.3 Identification tape.** Where used, identification tape shall be at least 3 inches (76 mm) wide and have white or black lettering on a purple field stating “CAUTION: NON-POTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK.” Identification tape shall be installed on top of non-potable rainwater distribution pipes, fastened at least every 10 feet (3048 mm) to each pipe length and run continuously the entire developed length of the pipe, pipe and the insulation when the insulation covers the pipe labels.

**1301.7 Insect and vermin control.** The system shall be protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into storage tanks and piping systems. Screens installed on vent pipes, inlets, and overflow pipes shall have an aperture of not greater than 1/16 inch and shall be close-fitting or other *approved* methods. Screen materials shall be compatible with contacting system components and shall not accelerate the corrosion of system components.

**1301.8 Freeze protection.** Where sustained freezing temperatures occur, provisions shall be made to keep storage tanks and the related piping from freezing.

**1301.9 Non-potable water storage tanks.** Non-potable water storage tanks shall comply with Sections 1301.9.1 through 1301.9.11.

**1301.9.1 Sizing.**

The holding capacity of the storage tank shall be sized in accordance with the anticipated demand.

**1301.9.2 Location.** ~~Storage tanks shall be installed above or below grade. Above grade storage tanks shall be protected from direct sunlight and shall be constructed using opaque, UV-resistant materials such as, but not limited to, heavily tinted plastic, fiberglass, lined metal, concrete, wood, or painted to prevent algae growth, or shall have specially constructed sun barriers including, but not limited to, installation in garages, crawl spaces or sheds. Storage tanks and their manholes shall not be located directly under soil piping, waste piping or any source of contamination. Any storage tank or portion thereof that is above grade shall be protected from direct exposure to sunlight by one of the following methods:~~

1. Tank construction using opaque, UV-resistant materials such as heavily tinted plastic, fiberglass, lined metal, concrete, wood, or painted to prevent algae growth.
2. Specially constructed sun barriers.
3. Installation in garages, crawl spaces or sheds.
4. Storage tanks and their manholes shall not be located directly under soil piping, waste piping or any source of contamination.

**1301.9.3 Materials.** Where collected on site, water shall be collected in an *approved* tank constructed of durable, nonabsorbent and corrosion-resistant materials. The storage tank shall be constructed of materials compatible with any disinfection systems used to treat water upstream of the tank and with any systems used to maintain water quality in the tank. Wooden storage tanks that are not equipped with a makeup water source shall be provided with a flexible liner.

**1301.9.4 Foundation and supports.** Storage tanks shall be supported on a firm base capable of withstanding the weight of the storage tank when filled to capacity. Storage tanks shall be supported in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

**1301.9.4.1 Ballast.** Where the soil can become saturated, an underground storage tank shall be ballasted, or otherwise secured, to prevent the tank from floating out of the ground when empty. The combined weight of the tank and hold-down ballast shall meet or exceed the buoyancy force of the tank. Where the installation requires a foundation, the foundation shall be flat and shall be designed to support the weight of the storage tank when full, consistent with the bearing capability of adjacent soil.

**1301.9.4.2 Structural support.** Where installed below grade, storage tank installations shall be designed to withstand earth and surface structural loads without damage and with minimal deformation when empty or filled with water.

**1301.9.5 Makeup water.** Where an uninterrupted supply is required for the intended application, potable or reclaimed water shall be provided as a source of makeup water for the storage tank. The makeup water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608. A *full-open valve* located on the makeup water supply line to the storage tank shall be provided. Inlets to the storage tank shall be controlled by fill valves or other automatic supply valves installed to prevent the tank from overflowing and to prevent the water level from dropping below a predetermined point. Where makeup water is provided, the water level shall not be permitted to drop below the source water inlet or the intake of any attached pump.

**1301.9.6 Overflow.** The storage tank shall be equipped with an overflow pipe having a diameter not less than that shown in Table 606.5.4. The overflow pipe shall be protected from insects or vermin and shall discharge in a manner consistent with storm water runoff requirements of the jurisdiction. The overflow pipe shall discharge at a sufficient distance from the tank to avoid damaging the tank foundation or the adjacent property. Drainage from overflow pipes shall be directed to prevent freezing on roof walkways. The overflow drain shall not be equipped with a shutoff valve. A cleanout shall be provided on each overflow pipe in accordance with Section 708.

**1301.9.7 Access.** Not less than one access opening shall be provided to allow inspection and cleaning of the tank interior. Access openings shall have an *approved* locking device or other *approved* method of securing access. Below-grade storage tanks, located outside of the building, shall be provided with a manhole either not less than 24 inches (610 mm) square or with an inside diameter not less than 24 inches (610 mm). Manholes shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above ground or shall be designed to prevent water infiltration. Finished grade shall be sloped away from the manhole to divert surface water. Manhole covers shall be secured to prevent unauthorized access. Service ports in manhole covers shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter and shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished grade level. The service port shall be secured to prevent unauthorized access.

**Exception:** ~~Treated-water storage tanks that are less than 800 gallons (3028 L) in volume and installed below grade shall not be required to be equipped with a manhole, but shall have~~ Storage tanks that are less than 800 gallons (3028 L) in volume and installed below grade shall not be required to be equipped with a manhole, but shall have a manhole provided that the tank has a service port of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.

**1301.9.8 Venting.** Storage tanks shall be provided with a vent sized in accordance with Chapter 9 and based on the aggregate diameter of all tank influent pipes. The reservoir vent shall not be connected to sanitary drainage system vents. Vents shall be protected from contamination by means of an *approved* cap or U-bend installed with the opening directed downward. Vent outlets shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above grade or as necessary to prevent surface water from entering the storage tank. Vent openings shall be protected against the entrance of vermin and insects in accordance with the requirements of Section 1301.7.

**1301.9.9 Draining of tanks.** ~~Where tanks require draining for service or cleaning, tanks shall be drained by using a pump or by a drain located at the lowest point in the tank. The tank drain pipe shall discharge as required for overflow pipes and shall not be smaller in size than specified in Table 606.5.7. Not less than one cleanout shall be provided on each drain pipe in accordance with Section 708.~~ Tanks shall be provided with a means of emptying the contents for the purpose of service or cleaning.

**1301.9.10 Marking and signage.** Each nonpotable water storage tank shall be labeled with its rated capacity. The contents of storage tanks shall be identified with the words "CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK." Where an opening is provided that could allow the entry of personnel, the opening shall be marked with the words, "DANGER – CONFINED SPACE." Markings shall be indelibly printed on the tank or on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant

waterproof material that is mounted on the tank. The letters of the words shall be not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height and shall be of a color in contrast with the background on which they are applied.

**1301.9.11 Storage tank tests.** Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with the following:

Storage tanks shall be filled with water to the overflow line or pressurized with air prior to and during inspection. ~~All seams~~ Seams and joints shall be left exposed and the tank shall remain watertight without leakage for a period of 24 hours.

**Exception:** If air testing, system shall be pressurized with air equivalent to the water pressure for the full depth of the tank in accordance with Section 312.5 of ~~this code~~ the *International Plumbing Code*.

1. After 24 hours, supplemental water shall be introduced for a period of 15 minutes to verify proper drainage of the overflow system and that there are no leaks.
2. The tank drain shall be observed for proper operation.
3. The makeup water system shall be observed for proper operation and successful automatic shutoff of the system at the refill threshold shall be verified.

**1301.10 System abandonment.** If the owner of an on-site non-potable water reuse system or rainwater collection and conveyance system elects to cease use of, or fails to properly maintain such system, the system shall be abandoned and shall comply with the following:

1. All system piping connecting to a utility-provided water system shall be removed or disabled.
2. The distribution piping system shall be replaced with an *approved* potable water supply piping system. Where an existing potable pipe system is already in place, the fixtures shall be connected to the existing system.
3. The storage tank shall be secured from accidental access by sealing or locking tank inlets and access points, or filling with sand or equivalent.

**1301.11 Trenching requirements for non-potable water piping.** Non-potable water collection and distribution piping and reclaimed water piping shall be separated from the *building sewer* and potable water piping underground by 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth. Non-potable water collection and distribution piping shall not be located in, under or above cesspools, septic tanks, septic tank drainage fields or seepage pits. Buried non-potable water piping shall comply with the requirements of Section 306.

**Exceptions:**

1. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the non-potable water pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the *sewer* is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the *sewer* and the pipe materials conform to Table 702.3.
2. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the potable water service pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the non-potable water pipe is ~~a minimum of~~ not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the non-potable water pipe and the pipe materials comply with the requirements of Table 605.4.
3. Non-potable water pipe is permitted to be located in the same trench with a *building sewer*, provided that such *sewer* is constructed of materials that comply with the requirements of Table 702.2.
4. The required separation distance shall not apply where a non-potable water pipe crosses a *sewer* pipe, provided that the pipe is sleeved to ~~at least~~ not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the *sewer* pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing, with pipe materials that comply with Table 702.2.
5. The required separation distance shall not apply where a potable water service pipe crosses a non-potable water pipe, provided that the potable water service pipe is sleeved for a distance of ~~at least~~ not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the centerline of the non-potable pipe on both sides of such crossing, with pipe materials that comply with Table 702.2.
6. Irrigation piping located outside of a building and downstream of the backflow preventer is not required to meet the trenching requirements where non-potable water is used for outdoor applications.

**1301.12 Outdoor outlet access.** Deleted.

## SECTION 1302 ON-SITE NONPOTABLE WATER REUSE SYSTEMS

**1302.1 General.** The provisions of ASTM E2635 and Section 1302 shall govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of on-site non-potable water reuse systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of on-site sources of non-potable water as permitted by the jurisdiction.

**1302.2 Sources.** On-site nonpotable water reuse systems shall collect waste discharge from only the following sources: bathtubs, showers, lavatories, clothes washers and laundry trays. Water from other *approved* non-potable sources including swimming pool backwash operations, air conditioner condensate, rainwater, cooling tower blow-down water, foundation drain water, steam system condensate, fluid cooler discharge water, food steamer discharge water, combination oven discharge water, industrial process water and fire pump test water shall also be permitted to be collected for reuse by on-site non-potable water reuse systems, as *approved* by the code official and as appropriate for the intended application.

**1302.2.1 Prohibited sources.** Wastewater containing urine or fecal matter shall not be diverted to on-site non-potable water reuse systems and shall discharge to the sanitary drainage system of the building or premises in accordance with Chapter 7. Reverse osmosis system reject water, water softener discharge water, kitchen sink wastewater, dishwasher wastewater and wastewater discharged from wet-hood scrubbers shall not be collected for reuse in an on-site non-potable water reuse system.

**1302.3 Traps.** Traps serving fixtures and devices discharging wastewater to on-site non-potable water reuse systems shall comply with Section 1002.4.

**1302.4 Collection pipe.** On-site non-potable water reuse systems shall utilize drainage piping *approved* for use in plumbing drainage systems to collect and convey untreated water for reuse. Vent piping *approved* for use in plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for vents in the graywater system. Collection and vent piping materials shall comply with Section 702.

**1302.4.1 Installation.** Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be installed in accordance with Section 704.

**1302.4.2 Joints.** Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall utilize joints *approved* for use with the distribution piping and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in Section 705.

**1302.4.3 Size.** Collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall be sized in accordance with drainage sizing requirements specified in Section 710.

**1302.4.4 Labeling and Marking.** Additional marking of collection piping conveying untreated water for reuse shall not be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste and vent piping by Chapter 7.

**1302.5 Filtration.** Untreated water collected for reuse shall be filtered as required for the intended end use. Filters shall be ~~accessible~~ *provided with access* for inspection and maintenance. Filters shall utilize a pressure gauge or other *approved* method to provide indication when a filter requires servicing or replacement. Filters shall be installed with shutoff valves immediately upstream and downstream to allow for isolation during maintenance. Non-potable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

**1302.6 Disinfection and treatment.** Where the intended application for non-potable water collected on site for reuse requires disinfection or other treatment or both, it shall be disinfected as determined by a registered design professional to ensure that the required water quality is delivered at the point of use. Non-potable water collected on site containing untreated graywater shall be retained in collection reservoirs for ~~a maximum of not longer than~~ 24 hours.

**1302.6.1 Graywater used for fixture flushing.** Gray-water used for flushing water closets and urinals shall be disinfected and treated by an on-site water reuse treatment system complying with NSF 350.

**1302.7 Storage tanks.** Storage tanks utilized in on-site non-potable water reuse systems shall comply with Sections 1301.9, 1302.7.1 and 1302.7.3.

**1302.7.1 Location.** Storage tanks shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table 1302.7.1.

TABLE 1302.7.1  
LOCATION OF NONPOTABLE  
WATER REUSE STORAGE TANKS

| ELEMENT                                     | MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE FROM STORAGE TANK (feet) |
|---|--|
| Critical root zone (CRZ) of protected trees | 2  |
| Lot line adjoining private lots             | 5  |
| Public water main                           | 10   |
| Seepage pits                                | 5  |
| Septic tanks                                | 5  |
| Streams and lakes                           | 50   |
| Water service                               | 5  |
| Water wells                                 | 50   |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

### 1302.7.2. Design and construction.

Storage tanks shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapters 16 through 22 of the *International Building Code* and in accordance with the following standards, as appropriate for the material of the storage tank: AWWA D100, AWWA D115, AWWA D120, UL 58, UL 1746, UL 1316, UL 142, API 12F or API 12D.

**1302.7.3 Outlets.** Outlets shall be located not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom of the storage tank and shall not skim water from the surface.

**1302.8 Valves.** Valves shall be supplied on on-site non-potable water reuse systems in accordance with Sections 1302.8.1 and 1302.8.2.

**1302.8.1 Bypass valve.** One three-way diverter valve listed and labeled to NSF 50 or other *approved* device shall be installed on collection piping upstream of each storage tank, or drain-field, as applicable, to divert untreated on-site reuse sources to the sanitary *sewer* to allow servicing and inspection of the system. Bypass valves shall be installed downstream of fixture traps and vent connections. Bypass valves shall be marked to indicate the direction of flow, connection and storage tank or drain-field connection. Bypass valves shall be ~~installed in accessible locations provided with access that allows for removal.~~ Two shutoff valves shall not be installed to serve as a bypass valve.

**1302.8.2 Backwater valve.** One or more backwater valves shall be installed on each overflow and tank drain-pipe. Backwater valves shall be in accordance with Section ~~715-714.~~

**1302.9 Pumping and control system.** Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be easily accessible and removable in order to perform repair, maintenance and cleaning. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure delivered by the pumping system shall be appropriate for the application and in accordance with Section 604.

**1302.10 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator.** Where the water pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the non-potable water distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8.

**Exception:** Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

**1302.11 Distribution piping.** Distribution piping utilized in on-site non-potable water reuse systems shall comply with Sections 1302.11.1 through 1302.11.3.

**Exception:** Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

**1302.11.1 Materials, joints and connections.** Distribution piping shall conform to the standards and requirements specified in Section 605.



## NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

**1302.11.2 Design.** On-site non-potable water reuse distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section 604 for the intended application.

**1302.11.3 Labeling and marking.** On-site non-potable water distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section 1301.6.

**1302.12 Tests and inspections.** Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1302.12.1 through 1302.12.6.

**1302.12.1 Collection pipe and vent test.** Drain, waste and vent piping used for on-site water reuse systems shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**1302.12.2 Storage tank test.** Storage tanks shall be tested in accordance with Section ~~1301.9.11~~ 1301.9.10.

**1302.12.3 Water supply system test.** The testing of makeup water supply piping and distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5.

**1302.12.4 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies.** Deleted.

**1302.12.5 Inspection of vermin and insect protection.** Inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to verify that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into the storage tank and piping systems in accordance with Section 1301.7.

**1302.12.6 Water quality test.** The quality of the water for the intended application shall be verified at the point of use in accordance with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

**1302.13 Operation and maintenance manuals.** Operation and maintenance materials shall be supplied with non-potable on-site water reuse systems in accordance with Sections 1302.13.1 through 1302.13.4.

**1302.13.1 Manual.** A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied with all systems.

**1302.13.2 Schematics.** The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, and the locations and a list of all system components, including manufacturer and model number.

**1302.13.3 Maintenance procedures.** The manual shall provide a schedule and procedures for all system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts, including filters, shall be noted along with part numbers.

**1302.13.4 Operations procedures.** The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures. The manual shall include detailed operating procedures for the system.

## SECTION 1303 NON-POTABLE RAINWATER COLLECTION AND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

**1303.1 General.** The provisions of Section 1303 shall govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of rainwater collection and conveyance systems for the collection, storage, treatment and distribution of rainwater for non-potable applications, as permitted by the jurisdiction.

**1303.1.1 Fire protection systems.** The storage, treatment and distribution of nonpotable water to be used for fire protection systems shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

**1303.1.2 Applications.** Untreated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section 1301.2.3.1. Treated rainwater shall be utilized in accordance with Section 1301.2.3.2.

### **1303.1.2.1 Examples of Acceptable Uses without Treatment.**

1. Outdoor Irrigation

2. Decorative Fountains

3. Yard Hydrants

4. Industrial Processes (eg. Dust Control, Indoor Hose Bibs Spray)

5. Vehicle Washing6. Outdoor Hose Bibs (not routed through building wall)**1303.1.2.2 Examples of Acceptable Uses with Disinfection and Filtration.**1. Toilet Flushing2. Urinal Flushing3. Evaporative Cooling Tower Make-up4. Trap Primers5. Fire Suppression Systems6. Clothes Washers7. Outdoor Pools and Spas8. Hose Bibs – Residential

**1303.2 Collection surface.** Rainwater shall be collected only from above-ground impervious roofing surfaces constructed from *approved* materials for acceptable uses without treatment listed in Section ~~1301.2.3~~ 1303.1.2.1 and 1303.1.2.2 or where additional appropriate treatment is designed by a registered design professional and where *approved*, vehicular parking or pedestrian walking surfaces. ~~Collection of water from vehicular parking or pedestrian walking surfaces shall be prohibited except where the water is used exclusively for landscape irrigation. Overflow and bleed off pipes from roof mounted appliances including, but not limited to, evaporative coolers, water heaters, and solar water heaters shall not discharge onto rainwater collection surfaces.~~

**1303.3 Debris excluders.** Downspouts and leaders shall be connected to a roof washer and shall be equipped with a debris excluder or equivalent device ~~that is designed to prevent the contamination of collected rainwater with remove~~ leaves, sticks, pine needles and similar undesirable material ~~debris to prevent such from entering the storage tank. Debris excluders and equivalent devices shall be self cleaning.~~

**1303.4 First-flush diverter.** First-flush diverters shall operate automatically and shall not rely on manually operated valves or devices. Diverted rainwater shall not be drained to the roof surface, and shall be discharged in a manner consistent with the storm water runoff requirements of the jurisdiction. First-flush diverters shall be provided with *access* for maintenance and service.

**~~1303.4~~ 1303.4.1 Roof washer.** A sufficient amount of rainwater shall be diverted at the beginning of each rain event, and not allowed to enter the storage tank, to wash accumulated debris from the collection surface. The amount of rainfall to be diverted shall be field adjustable as necessary to minimize storage tank water contamination. The roof washer shall not rely on manually operated valves or devices, and shall operate automatically. Diverted rainwater shall not be drained to the roof surface, and shall be discharged in a manner consistent with the storm water runoff requirements of the jurisdiction. Roof washers shall be accessible for maintenance and service.

**1303.5 Roof gutters and downspouts.** Gutters and down-spouts shall be constructed of materials that are compatible with the collection surface and the rainwater quality for the desired end use. Joints shall be watertight.

**1303.5.1 Slope.** Roof gutters, leaders and rainwater collection piping shall slope continuously toward collection inlets. Gutters and downspouts shall have a slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch per foot (10.4 mm/m) along their entire length, and shall not permit the collection or pooling of water at any point.

**Exception:** Siphonic drainage systems installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall not be required to have a slope.

**1303.5.2 Size.** Gutters and downspouts shall be installed and sized in accordance with Section 1106.6 and local rainfall rates.

**1303.5.3 Cleanouts.** Cleanouts shall be provided in the water conveyance system to allow *access* to all filters, flushes, pipes and downspouts.

## NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

**1303.6 Drainage.** Water drained from the roof ~~washer (first-flush diverter)~~ washer, first-flush diverter or debris excluder shall not be drained to the sanitary sewer. Such water shall be diverted from the storage tank and discharge in a location that will not cause erosion or damage to property in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Roof ~~washers~~ washers, first-flush ~~diverter~~ diverters and debris excluders shall be provided with an automatic means of self-draining between rain events, and shall not drain onto roof surfaces.

**1303.7 Collection pipe.** Rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall utilize drainage piping *approved* for use within plumbing drainage systems to collect and convey captured rainwater. Vent piping *approved* for use within plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for vents within the rainwater system. Collection and vent piping materials shall comply with Section 702.

**1303.7.1 Installation.** Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall be installed in accordance with Section 704.

**1303.7.2 Joints.** Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall utilize joints *approved* for use with the distribution piping and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in Section 705.

**1303.7.3 Size.** Collection piping conveying captured rainwater shall be sized in accordance with drainage sizing requirements specified in Section 710.

**1303.7.4 Marking.** Additional marking of collection piping conveying captured rainwater for reuse shall not be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste and vent piping by Chapter 7.

**1303.8 Filtration.** Collected rainwater shall be filtered as required for the intended end use. Filters shall be ~~accessible~~ provided with *access* for inspection and maintenance. Filters shall utilize a pressure gauge or other *approved* method to provide indication when a filter requires servicing or replacement. Filters shall be installed with shutoff valves installed immediately upstream and downstream to allow for isolation during maintenance. Non-potable water for use within a building shall be colored blue or green.

**1303.9 Disinfection.** Where the intended application for rainwater requires disinfection or other treatment or both, it shall be disinfected as determined by a registered design professional to ensure that the required water quality is delivered at the point of use. Where chlorine is used for disinfection or treatment, water shall be tested for residual chlorine in accordance with ASTM D1253. The levels of residual chlorine shall not exceed that allowed for the intended use in accordance with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

**1303.10 Storage tanks.** Storage tanks utilized in non-potable rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall comply with Sections 1301.9 and 1303.10.1 through 1303.10.3.

**1303.10.1 Location.** Storage tanks shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table 1303.10.1.

**TABLE 1303.10.1  
LOCATION OF RAINWATER STORAGE TANKS**

| ELEMENT                                     | MINIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE<br>FROM STORAGE TANK (feet) |
|---|---|
| Critical root zone (CRZ) of protected trees | 2   |
| Lot line adjoining private lots             | 5   |
| Seepage pits                                | 5   |
| Septic tanks                                | 5   |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**1303.10.2 Inlets.** Storage tank inlets shall be designed to introduce collected rainwater into the tank with minimum turbulence, and shall be located and designed to avoid agitating the contents of the storage tank.

**1303.10.3 Outlets.** Outlets shall be located ~~at least~~ not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the bottom of the storage tank and shall not skim water from the surface.

**1303.11 Valves.** Valves shall be supplied on rainwater collection and conveyance systems in accordance with Section 1303.11.1.

**1303.11.1 Backwater valve.** Backwater valves shall be installed on each overflow and tank drain pipe. Backwater valves shall be in accordance with Section ~~715~~-714.

**1303.11.2 (P2912.11.1) Influent diversion.**

A means shall be provided to divert storage tank influent to allow for maintenance and repair of the storage tank system.

**1303.12 Pumping and control system.** Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be ~~easily accessible and removable~~ provided with access that allows for removal in order to perform repair, maintenance and cleaning. The minimum flow rate and flow pressure delivered by the pumping system shall be appropriate for the application and in accordance with Section 604.

**1303.13 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator.** Where the water pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the rainwater distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8.

**Exception:** Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures.

**1303.14 Distribution piping.** Distribution piping utilized in rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall comply with Sections 1303.14.1 through 1303.14.3.

**Exception:** Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

**1303.14.1 Materials, joints and connections.** Distribution piping shall conform to the standards and requirements specified in Section 605 for non-potable water.

**1303.14.2 Design.** Distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section 604 for the intended application.

**1303.14.3 Labeling and marking.** Non-potable rainwater distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section 1301.6.

**1303.15 Tests and inspections.** Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1303.15.1 through ~~1303.15.8~~-1303.15.9.

**1303.15.1 Roof gutter inspection and test.** Deleted.

**1303.15.2 Roofwasher test.** Deleted.

**1303.15.3 Collection pipe and vent test.** Drain, waste and vent piping used for rainwater collection and conveyance systems shall be tested in accordance with Section 312.

**1303.15.4 Storage tank test.** Storage tanks shall be tested with either air or water in accordance with Section ~~1301.9.11~~1301.9.10.

**1303.15.5 Water supply system test.** The testing of makeup water supply piping and distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5.

**1303.15.6 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies.** Deleted.

**1303.15.7 Inspection of vermin and insect protection.** Inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to verify that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into the storage tank and piping systems in accordance with Section 1301.7.

**1303.15.8 Water quality test.** The quality of the water for the intended application shall be verified at the point of use in accordance with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

## NONPOTABLE WATER SYSTEMS

**1303.15.9 Collected raw rainwater quality.** ASTM E2727 shall be used to determine what, if any, site conditions impact the quality of collected raw rainwater and whether those site conditions require treatment of the raw water for the intended end use or make the water unsuitable for specific end uses.

**1303.16 Operation and maintenance manuals.** Operation and maintenance manuals shall be supplied with rainwater collection and conveyance systems in accordance with Sections 1303.16.1 through 1303.16.4.

**1303.16.1 Manual.** A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied with all systems.

**1303.16.2 Schematics.** The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, and the locations and a list of all system components, including manufacturer and model number.

**1303.16.3 Maintenance procedures.** The manual shall provide a maintenance schedule and procedures for all system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts, including filters, shall be noted along with part numbers.

**1303.16.4 Operations procedures.** The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures, as well as detailed operating procedures.

## SECTION 1304 RECLAIMED WATER SYSTEMS

**1304.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the construction, installation, alteration and repair of systems supplying non-potable reclaimed water.

**1304.2 Water pressure-reducing valve or regulator.** Where the reclaimed water pressure supplied to the building exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the reclaimed water distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8.

**Exception:** Service lines to sill cocks and outside hydrants, and main supply risers where pressure from the mains is reduced to 80 psi (552 kPa) or less at individual fixtures

**1304.3 Reclaimed water systems.** The design of the reclaimed water systems shall conform to ~~ASTM E2635 and~~ *accepted engineering practice*.

**1304.3.1 Distribution piping.** Distribution piping shall comply with Sections 1304.3.1.1 through 1304.3.1.3.

**Exception:** Irrigation piping located outside of the building and downstream of a backflow preventer.

**1304.3.1.1 Materials, joints and connections.** Distribution piping conveying reclaimed water shall conform to standards and requirements specified in Section 605 for non-potable water.

**1304.3.1.2 Design.** Distribution piping systems shall be designed and sized in accordance with Section 604 for the intended application.

**1304.3.1.3 Labeling and marking.** Non-potable ~~rainwater~~ distribution piping labeling and marking shall comply with Section 1301.6.

**1304.4 Tests and inspections.** Tests and inspections shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1304.4.1.

**1304.4.1 Water supply system test.** The testing of makeup water supply piping and reclaimed water distribution piping shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5.

**1304.4.2 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies.** ~~Deleted.~~

CHAPTER 14

**SUBSURFACE ~~LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION~~ GRAYWATER SOIL AB-  
SORPTION SYSTEMS**

Deleted.

DRAFT

## CHAPTER 15

# REFERENCED STANDARDS

*This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.*

## ANSI

American National Standards Institute  
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor  
New York, NY 10036

~~A118.10—99~~A118.10—14 Specifications for Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation

421.5.2.5, 421.5.2.6

~~Z4.3—95~~ Minimum Requirements for Nonsewered Waste-disposal Systems

~~Z21.22—99~~ (R2003) Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems with Addenda ~~Z21.22a—2000~~ (R2003) and ~~Z21.22b—2001~~ (R2003)

504.2, 504.4, 504.4.1

~~CSA B45.5—11/IAPMO Z124—11~~ Plastic Plumbing Fixtures

407.1, 415.1, 416.1, 416.2, 417.1, 418.1, 419.1, 420.1

## ASHRAE

ASHRAE  
1791 Tullie Circle NE  
Atlanta, GA 30329

ASHRAE 18—2008 (RA13)

Method of Testing for Rating Drinking-Water Coolers with Self-contained Mechanical Refrigeration (ANSI/ASHRAE Approved)

410.1

## AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating, & Refrigeration Institute  
4100 North Fairfax Drive, Suite 200  
Arlington, VA 22203

| Standard<br>reference<br>number        | Title   | Refer-<br>in code<br>section number |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|
| <del>1010—02</del><br><del>410.1</del> | <del>Self-contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking Water Coolers</del> |                                     |

## API

American Petroleum Institute  
1220 L Street NW  
Washington, DC 20005-  
4070

| Standard<br>reference<br>number            | Title  | Refer-<br>in code<br>section number |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|
| <del>12D—2008</del><br><del>1302.7.2</del> | <del>Specification for Field Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids, effective April 1, 2009</del> |                                     |

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

~~12F—2008~~ ~~Specification for Shop-Welded Tanks for Storage of Production Liquids, effective April 1 2009~~  
~~1302.7.2~~

---

## ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers  
Two Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10016-5990

~~A112.1.2—2004~~ A112.1.2—2022 Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems (For Plumbing Fixtures and Water Connection Receptors)  
406.1, 409.2, Table 608.1, 608.14.1

~~A112.1.3—2000 (R2011)~~ A112.1.3—2000 (R2020) Air Gap Fittings for Use with Plumbing Fixtures, Appliances and Appurtenances  
406.1, 409.2, Table 608.1, 608.14.1, 1102.6

~~A112.3.1—2007 (R2022)~~ A112.3.1—2007 (R2022) Stainless Steel Drainage Systems for Sanitary, DWV, Storm and Vacuum Applications Above and Below Ground

413.1, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, 1102.6, Table 1102.7

~~ASME A112.3.4—2013/~~

~~CSA B45.9—2013~~ Macerating Toilet Systems and Related Components

~~712.4.1~~

~~A112.4.1—2009 (R2019)~~ A112.4.1—2009 (R2019) Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes

504.6

~~A112.4.2—2009~~ A112.4.2—2020/CSA B45.16—20 Water Closet Personal Hygiene Devices

412.9

~~A112.4.3—1999 (R2010)~~ A112.4.3—1999 (R2020) Plastic Fittings for Connecting Water Closets to the Sanitary Drainage System  
405.4

~~A112.4.4—2017~~ Plastic Push-Fit Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Fittings

705.2.4

~~A112.4.14—2004 (R2010)~~ A112.4.14—2004 (R2019) Manually Operated, Quarter-Turn Shutoff Valves for Use in Plumbing Systems  
Table 605.7

~~A112.14.6—2010~~ FOG (Fats, Oils and Greases) Disposal Systems

~~1003.3.4, 1003.3.6~~

~~A112.6.1M—1997 (R2008)~~ A112.6.1M—1997 (R2017) Floor Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use  
405.4.3

~~A112.6.2—2000 (R2010)~~ A112.6.2—2022 Framing-Affixed Supports for Off-the-Floor Water Closets with Concealed Tanks

405.4.3

~~A112.6.3—2001 (R2007)~~ A112.6.3—2019 Floor and Trench Drains

413.1

~~A112.6.4—2003 (R2008)~~ A112.6.4—2003 (R2020) Roof, Deck, and Balcony Drains

1102.6

~~A112.6.7—2010~~ A112.6.7—2010 (R2020) ~~Enameled and Epoxy-coated Cast iron and PVC Plastic~~ Sanitary Floor Sinks

414.1

~~A112.6.9—2005 (R2010)~~ A112.6.9—2005 (R2020) Siphonic Roof Drains

1107.1



~~A112.14.1—2003~~ A112.14.1—2003 (R2022) Backwater Valves

714.2

~~A112.14.3—2000~~ A112.14.3—2021 Grease Interceptors

1003.3.5

~~A112.14.4—2001~~

~~(Reaffirmed 2007)~~ A112.14.4—2001 (R2022) Grease Removal Devices

1003.3.5

A112.14.6—2010 (R2020) FOG (Fats, Oils and Greases) Disposal Systems

1003.3, 1003.3.5, 1003.3.7

~~A112.18.1—2012/CSA B125.1—2012~~ A112.18.1—2020/CSA B125.1—2020 Plumbing Supply Fittings

412.1, 412.2, 412.3, 412.4, 412.6, 412.8, Table 605.7, 607.4, 608.2

~~A112.18.2—2011/CSA B125.2—2011~~ A112.18.2—2019/CSA B125.2—19 Plumbing Waste Fittings

412.1.2, 421.3.1

~~A112.18.3—2002 (Reaffirmed 2008)~~ A112.18.3—2002 (R2020) Performance Requirements for Backflow Protection Devices and Systems in Plumbing Fixture Fittings

412.2, 412.6

~~A112.18.6/CSA B125.6—2009~~ A112.18.6—2021/CSA B125.6—21 Flexible Water Connectors

605.6

~~A112.18.9—2011~~ Protectors/Insulators for Exposed Waste and Supplies on Accessible Fixtures

404.3

~~A112.19.1/—2013 CSA B45.2—2013~~ A112.19.1—2020/CSA B45.2—20 Enameled Cast Iron and Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures

407.1, 410.1, 418.1, 419.1, 421.1, 422.1

~~A112.19.2—2013/CSA B45.1—13~~ A112.19.2—2020/CSA B45.1—20 Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures

401.2, 405.10, 407.1, 408.1, 410.1, 418.1, 419.1, 421.1, 422.1, 424.1, 425.1

~~A112.19.3—2008/CSA B45.4—08(R2013)~~ A112.19.3—2021/CSA B45.4—2021 Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures

405.9, 407.1, 408.1, 410.1, 418.1, 419.1, 421.1, 425.1

~~A112.19.5/—2011 CSA B45.15—2011~~ A112.19.5—2021/CSA B45.15—2021 Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks

415.4

~~A112.19.7M—2012/CSA B45.10—2012~~ A112.19.7—2012/CSA B45.10—2012 (R2021) Hydromassage Bathtub Systems

426.1, 426.4

~~A112.19.12—2006~~ A112.19.12—2019 Wall Mounted and Pedestal Mounted, Adjustable, Elevating, Tilting and Pivoting Lavatory, Sink and Shampoo Bowl Carrier Systems and Drain Waste Systems

419.4

~~A112.19.14—2006(R2011)~~ A112.19.14—2013 (R2018) Six-liter Water Closets Equipped with a Dual Flushing Device

425.1

~~A112.19.15—2005~~ A112.19.15—2012 (R2017) Bathtub/Whirlpool Bathtubs with Pressure Sealed Doors

407.4, 426.6

~~A112.19.19—2006~~ A112.19.19—2021 Vitreous China Nonwater Urinals

424.1

~~A112.21.3—1985(R2007)~~ A112.21.3—1985 (R2017) Hydrants for Utility and Maintenance Use

Table 608.1, 608.14.6

~~A112.36.2M—1991 (R2008)~~ A112.36.2M—1991 (R2017) Cleanouts

708.1.11.2

~~ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16—2011~~ ASSE 112.3.4—2020/CSA B45.9—20 Macerating Toilet Systems and Waste Pumping Systems for Plumbing Fixtures

405.5, 712.4.1

ASSE 1002—2020/ASME A112.1002—2020/CSA B125.12—2020 Anti-Siphon Fill Valves for Water Closet Tanks

415.3.1, Table 608.1

~~ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16—2011~~ ASSE 1016—2020/ASME A112.1016—2020/CSA B125.16—2020 Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations

20182024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE®

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

412.3, 412.4, 607.4

**ASSE 1037—2015/ASME A112.1037—2015/CSA B125.37—2015 Pressurized Flushing Devices for Plumbing Fixtures**

415.2

**ASSE 1016/ ASME A112.1016/ CSA B125.16 2011 Performance Requirements for Individual Thermostatic, Pressure Balancing and Combination Control Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings**

424.3, 424.4, 607.4

**ASSE 1070—2020/ASME A112.1070—2020/CSA B125.1070—20 Water Temperature Limiting Devices**

408.3, 412.5, 412.10, 419.5, 423.3, 607.1.2

**B1.20.1—1983(R2006) B1.20.1—2019 Pipe Threads, General Purpose (inch)**

605.10.3, 605.12.4, 605.14.3, 605.17.1, 705.2.3, 705.5.4, 705.8.1, 705.10.3

**B16.3—2011 B16.3—2021 Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings Classes 150 and 300**

Table 1102.7

**B16.4—2011 B16.4—2021 Gray Iron Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.9—2007 B16.9—2018 Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.11—2011 B16.11—2021 Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.12—2009 B16.12—2009 (R2019) Cast Iron Threaded Drainage Fittings**

Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.15—2011 B16.15—2018 Cast Alloy Threaded Fittings: Class 125 and 250**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.18—2012 B16.18—2018 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.22—2001(R2010) B16.22—2018 Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.23—2011 B16.23—2021 Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings DWV**

Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.26—2011 B16.26—2018 Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.28—1994 B16.28—1994 Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.29—2012 B16.29—2017 Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings (DWV)**

Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**B16.34—2009 B16.34—2020 Valves—Flanged, Threaded and Welding End**

Table 605.7

**B16.51—2011 B16.51—2018 Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings**

Table 605.5

---

## ASPE

American Society of Plumbing Engineers  
6400 Shafer Ct., Suite 350  
Rosemont, IL 60018-4914

**45—2013 Siphonic Roof Drainage Systems**

1107.1

**ASPE/IAPMO Z1034—2015 Test Method for Evaluating Roof Drain Performance**

1102.6

---

## ASSE

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASSE International  
18927 Hickory Creek Drive, Suite 220  
Mokena, IL 60448

~~1001-08~~ **1001—2017 Performance Requirements for Atmospheric Type Vacuum Breakers**

415.2, Table 608.1, 608.14.6, 608.17.4.1

~~1002-08~~ **Performance Requirements for Antisiphon Fill Valves (Ballecocks) for Gravity Water Closet Flush Tanks**

~~425.3.1, Table 608.1~~

**1003—09 Performance Requirements for Water Pressure Reducing Valves**

604.8

~~1004-08~~ **1004—2016 Performance Requirements for Commercial Dishwashing Machines**

409.1

**1005—99 Performance Requirements for Water Heater Drain Valves**

501.3

**1008—06 Performance Requirements for Plumbing Aspects of Food Waste Disposer Units**

413.1

**1010—04 Performance Requirements for Water Hammer Arresters**

604.9

~~1011-04~~ **1011—2016 Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers**

Table 608.1, 608.14.6

**1012—09 Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventers with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent**

Table 608.1, 608.14.3, 608.17.2, 608.17.10

~~1013-09~~ **1013—2011 Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers and Reduced Pressure Principle Fire Protection Backflow Preventers**

Table 608.1, 608.14.2, 608.17.2

~~1015-09~~ **1015—2017 Performance Requirements for Double Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies**

607.1.2, Table 608.1, 608.14.7

~~1017-2010~~ **1017—2009 Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems**

501.2, 613.1

~~1018-2010~~ **1018—2001 Performance Requirements for Trap Seal Primer Valves; Potable Water Supplied**

1002.4.1.2

~~1019-2010~~ **1019—2011 (R2016) Performance Requirements for Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants, Freeze Resistant, Automatic Draining Type**

Table 608.1, 608.14.6

**1020—04 Performance Requirements for Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly**

Table 608.1, 608.14.5

~~1022-03~~ **1022—2017 Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventer for Beverage Dispensing Equipment**

Table 608.1, 608.17.1.1, 608.17.1.2

~~1024-04~~ **1024—2017 Performance Requirements for Dual Check Valve Type Backflow Preventers, Anti-siphon-type, Residential Applications 605.3.1,**

Table 608.1, 608.14.9, 608.17.1.2

**1035—08 Performance Requirements for Laboratory Faucet Backflow Preventers**

Table 608.1, 608.14.6

~~1044-2010~~ **1044—2015 Performance Requirements for Trap Seal Primer Devices—Drainage Types and Electronic Design Types**

1002.4.1.3

~~1047-2009~~ **1047—2011 Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies**

Table 608.1, 608.14.2

~~1048-2009~~ **1048—2011 Performance Requirements for Double Check Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies**

Table 608.1, 608.14.7

**1049—2009 Performance Requirements for Individual and Branch Type Air Admittance Valves for Chemical Waste Systems**

901.3, 918.8

**1050—2009 Performance Requirements for Stack Air Admittance Valves for Sanitary Drainage Systems**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

- 918.1
- 1051—2009 Performance Requirements for Individual and Branch Type Air Admittance Valves for Sanitary Drainage Systems**  
918.1
- ~~1052—2004~~ 1052—2016 Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Backflow Preventers**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.6
- ~~1055—2009~~ 1055—2018 Performance Requirements for Chemical Dispensing Systems**  
608.14.8
- ~~1056—2010~~ 1056—2013 Performance Requirements for Spill Resistant Vacuum Breaker**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.5
- ~~1060—2006~~ 1060—2017 Performance Requirements for Outdoor Enclosures for Fluid Conveying Components**  
608.15.1
- ~~1061—2010~~ 1061—2015 Performance Requirements for Push Fit Fittings**  
Table 605.5, 605.14.4, 605.16.3
- ~~1062—2006~~ 1062—2017 Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated, Flow Reduction (TAFR) Valves to Individual Supply Fittings**  
412.7
- 1064—2006 (R2011) Performance Requirements for Backflow Prevention Assembly Field Test Kits**  
312.10.2
- ~~1066—2009~~ 1066—1997 Performance Requirements for Individual Pressure Balancing In-line Valves for Individual Fixture Fittings**  
604.11
- 1069—05 Performance Requirements for Automatic Temperature Control Mixing Valves**  
412.4
- ~~1070—04 Performance Requirements for Water temperature Limiting Devices~~**  
408.3, 416.5, 423.3, 424.5, 607.1.2
- 1071—2012 Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Plumbed Emergency Equipment**  
411.3, 412.10, 412.5, 419.5, 423.3, 607.1.2
- 1072—07 Performance Requirements for Barrier Type Floor Drain Tap Seal Protection Devices**  
1002.4.1.4
- 1079—2005 Performance Requirements for Dielectric Pipe Unions**  
605.23.1, 605.23.3
- 1081—2014 Performance Requirements for Backflow Preventers with Integral Pressure Reducing Boiler Feed Valve and Intermediate Atmospheric Vent Style for Domestic and Light Commercial Water Distribution Systems**  
608.14.3, 608.17.2
- 1082—2018 Performance Requirements for Water Heaters with Integral Temperature Control Devices for Hot Water Distribution Systems.**  
412.10, 607.1.1
- 1084—2018 Performance Requirements for Water Heaters with Temperature Limiting Capacity**  
412.5, 607.1.2
- 1085—2018 Performance Requirements for Water Heaters for Emergency Equipment**  
411.3, 607.1.1, 607.1.2
- ~~5013—2009~~ 5013—2015 Performance Requirements for Testing Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly (RPA) and Reduced Pressure Fire Protection Backflow Preventers (RFP)**  
312.10.2
- ~~5015—2009~~ 5015—2015 Performance Requirements for Testing Double Check Valve Backflow Prevention Assemblies (DC) and Double Check Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies (DCF)**  
312.10.2
- ~~5020—2009~~ 5020—2015 Performance Requirements for Testing Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assemblies (PVBA)**  
312.10.2
- ~~5047—98~~ 5047—2015 Performance Requirements for Testing Reduced Pressure Detector Fire Protection Backflow Prevention Assemblies (RPDA)**  
312.10.2

~~5048-2009~~ **5048—2015** Performance Requirements for Testing Double Check Valve Detector Assembly (DCDA)

312.10.2

**5052—98** Performance Requirements for Testing Hose Connection Backflow Preventers

312.10.2

~~5056-98~~ **5056—2015** Performance Requirements for Testing Spill Resistant Vacuum Breaker (SRVB)

312.10.2

**ASSE 1002—2020/ASME A112.1002—2020/CSA B125.12—2020** Anti-Siphon Fill Valves for Water Closet Tanks

415.3.1, Table 608.1

**ASSE 1016—2020/ASME A112.1016—2020/CSA B125.16—2020** Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations

412.3, 412.4, 607.4

**ASSE 1037—2015/ASME A112.1037—2015/CSA B125.37—15** Pressurized Flushing Devices for Plumbing Fixtures

415.2

**ASSE 1070—2020/ASME A112.1070—2020/CSA B125.1070—20** Water Temperature Limiting Devices

408.3, 412.5, 412.10, 419.5, 423.3, 607.1.2

## ASTM

ASTM International  
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

~~A53/A53M—12~~ **A53/A53M—2018** Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated Welded and Seamless Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 702.1

~~A74-13A~~ **A74—17** Specification for Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 708.1.6, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7

**A269/A269M-15a** Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

Table 605.3

~~A312/A312M—13a~~ **A312/A312M—2018** Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5, 605.22.2

~~A733-2003(2009)e1~~ **A733—16** Specification for Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples

Table 605.8

~~A778-01(2009)e1~~ **A778/A778M—16** Specification for Welded Unannealed Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubular Products

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5

~~A888-13A~~ **A888—2018** Specification for Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Application

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7

~~B32-08~~ **B32—08(2014)** Specification for Solder Metal

605.12.3, 605.13.6, 705.5.3, 705.6.1

~~B42-10~~ **B42—15a** Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 702.1

~~B43-09~~ **B43—15** Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes

Table 605.4, Table 702.1

~~B75-11~~ **B75/B75M—11** Specification for Seamless Copper Tube

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

~~B88-09~~ **B88—2016** Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

**B152/B152M—13** Specification for Copper Sheet, Strip Plate and Rolled Bar

402.3, 415.3.3, 902.2

~~B251-10~~ **B251/B251M—2017** Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

**2018/2024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE®**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

**~~B302-12~~ B302—17 Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 702.1

**~~B306-09~~ B306—13 Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV)**

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 1102.4

**~~B447—12a~~ B447—12a Specification for Welded Copper Tube**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4

**~~B687—1999(2011)~~ B687—1999(2016) Specification for Brass, Copper and Chromium-plated Pipe Nipples**

Table 605.8

**~~B813-10~~ B813—16 Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube**

605.12.3, 605.13.6, 705.5.3, 705.6.1

**~~B828-02(2010)~~ B828—2016 Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings**

605.12.3, 605.13.6, 705.5.3, 705.6.1

**~~C4-04(2009)~~ C4—04(2018) Specification for Clay Drain Tile and Perforated Clay Drain Tile**

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5

**~~C14-11~~ C14—15a Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain and Culvert Pipe**

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

**~~C76-13a~~ C76—2018A Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe**

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

**~~C425—2004(2009)~~ C425—2004(2018) Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings**

705.11, 705.16

**~~C443-12~~ C443—2012(2017) Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets**

705.4, 705.16

**~~C564-12~~ C564—14 Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings**

705.3.2, 705.3.3, 705.16

**~~C700-13~~ C700—2018 Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength, and Perforated**

Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5

**~~C1053—2000(2010)~~ C1053—2000(2015) Specification for Borosilicate Glass Pipe and Fittings for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV) Applications**

Table 702.1, Table 702.4

**~~C1173-10e1~~ C1173—2018 Specification for Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Piping System**

705.2.1, 705.5, 705.10.1, 705.11, 705.12.2, 705.16

**~~C1277-12~~ C1277—2018 Specification for Shielded Coupling Joining Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings**

705.3.3

**~~C1440-08~~ C1440—2017 Specification for Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gasket Materials for Drain, Waste, and Vent (DWV), Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems**

705.16

**~~C1460-08~~ C1460—2017 Specification for Shielded Transition Couplings for Use with Dissimilar DWV Pipe and Fittings Above Ground**

705.16

**~~C1461-2008~~ C1461—2008(2017) Specification for Mechanical Couplings Using Thermoplastic Elastomeric (TPE) Gaskets for Joining Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) Sewer, Sanitary and Storm Plumbing Systems for Above and Below Ground Use**

705.19

**~~C1540-2011~~ C1540—2018 Specification for Heavy Duty Shielded Couplings Joining Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings**

705.3.3

**~~C1563-13~~ C1563—2008(2017) Standard Test Method for Gaskets for Use in Connection with Hub and Spigot Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary Drain, Waste, Vent and Storm Piping Applications**

705.3.2

**~~D1253-08~~ D1253—14 Standard Test Method For Residual Chlorine in Water**

1301.2.1, 1303.9

**~~D1527—99(2005)~~ D1527—99(2005) Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80**

Table 605.3

- ~~D1785-12~~ **D1785—2015E1** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120  
Table 605.3
- ~~D2235-04(2011)~~ **D2235—2004(2016)** Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings  
605.10.2, 705.2.2
- D2239—12a** Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Controlled Inside Diameter  
Table 605.3
- ~~D2241-09~~ **D2241—15** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series)  
Table 605.3
- D2282—99(2005)** Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)  
Table 605.3
- ~~D2464-06~~ **D2464—15** Specification for Threaded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80  
Table 605.5, 605.21.3
- ~~D2464-06~~ **D2466—2017** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40  
Table 605.5
- ~~D2467-06~~ **D2467—15** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80  
Table 605.5
- D2468—96a** Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40  
Table 605.5
- ~~D2564—2012~~ **D2564—2012(2018)** Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems  
605.21.3, 705.10.2, 705.14.2
- ~~D2609-02(2008)~~ **D2609—15** Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe  
Table 605.5
- ~~D2657—2007~~ **D2657—2007(2015)** Practice for Heat Fusion-joining of Polyolefin Pipe and Fitting Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings  
605.18.2, 705.12.1
- ~~D2661-11~~ **D2661—14E1** Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings  
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 705.2.2, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7
- ~~D2665—2012~~ **D2665—2014** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings  
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7
- ~~D2672-96a(2009)~~ **D2672—14** Specification for Joints for IPS PVC Pipe Using Solvent Cement  
Table 605.3
- D2680—01(2014)** Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping  
Table 702.3
- ~~D2683-10e1~~ **D2683—14** Standard Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing  
Table 605.5, Table 702.4, 716.5
- ~~D2729-11~~ **D2729—2017** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings  
Table 1102.5, Table 1403.2
- D2737—2012a** Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing  
Table 605.3
- D2751—05** Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Sewer Pipe and Fittings  
Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7
- ~~D2846/D2846M—09BE1~~ **D2846/D2846M—2017BE1** Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems  
Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5, 605.14.2, 605.15.2
- ~~D2855-96(2010)~~ **D2855—2015** Standard Practice for Making Solvent-cemented Joints with Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings  
605.21.3, 705.10.2
- D2949—10** Specification for 3.25-in. Outside Diameter Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings
- 20182024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE®**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

~~D3034-08~~ **D3034—2016** Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings

Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7

~~D3035-2012e1~~ **D3035—15** Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter  
Table 605.3

**D3138—2016** Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Transition Joints Between Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-pressure Piping Components

705.16.4

**D3139—98(2011)** Specification for Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals

605.10.1, 605.22.1

~~D3212-07~~ **D3212—07(2013)** Specification for Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals

705.2.1, 705.10.1, 705.12.2, 705.15

~~D3261-2012~~ **D3261—2016** Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing

Table 605.5

~~D3311-11~~ **D3311—2017** Specification for Drain, Waste and Vent (DWV) Plastic Fittings Patterns

Table 1102.7

~~D4068-09~~ **D4068—2017** Specification for Chlorinated Polyethylene (CPE) Sheeting for Concealed Water-containment Membrane

421.5.2.2

~~D4551-12~~ **D4551—2017** Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Flexible Concealed Water-containment Membrane

421.5.2.1

~~E2635-08~~ **E2635—14** Standard Practice for Water Conservation Through In-Situ Water Reclamation

1302.1

~~E2727-10~~ **E2727—2018** Standard Practice for the Assessment of Rainwater Quality

1303.15.9

**F405—05** Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings

Table 1102.5, Table 1403.2

~~F409-12~~ **F409—2017** Specification for Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings

412.1.2, Table 1102.7

~~F437-09~~ **F437—15** Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80

Table 605.5

~~F438-09~~ **F438—2017** Specification for Socket-type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40

Table 605.5

~~F439-12~~ **F439—13** Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80

Table 605.5

~~F441/F441M-13~~ **F441/F441M—15** Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80

Table 605.3, Table 605.4

~~F442/F442M-13~~ **F442/F442M—13e1** Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)

Table 605.3, Table 605.4

~~F477-10~~ **F477—14** Specification for Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe

605.23, 705.16

~~F493-10~~ **F493—14** Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings

605.14.2, 605.15.2

~~F628-08~~ **F628—2012E2** Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe with a Cellular Core

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 705.2.2, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7

~~F656-10~~ **F656—2015** Specification for Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings

605.21.3, 705.10.2, 705.14.2

**F667/F667M—2016** Standard Specification for 3 through 24 in. Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings



Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5

**F714—2013 Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter**  
Table 702.3

~~F876—2013~~ **F876—2017 Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.4

~~F877—2011~~ **F877—2018A Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems**  
Table 605.5

~~F891—10~~ **F891—2016 Specification for Coextruded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe with a Cellular Core**  
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7

~~F1055—13~~ **F1055—2016A Standard Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and Cross-linked Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing**  
Table 605.5

**F1216-09 Standard for Cured-In-Place Piping (CIPP)**  
718.1, 718.2

~~F1281—11~~ **F1281—2017 Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/ Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5, 605.20.1, Table E105.1

~~F1282—10~~ **F1282—2017 Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5, 605.20.1

~~F1412—09~~ **F1412—2016 Specification for Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings for Corrosive Waste Drainage**  
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.4, 705.13.1, 901.3

~~F1476—07~~ **F1476—07(2013) Standard Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications**  
Table 605.5, 605.13.3, 605.17.3, 605.22.2, 605.22.3

~~F1488—09~~ **F1488—2014E1 Specification for Coextruded Composite Pipe**  
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1403.2

**F1504—2014 Standard Specification for Folded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) for Existing Sewer and Conduit Rehabilitation**  
717.6

~~F1548—2001(2006)~~ **F1548—2001(2018) Standard Specification for the Performance of Fittings for Use with Gasketed Mechanical Couplings Used in Piping Applications**  
Table 605.5

~~F1673—2010~~ **F1673—2010(2016) Standard Specification for Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Corrosive Waste Drainage Systems**  
Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 705.14.1

~~F1807—2013~~ **F1807—2018 Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing**  
Table 605.5

~~F1866—07~~ **F1866—2018 Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Schedule 40 Drainage and DWV Fabricated Fittings**  
Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**F1871—2011 Standard Specification for Folded/Formed Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Pipe Type A for Existing Sewer and Conduit Rehabilitation**  
717.6

~~F1960—12~~ **F1960—2018 Specification for Cold Expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing**  
Table 605.5

~~F1970—12~~ **F1970—2018 Special Engineered Fittings, Appurtenances or Valves for Use in Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) OR Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Systems**  
Table 605.7

~~F1974—09~~ **F1974—09(2015) Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-linked Polyethylene/ Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe**  
Table 605.5, 605.20.1

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

**F1986—2001(2011) Specification for Multilayer Pipe, Type 2, Compression Fittings and Compression Joints for Hot and Cold Drinking Water Systems**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5

**~~F2080—12~~ F2080—2016 Specifications for Cold-expansion Fittings with Metal Compression-sleeves for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe**

Table 605.5

**~~F2098—08~~ F2098—2015 Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Fittings**

Table 605.5

**~~F2159—11~~ F2159—2018 Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing**

Table 605.5

**F2262—09 Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Tubing OD Controlled SDR9 Table 605.3,**

Table 605.4

**~~F2306/F2306M—2013~~ F2306/F2306M—2018 12" to 60" Annular Corrugated Profile-wall Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings for Gravity Flow Storm Sewer and Subsurface Drainage Applications**

Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7

**~~F2389—10~~ F2389—2017A Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5, Table 605.7, 605.19.1

**~~F2434—09~~ F2434—14 Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/ Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX AL-PEX) Tubing**  
Table 605.5

**F2561—17 Standard Practice for Rehabilitation of a Sewer Service Lateral and its Connection to the Main Using a One Piece Main and Lateral Cured-in-Place Liner**

718.1

**F2599—16 Standard Practice for The Sectional Repair of Damaged Pipe by Means of an Inverted Cured-in-Place Liner**

718.1

**F2648/F2648M—2017 Standard Specification for 2 to 60 inch [50 to 1500 mm] Annular Corrugated Profile Wall Polyethylene (PE) Pipe and Fittings for Land Drainage Applications**

Table 1102.4

**~~F2735—2009~~ F2735—2009(2016) Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing**

Table 605.5

**F2736—13e1 Standard Specification for 6 to 30 in. [152 to 762 mm] Polypropylene (PP) Corrugated Single Wall Pipe and Double Wall Pipe**

Table 702.3

**F2764/F2764M—2018 Standard Specification for 30 to 60 in. [750 to 1500 mm] Polypropylene (PP) Triple Wall Pipe and Fittings for Non-pressure Sanitary Sewer Applications**

Table 702.3

**~~F2769—10~~ F2769—2018 Polyethylene or Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Tubing and Distribution Systems**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5

**~~F2831—11~~ F2831—2012(2017) Standard Practice for Internal Non Structural Epoxy Barrier Coating Material Used in Rehabilitation of Metallic Pressurized Piping Systems**

601.5

**~~F2855—11~~ F2855—12 Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride)/Aluminum/Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC/AL/ CPVC) Composite Pressure Tubing**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4

**F2881/F2881M—2018 Standard Specification for 12 to 60 in. [300 to 1500 mm] Polypropylene (PP) Dual Wall Pipe and Fittings for Non-pressure Storm Sewer Applications**

Table 1102.4

**F3226/F3226M—16 Standard Specification for Metallic Press-Connect Fittings for Piping and Tubing Systems**

Table 605.5

**F3240—17 Standard Practice for Installation of Seamless Molded Hydrophilic Gaskets (SMHG) for Long Term Watertightness of Cured-in-Place Rehabilitation of Main and Lateral Pipelines**

718.1

## AWS

American Welding Society  
8669 NW 36 Street, #130  
Miami, FL 33166

**A5.8M/A5.8—2011 A5.8M/A5.8—2011-AMD1 Specifications for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding**

605.12.1, 605.13.1, 705.5.1, 705.6.1

## AWWA

American Water Works Association  
6666 West Quincy Avenue  
Denver, CO 80235

**C104/A21.4—08 C104/A21.4—16 Cement-mortar Lining for Ductile-iron Pipe and Fittings**

605.3, 605.5

**C110/A21.10—12 Ductile-iron and Gray-iron Fittings**

Table 605.5, Table 702.4, Table 1102.7

**C111/A21.11—17 Rubber-gasket Joints for Ductile-iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings**

605.11

**C115/A21.15—11 Flanged Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile-iron or Gray-iron Threaded Flanges**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4

**C151/A21.51—09 C151/A21.51—17 Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast for Water**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4

**C153—00/A21.53—11 Ductile-iron Compact Fittings for Water Service**

Table 605.5

**C500—09 Standard for Metal-seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service**

Table 605.7

**C504—10 C504—15 Standard for Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves**

Table 605.7

**C507—11 C507—15 Standard for Ball Valves, 6 In. Through 60 in. (150 mm through 1,500 mm).**

Table 605.7

**C510—07 C510—17 Double Check Valve Backflow Prevention Assembly**

Table 608.1, 608.14.7

**C511—07 C511—17 Reduced-pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assembly**

Table 608.1, 608.14.2, 608.17.2

**C651—05 C651—14 Disinfecting Water Mains**

610.1

**C652—11 Disinfection of Water-storage Facilities**

610.1

**C901—08 C901—1C6 Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing 3/4 inch (19 mm) Through 3 inch (76 mm) for Water Service**

Table 605.3

**C904—08 C904—16 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pressure Tubing 1/2 inch (13 mm) Through 3 inch (76 mm) for Water Service**

Table 605.3

**D100—05 Standard for Welded Carbon Steel Tanks for Water Storage**

1302.7.2

**D115—06 Standard for Tendon Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks**

1302.7.2

**D120—09 Standard for Thermosetting Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic Tanks**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

~~1302.7.2~~

---

## CISPI

Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute  
2401 Fieldcrest Dr.  
Mundelein, IL 60060

~~301-04a~~ **301—18** Specification for Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5, Table 1102.7

~~310-04~~ **310—18** Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast-iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications

705.3.3

---

## CSA

CSA Group  
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road  
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

~~A257.1M-2009~~ **A257.1—14** Non-reinforced Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

~~A257.2-2009~~ **A257.2—14** Reinforced Circular Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, Sewer Pipe and Fittings

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

~~A257.3M-2009~~ **A257.3—14** Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Manhole Sections and Fittings Using Rubber Gaskets

705.4, 705.16

~~ASME A112.3.4—2013/CSA B45.9—13~~ **ASME A112.3.4—2020/CSA B45.9—20** Macerating Systems and Waste Pumping Systems for Plumbing Fixtures

405.5, 712.4.1

**ASME A112.4.2—2020/CSA B45.16—20** Water Closet Personal Hygiene Devices 412.9

~~ASME A112.18.1—2012/CSA B125.1—2012~~ **ASME A112.18.1—2018/CSA B125.1—18** Plumbing Supply Fittings 412.1, 412.2, 412.3, 412.4, 412.6, 412.8, Table 605.7, 607.4, 608.2

~~ASME A112.18.2—2011/CSA B125.2—2011~~ **ASME A112.18.2—2015/CSA B125.2—2015** Plumbing Waste Fittings 412.1.2, 421.3.1

**ASME A112.18.6—2021/CSA B125.6—21** Flexible Water Connectors 605.6

~~ASME A112.19.1—2013/CSA B45.2—2013~~ **ASME A112.19.1—2020/CSA B45.2—20** Enameled Cast-iron and Enameled Steel Plumbing Fixtures

407.1, 410.1, 418.1, 419.1, 421.1, 422.1

**A112.19.2—2013/CSA B45.1—13** ~~ASME A112.19.2—2020/B45.1—2020~~ Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures

401.2, 405.10, 407.1, 408.1, 410.1, 418.1, 419.1, 421.1, 422.1, 424.1, 425.1

**A112.19.3—2008/CSA B45.4—08(R2013)** ~~ASME A112.19.3—2021/CSA B45.4—2021~~ Stainless-steel Plumbing Fixtures

405.9, 407.1, 418.1, 419.1, 421.1, 425.1

~~A112.19.5/—2011 CSA B45.15—2011~~ **ASME A112.19.5—2021/CSA B45.15—2021** Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals and Tanks

415.4

~~A112.19.7M—2012/CSA B45.10—2012~~ **ASME A112.19.7—2012/CSA B45.10—2012(R2021)** Hydromassage Bathtub Systems

426.1, 426.4

**ASSE 1002—2020/ASME A112.1002—2020/CSA B125.12—2020** Anti-Siphon Fill Valves for Water Closet Tanks

415.3.1, Table 608.1

~~ASSE 1016/ASME A112.1016/CSA B125.16—2011~~ **ASSE 1016—2020/ASME A112.1016—2020/CSA B125.16—2020** Performance Requirements for Automatic Compensating Valves for Individual Showers and Tub/Shower Combinations

412.3, 412.4, 607.4

**ASSE 1037—2015/ASME A112.1037—2015/CSA B125.37—15** Pressurized Flushing Devices for Plumbing Fixtures

415.2

**ASSE 1070—2020/ASME A112.1070—2020/CSA B125.1070—20** Water Temperature Limiting Devices

408.3, 412.5, 412.10, 419.5, 423.3, 607.1.2

- ~~B64.1.1~~—11 B64.1.1—11(R2016) Vacuum Breakers, Atmospheric Type (AVB)**  
415.2, Table 608.1, 608.14.6, 608.17.4.1
- ~~B64.1.2~~—11 B64.1.2—11(R2016) Pressure Vacuum Breakers, (PVB)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.5
- ~~B64.1.3~~—11 B64.1.3—11(R2016) Spill Resistant Pressure Vacuum Breakers (SRPVB)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.5
- ~~B64.2~~—11 B64.2—11(R2016) Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.6
- ~~B64.2.1~~—11 B64.2.1—11(2016) Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection (HCVB) with Manual Draining Feature**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.6
- ~~B64.2.1.1~~—11 B64.2.1.1—11(2016) Hose Connection Dual Check Vacuum Breakers (HCDVB)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.6
- ~~B64.2.2~~—11 B64.2.2—11(2016) Vacuum Breakers, Hose Connection Type (HCVB) with Automatic Draining Feature**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.6
- ~~B64.3~~—11 B64.3—11(R2016) Backflow Preventers, Dual Check Valve Type with Atmospheric Port (DCAP)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.3, 608.17.2
- ~~B64.4~~—11 B64.4—11(R2016) Backflow Preventers, Reduced Pressure Principle Type (RP)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.2, 608.17.2
- ~~B64.4.1~~—11 B64.4.1—11(R2016) Reduced Pressure Principle for Fire Sprinklers (RPF)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.2
- ~~B64.5~~—11 B64.5—11(R2016) Double Check Backflow Preventers (DCVA)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.7
- ~~B64.5.1~~—11 B64.5.1—11(R2016) Double Check Valve Backflow Preventer for Fire Systems (DCVAF)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.7
- ~~B64.6~~—11 B64.6—11(R2016) Dual Check Valve (DuC) Backflow Preventers**  
605.3.1, Table 608.1, 608.14.9
- ~~B64.7~~—11 B64.7—11(R2016) Laboratory Faucet Vacuum Breakers (LFVB)**  
Table 608.1, 608.14.6
- ~~B64.10~~—11 B64.10—17 Manual for the Selection and Installation of Backflow Prevention Devices**  
312.10.2
- ~~B64.10.1~~—11 B64.10.1—17 Maintenance and Field Testing of Backflow Preventers**  
312.10.2
- ~~B79—08(R2008)~~ B79—08(R2018) Commercial and Residential Drains and Cleanouts**  
413.1
- ~~B125.3—2012~~ B125.3—2018 Plumbing Fittings**  
408.3, 412.4, 412.5, 415.2, 415.3.1, 423.3, Table 605.7, Table 608.1
- ~~B137.1—13~~ B137.1—17 Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Cold-water Pressure Services**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.5
- ~~B137.1—13~~ B137.2—17 Polyvinylchloride, PVC, Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications**  
Table 605.5
- ~~B137.1—13~~ B137.3—17 Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.5, 605.21.3, 705.10.2, 705.14.2
- ~~B137.1—13~~ B137.5—17 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5
- ~~B137.1—13~~ B137.6—17 CPVC Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5
- ~~B137.1—13~~ B137.9—17 Polyethylene Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems**  
Table 605.3, Table 605.5, 605.20.1

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

~~B137.1—13~~ **B137.10—17 Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Composite Pressure-pipe Systems**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5, 605.20.1

~~B137.1—13~~ **B137.11—17 Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5

**B137.18—17 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature Resistance (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications**

Table 605.3, Table 605.4, Table 605.5

~~B181.1—11~~ **B181.1—18 Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene ABS Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Pipe Fittings**

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 705.2.2, 714.2, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.7

~~B181.2—11~~ **B181.2—18 Polyvinylchloride PVC and Chlorinated Polyvinylchloride (CPVC) Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Pipe Fittings**

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, 705.10.2, 705.14.2, 714.2

~~B181.3—11~~ **B181.3—18 Polyolefin and Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Laboratory Drainage Systems**

Table 702.1, Table 702.2, Table 702.3, Table 702.4, 705.13.1

~~B182.1—11~~ **B182.1—18 Plastic Drain and Sewer Pipe and Pipe Fittings**

705.10.2, 705.14.2, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5

~~B182.1—11~~ **B182.2—18 PSM Type Polyvinylchloride PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings**

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5

~~B182.1—11~~ **B182.4—18 Profile Polyvinylchloride PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings**

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4, Table 1102.5

~~B182.1—11~~ **B182.6—18 Profile Polyethylene (PE) Sewer Pipe and Fittings for Leak-proof Sewer Applications**

Table 1102.5

~~B182.1—11~~ **B182.8—18 Profile Polyethylene (PE) Storm Sewer and Drainage Pipe and Fittings**

Table 1102.5

~~B182.1—11~~ **B182.13—18 Profile Polypropylene (PP) Sewer Pipe and Fittings for Leak-proof Sewer Applications**

Table 702.3, Table 1102.4

~~B356—10~~ **B356—10(R2015) Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Systems**

604.8

~~B481.1—12~~ **B481.1—12(R2017) Testing and Rating of Grease Interceptors Using Lard**

1003.3.4

~~B481.3—12~~ **B481.3—12(R2017) Sizing, Selection, Location and Installation of Grease Interceptors**

1003.3.5

~~B483.1—14~~ **B483.1—07(R2017) Drinking Water Treatment Systems**

611.1, 611.2

~~B602—10~~ **B602—16 Mechanical Couplings for Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Sewer Pipe**

705.2.1, 705.3.3, 705.5, 705.10.1, 705.11, 705.12.2, 705.16

**CSA B45.5—17/IAPMO Z124—2017 with errata dated August 2017 Plastic Plumbing Fixtures**

407.1, 418.1, 419.1, 419.2, 421.1, 422.1, 424.1, 425.1, 425.1.2

**CSA B805-18/ICC 805-2018 Rainwater Harvesting Systems**

1301.1

---

## IAPMO

IAPMO Group  
4755 E. Philadelphia Street  
Ontario, CA 91761 USA

**ASPE/IAPMO Z1034—2015 Test Method for Evaluating Roof Drain Performance**

1102.6

**CSA B45.5—11/IAPMO Z124-2011 Plastic Plumbing Fixtures**

407.1, 415.1, 416.1, 416.2, 417.1, 419.1, 420.1

**CSA B45.5—17/IAPMO Z124—2017 with errata dated August 2017 Plastic Plumbing Fixtures**

20182024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE®

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

407.1, 418.1, 419.1, 419.2, 421.1, 422.1, 424.1, 425.1, 425.1.2

### **IAPMO/ANSI Z1157—2014e1 Ball Valves**

Table 605.7

### **Z1001—2007 Z1001—2016 Prefabricated Gravity Grease Interceptors**

1003.3.7

---

## ICC

International Code Council, Inc.  
500 New Jersey Ave, NW 6th Floor  
Washington, DC 20001

### **IBC—15 IBC—21 International Building Code®**

201.3, 202, 307.1, 307.2, 307.3, 308.2, 309.1, 309.2, 310.1, 310.3, 315.1, 403.1, Table 403.1, 403.1.2, 403.3.1, 403.4, 404.1, 407.3, 421.6, 502.4, 606.5.2, 1106.5, 1301.9.3, 1303.6, 1402.1

### **ICC 900/SRCC 300—2020 Solar Thermal System Standard**

502.1

### **ICC A117.1—2009 ICC A117.1—17 Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities**

404.2, 410.3

### **IEBC—15 IEBC—21 International Existing Building Code®**

102.2.1

### **IECC—15 IECC—21 International Energy Conservation Code®**

313.1, 607.2.1, 607.5

### **IFC—15 IFC—21 International Fire Code®**

201.3, 1201.1

### **IFGC—15 IFGC—21 International Fuel Gas Code®**

101.2, 201.3, 502.1, 502.1.1

### **IMC—15 IMC—21 International Mechanical Code®**

201.3, 307.6, 310.1, 502.1, 502.1.1, 612.1, 1202.1

### **IPSDC—15 IPSDC—21 International Private Sewage Disposal Code®**

701.2

### **IRC—15 IRC—21 International Residential Code®**

101.2

---

## ISEA

International Safety Equipment Association  
1901 N. Moore Street, Suite 808  
Arlington, VA 22209

### **ANSI/ISEA Z358.1—2009 ANSI/ISEA Z358.1—2014 Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment**

411.1

---

## MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, Inc.  
127 Park St. NE  
Vienna, VA 22180-4602

### **SP-67—2011 Butterfly Valves**

Table 605.7

### **SP-70—2011 SP-70—2013 Gray Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends**

Table 605.7

### **SP-71—2011 SP-71—2018 Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends**

Table 605.7

### **SP-72—2010 SP-72—2010a Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-welding Ends for General Service**

### **2018/2024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE®**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

Table 605.7

**SP-78—2011 Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends**

Table 605.7

**~~SP-80-2008~~ SP-80—2013 Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves**

Table 605.7

**SP-110—2010 Ball Valves, Threaded, Socket Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends (incl. a 2010 Errata Sheet)**

Table 605.7

**SP-122—2017 Plastic Industrial Ball Valves**

Table 605.7

**SP-139—2014 Copper Alloy Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves for Low Pressure/Low Temperature Plumbing Applications**

Table 605.7

---

## NFPA

National Fire Protection Association  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

**~~51-13~~ 51—18 Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting and Allied Processes**

1203.1

**~~55-13~~ 55—19 Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code**

1203.1

**~~70-14~~ 70—20 National Electrical Code**

502.1, 504.3, 1113.1.3

**~~99-15~~ 99—21 Health Care Facilities Code**

1202.1

---

## NGWA

National Ground Water Association  
601 Dempsey Road  
Westerville, OH 43081

**NGWA/ANSI 01—14 Water Well Construction Standard**

602.3.1

---

## NSF

NSF International  
789 N. Dixboro Road P.O. Box 130140  
Ann Arbor, MI 48105

**~~3-2010~~ 3—2017 Commercial Warewashing Equipment**

409.1

**~~14-2011~~ 14—2018 Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials**

303.3, 611.3

**~~18-2012~~ 18—2016 Manual Food and Beverage Dispensing Equipment**

426.1

**~~42-2011~~ 42—2018 Drinking Water Treatment Units-Aesthetic Effects**

611.1, 611.3

**~~44-2012~~ 44—2018 Residential Cation Exchange Water Softeners**

611.1, 611.3

**~~50-2012~~ 50—2017 Equipment for Swimming Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs and Other Recreational Facilities**



1302.8.1

~~53—2011a~~ **53—2017** Drinking Water Treatment Units—Health Effects  
611.1, 611.3

~~58—2012~~ **58—2017** Reverse Osmosis Drinking Water Treatment Systems  
611.1, 611.2, 611.3

~~61—2012~~ **61—2018** Drinking Water System Components—Health Effects  
410.1, 412.1, 605.3, 605.4, 605.5, 605.7, 605.12.3, 605.13.6, 608.12, 611.3

~~62—2012~~ **62—2017** Drinking Water Distillation Systems  
611.1

**184—2014 Residential Dishwashers**  
~~409.1~~

~~350—2011~~ **350—2017a** Onsite Residential and Commercial Water Reuse Treatment Systems  
1302.6.1

~~359—2011~~ **359—2018** Valves for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Water Distribution Tubing Systems  
Table 605.7

~~372—2010~~ **372—2016** Drinking Water Systems Components—Lead Content  
605.2.1

---

## PDI

Plumbing and Drainage Institute  
800 Turnpike Street, Suite 300  
North Andover, MA 01845

**PDI G101 (2012) Testing and Rating Procedure for Grease Interceptors with Appendix of Sizing and Installation Data**  
1003.3.5

**PDI G102 (2009) Testing and Certification for Grease Interceptors with Fog Sensing and Alarm Devices**  
1003.3.5

---

## PSAI

Portable Sanitation Association International  
2626 E. 82nd Street, Suite 175  
Bloomington, MN 55425

**PSAI/ANSI Z4.3—16 Minimum Requirements for Nonsewered Waste-disposal Systems**  
311.1

---

## UL

UL LLC  
333 Pfingsten Road  
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

~~58—1996 Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—  
with revisions through July 27, 1998~~  
~~1302.7.2~~

~~142—2006 Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—  
with revisions through February 12, 2010~~  
~~1302.7.2~~

~~399—2008~~ **399—2017** Drinking-Water Coolers—with revisions through August 2018  
410.1

~~430—2009~~ **430—2015** Waste Disposers—with revisions through February 2018  
~~416.1~~

~~508—99~~ **508—2018** Industrial Control Equipment

**2018/2024 NORTH CAROLINA PLUMBING CODE®**

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

314.2.3

~~1316—1994 Glass Fiber Reinforced Plastic Underground Storage Tanks for Petroleum Products, Alcohols and Alcohol Gasoline Mixtures—  
with revisions through May 12, 2006~~

~~1302.7.2~~

~~1746—2007 External Corrosion Protection Systems for Steel Underground Storage Tanks~~

~~1302.7.~~

~~1795-2009~~ 1795—2016 Hydromassage Bathtubs—with revisions through December 2017

426.1

DRAFT

**APPENDIX A**  
**PLUMBING PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE**

**Deleted.**

DRAFT

**APPENDIX B**  
**RATES OF RAINFALL FOR VARIOUS CITIES**

**Deleted.**

DRAFT

## APPENDIX C

# STRUCTURAL SAFETY

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

### SECTION C101 CUTTING, NOTCHING AND BORING IN WOOD MEMBERS

**[BS] C101.1 Joist notching.** Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist, and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span.

**[BS] C101.2 Stud cutting and notching.** In exterior walls and bearing partitions, ~~any~~ a wood stud is permitted to ~~shall not~~ be cut or notched to a depth not exceeding in excess of 25 percent of its width. ~~depth. Cutting or notching of studs to a depth not greater than 40 percent of the width of the stud is permitted in nonbearing partitions supporting no loads other than the weight of the partition. In nonbearing partitions that do not support loads other than the weight of the partition, a stud shall not be cut or notched in excess of 40 percent of its depth.~~

**[BS] C101.3 Bored holes.** The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 40 percent of the stud depth. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in nonbearing partitions. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in any wall where each stud is doubled, provided that not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. The edge of the bored hole shall be not closer than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall not be located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

**[BS] C101.4 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing.** The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

**[BS] C101.5 Cutting, notching and boring holes in cold-formed steel framing.** Flanges and lips of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member and shall not exceed the dimensional limitations, penetration spacing or minimum hole edge distance as prescribed by the registered design professional. Cutting, notching and boring holes of steel floor/roof decking shall be as prescribed by the registered design professional.

**[BS] C101.6 Cutting, notching and boring holes in nonstructural cold-formed steel wall framing.** Flanges and lips of non-structural cold-formed steel wall studs shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member, shall not exceed  $\pm 1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (2538 mm) in width or 4 inches (102 mm) in length, and the holes shall not be spaced less than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center from another hole or less than 10 inches (254 mm) from the bearing end.

**APPENDIX D**  
**DEGREE DAY AND DESIGN TEMPERATURES**

Deleted.

DRAFT

## APPENDIX E

# SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

The provisions contained in this appendix are ~~not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance~~ for informational purposes only.

### SECTION E101 GENERAL

#### E101.1 Scope.

**E101.1.1 Two procedures.** This appendix outlines two procedures for sizing a water piping system (see Sections E103.3 and E104.1). The design procedures are based on the minimum static pressure available from the supply source, the head changes in the system caused by friction and elevation, and the rates of flow necessary for operation of various fixtures.

**E101.1.2 Variable conditions.** Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Accordingly, other sizing or design methods conforming to good engineering practice standards are acceptable alternatives to those presented herein.

### SECTION E102 INFORMATION REQUIRED

**E102.1 Preliminary.** Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes likely to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from most manufacturers of water meters.

#### E102.2 Demand load.

**E102.2.1 Fixture demand.** Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table E103.3(3).

**E102.2.2 Continuous demand.** Estimate continuous supply demands in gallons per minute (L/m) for items such as lawn sprinklers, sprinklers and air conditioners, ~~etc.~~, and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply.

### SECTION E103 SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

**E103.1 General.** Decide from Table 604.3 what is the desirable minimum residual pressure that should be maintained at the highest fixture in the supply system. If the highest group of fixtures contains flushometer valves, the pressure for the group should be not less than 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103.4 kPa) flowing. For flush tank supplies, the available pressure should be not less than 8 psi (55.2 kPa) flowing, except blowout action fixtures must be not less than 25 psi (172.4 kPa) flowing.

#### E103.2 Pipe sizing.

**E103.2.1 Pipe size selection.** Pipe sizes can be selected according to the following procedure or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and *approved* by the administrative authority. The sizes selected must not be less than the minimum required by this code.

**E103.2.2 Pressures and losses.** Water pipe sizing procedures are based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:

1. Pressure required at fixture to produce required flow. See Sections 604.3 and 604.5.

## APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

2. Static pressure loss or gain (due to head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.

**Example:** Assume that the highest fixture supply outlet is 20 feet (6096 mm) above or below the supply source. This produces a static pressure differential of 20 feet by 0.433 psi/foot (2096 mm by 9.8 kPa/m) and an 8.66 psi (59.8 kPa) loss.

3. Loss through water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from meter manufacturers.
4. Loss through taps in water main.
5. Losses through special devices such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.
6. Loss through valves and fittings. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to equivalent length of piping and adding to the total pipe length.
7. Loss due to pipe friction can be calculated ~~when~~ where the pipe size, the pipe length and the flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers' tables and velocity recommendations.
8. For the purposes of all examples, the following metric conversions are applicable:

1 cubic foot per minute = 0.4719 L/s

1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>

1 degree = 0.0175 rad

1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa

1 inch = 25.4 mm

1 foot = 304.8 mm

1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m

**E103.3 Segmented loss method.** The size of water service mains, *branch* mains and risers by the segmented loss method must be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss caused by the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including equivalent length of fittings. The design procedure is based on the following parameters:

- Calculated friction loss through each length of the pipe.
- A system of pressure losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the street main or other source of supply.
- The estimated peak demand, total pressure losses caused by difference in elevation, equipment, *developed length* and pressure required at most remote fixture, loss through taps in water main, losses through fittings, filters, backflow prevention devices, valves and pipe friction.

Because of the variable conditions encountered in hydraulic design, it is impractical to specify definite and detailed rules for sizing of the water piping system. Current sizing methods do not address the differences in the probability of use and flow characteristics of fixtures between types of occupancies. Creating an exact model of predicting the demand for a building is impossible and final studies assessing the impact of water conservation on demand are not yet complete. The following steps are necessary for the segmented loss method.

1. **Preliminary.** Obtain the necessary information regarding the minimum daily static service pressure in the area where the building is to be located. If the building supply is to be metered, obtain information regarding friction loss relative to the rate of flow for meters in the range of sizes to be used. Friction loss data can be obtained from manufacturers of water meters. It is essential that enough pressure be available to overcome all system losses caused by friction and elevation so that plumbing fixtures operate properly. Section 604.6 requires the water distribution system to be designed for the minimum pressure available taking into consideration pressure fluctuations. The lowest pressure must be selected to guarantee a continuous, adequate supply of water. The lowest pressure in the public main usually occurs in the summer because of lawn sprinkling and supplying water for air-conditioning cooling towers. Future demands placed on the public main as a result of large growth or expansion should ~~also~~ be considered. The available pressure will decrease as additional loads are placed on the public system.



2. **Demand load.** Estimate the supply demand of the building main and the principal branches and risers of the system by totaling the corresponding demand from the applicable part of Table E103.3(3) . When estimating peak demand sizing methods typically use water supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.) [see Table E103.3(2) ]. This numerical factor measures the load-producing effect of a single plumbing fixture of a given kind. The use of such fixture units can be applied to a single basic probability curve (or table), found in the various sizing methods [Table E103.3(3)]. The fixture units are then converted into gallons per minute (L/m) flow rate for estimating demand.
  - 2.1. Estimate continuous supply demand in gallons per minute (L/m) for items such as lawn sprinklers, sprinklers and air conditioners, etc., and add the sum to the total demand for fixtures. The result is the estimated supply demand for the building supply. Fixture units cannot be applied to constant use fixtures such as hose bibbs, lawn sprinklers and air conditioners. These types of fixtures must be assigned the gallon per minute (L/m) value.
3. **Selection of pipe size.** This water pipe sizing procedure is based on a system of pressure requirements and losses, the sum of which must not exceed the minimum pressure available at the supply source. These pressures are as follows:
  - 3.1. Pressure required at the fixture to produce required flow. See Sections 604.3 and 604.5.
  - 3.2. Static pressure loss or gain (because of head) is computed at 0.433 psi per foot (9.8 kPa/m) of elevation change.
  - 3.3. Loss through a water meter. The friction or pressure loss can be obtained from the manufacturer.
  - 3.4. Loss through taps in water main [see Table E103.3(4)].
  - 3.5. Losses through special devices such as filters, softeners, backflow prevention devices and pressure regulators. These values must be obtained from the manufacturers.
  - 3.6. Loss through valves and fittings [see Tables E103.3(5) and E103.3(6)]. Losses for these items are calculated by converting to equivalent length of piping and adding to the total pipe length.
  - 3.7. Loss caused by pipe friction can be calculated ~~when~~ where the pipe size, the pipe length and the flow through the pipe are known. With these three items, the friction loss can be determined using Figures E103.3(2) through E103.3(7). When using charts, use pipe inside diameters. For piping flow charts not included, use manufacturers' tables and velocity recommendations. Before attempting to size any water supply system, it is necessary to gather preliminary information that includes available pressure, piping material, select design velocity, elevation differences and *developed length* to most remote fixture. The water supply system is divided into sections at major changes in elevation or where *branches* lead to fixture groups. The peak demand must be determined in each part of the hot and cold water supply system ~~which that~~ includes the corresponding water supply fixture unit and conversion to gallons per minute (L/m) flow rate to be expected through each section. Sizing methods require the determination of the “most hydraulically remote” fixture to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings. The hydraulically remote fixture represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the most available pressure to operate properly. Consideration must be given to all pressure demands and losses, such as friction caused by pipe, fittings and equipment, elevation and the residual pressure required by Table 604.3. The two most common and frequent complaints about the water supply system operation are lack of adequate pressure and noise.

**TABLE E103.3(1)**  
**RECOMMENDED TABULAR ARRANGEMENT FOR USE IN SOLVING PIPE SIZING PROBLEMS**

| COL-UMN | 1  |  | 2                        | 3                            | 4                        | 5                        | 6   | 7  | 8   | 9  | 10   |
|---------|--|--|--------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---|--|---|--|--|
| Line    | Description                                |  | Lb per square inch (psi) | Gal. per min through section | Length of section (feet) | Trial pipe size (inches) | Equivalent length of fittings and valves (feet) | Total equivalent length col. 4 and col. 6 (100 feet) | Friction loss per 100 feet of trial size pipe (psi) | Friction loss in equivalent length col. 8 x col. 7 (psi) | Excess pressure over friction losses (psi) |
| A       | Service and cold water distribution piping | Minimum pressure available at main                   | 55.00                    |                              |                          |                          |   |  |   |  |  |
| B       |  | Highest pressure required at a fixture (Table 604.3) | 15.00                    |                              |                          |                          |   |  |   |  |  |

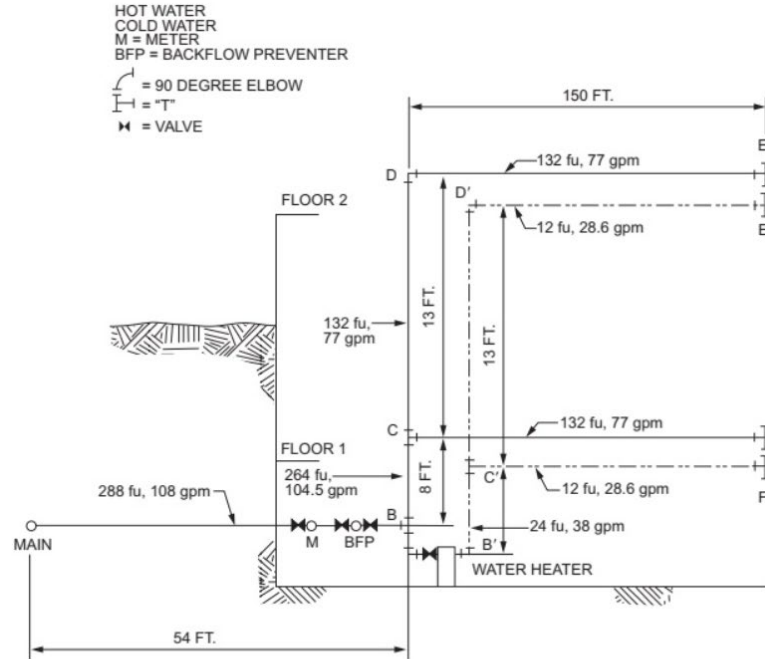
**APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM**

|   |   |  |       |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
|---|---|--|-------|-------|-----|----|-------|------|-----|------|------|
| C | ing <sup>a</sup>  | Meter loss 2" meter  | 11.00 |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| D |   | Tap in main loss 2" tap [Table E103.3(4)]                                | 1.61  |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| E |   | Static head loss 21 × 43 psi   | 9.03  |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| F |   | Special fixture loss backflow preventer                                  | 9.00  |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| G |   | Special fixture loss—Filter  | 0.00  |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| H |   | Special fixture loss—Other   | 0.00  |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| I |   | Total overall losses and requirements (Sum of Lines B through H)         | 45.64 |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
| J |   | Pressure available to overcome pipe friction (Line A minus Lines B to H) | 9.36  |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
|   | Pipe section (from diagram)<br>Cold water distribution piping | FU   | 264   |       |     |    |       |      |     |      |      |
|   |   | AB   | 288   | 108.0 | 54  | 2½ | 15.00 | 0.69 | 3.2 | 2.21 | —    |
|   |   | BC   | 264   | 104.5 | 8   | 2½ | 0.5   | 0.20 | 1.9 | 0.26 | —    |
|   |   | CD   | 132   | 77.0  | 13  | 2½ | 7.00  | 0.20 | 1.9 | 0.38 | —    |
|   |   | CF <sup>b</sup>  | 132   | 77.0  | 150 | 2½ | 12.00 | 1.62 | 1.9 | 3.08 | —    |
|   |   | DE <sup>b</sup>  | 132   | 77.0  | 150 | 2½ | 12.00 | 1.62 | 1.9 | 3.08 | —    |
| K | Total pipe friction losses (cold)                             |  |       | —     | —   | —  | —     | —    | —   | 5.93 | —    |
| L | Difference (Line J minus Line K)                              |  |       | —     | —   | —  | —     | —    | —   | —    | 3.43 |
|   | Pipe section (from diagram)<br>Hot water distribution piping  | A'B'   | 288   | 108.0 | 54  | 2½ | 12.00 | 0.69 | 3.3 | 2.21 | —    |
|   |   | B'C'   | 24    | 38.0  | 8   | 2  | 7.5   | 0.16 | 1.4 | 0.22 | —    |
|   |   | C'D'   | 12    | 28.6  | 13  | 1½ | 4.0   | 0.17 | 3.2 | 0.54 | —    |
|   |   | C'F' <sup>b</sup>  | 12    | 28.6  | 150 | 1½ | 7.00  | 1.57 | 3.2 | 5.02 | —    |
|   |   | D'E' <sup>b</sup>  | 12    | 28.6  | 150 | 1½ | 7.00  | 1.57 | 3.2 | 5.02 | —    |
| K | Total pipe friction losses (hot)                              |  |       | —     | —   | —  | —     | —    | —   | 7.99 | —    |
| L | Difference (Line J minus Line K)                              |  |       | —     | —   | —  | —     | —    | —   | —    | 1.37 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.

a. To be considered as pressure gain for fixtures below main (to consider separately, omit from “I” and add to “J”).

b. To consider separately, in K use C-F only if greater loss than above.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m.

FIGURE E103.3(1) EXAMPLE—SIZING

TABLE E103.3(2)  
LOAD VALUES ASSIGNED TO FIXTURES<sup>a</sup>

| FIXTURE                | OCCUPANCY         | TYPE OF SUPPLY CONTROL | LOAD VALUES, IN WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNITS (wsfu) |      |       |
|------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|---|------|-------|
|                        |                   |                        | Cold  | Hot  | Total |
| Bathroom group         | Private           | Flush tank             | 2.7   | 1.5  | 3.6   |
| Bathroom group         | Private           | Flushometer valve      | 6.0   | 3.0  | 8.0   |
| Bathtub                | Private           | Faucet                 | 1.0   | 1.0  | 1.4   |
| Bathtub                | Public            | Faucet                 | 3.0   | 3.0  | 4.0   |
| Bidet                  | Private           | Faucet                 | 1.5   | 1.5  | 2.0   |
| Combination fixture    | Private           | Faucet                 | 2.25  | 2.25 | 3.0   |
| Dishwashing machine    | Private           | Automatic              | —   | 1.4  | 1.4   |
| Drinking fountain      | Offices, etc.     | $\frac{3}{8}$ " valve  | 0.25  | —    | 0.25  |
| Kitchen sink           | Private           | Faucet                 | 1.0   | 1.0  | 1.4   |
| Kitchen sink           | Hotel, restaurant | Faucet                 | 3.0   | 3.0  | 4.0   |
| Laundry trays (1 to 3) | Private           | Faucet                 | 1.0   | 1.0  | 1.4   |
| Lavatory               | Private           | Faucet                 | 0.5   | 0.5  | 0.7   |
| Lavatory               | Public            | Faucet                 | 1.5   | 1.5  | 2.0   |
| Service sink           | Offices, etc.     | Faucet                 | 2.25  | 2.25 | 3.0   |
| Shower head            | Public            | Mixing valve           | 3.0   | 3.0  | 4.0   |
| Shower head            | Private           | Mixing valve           | 1.0   | 1.0  | 1.4   |

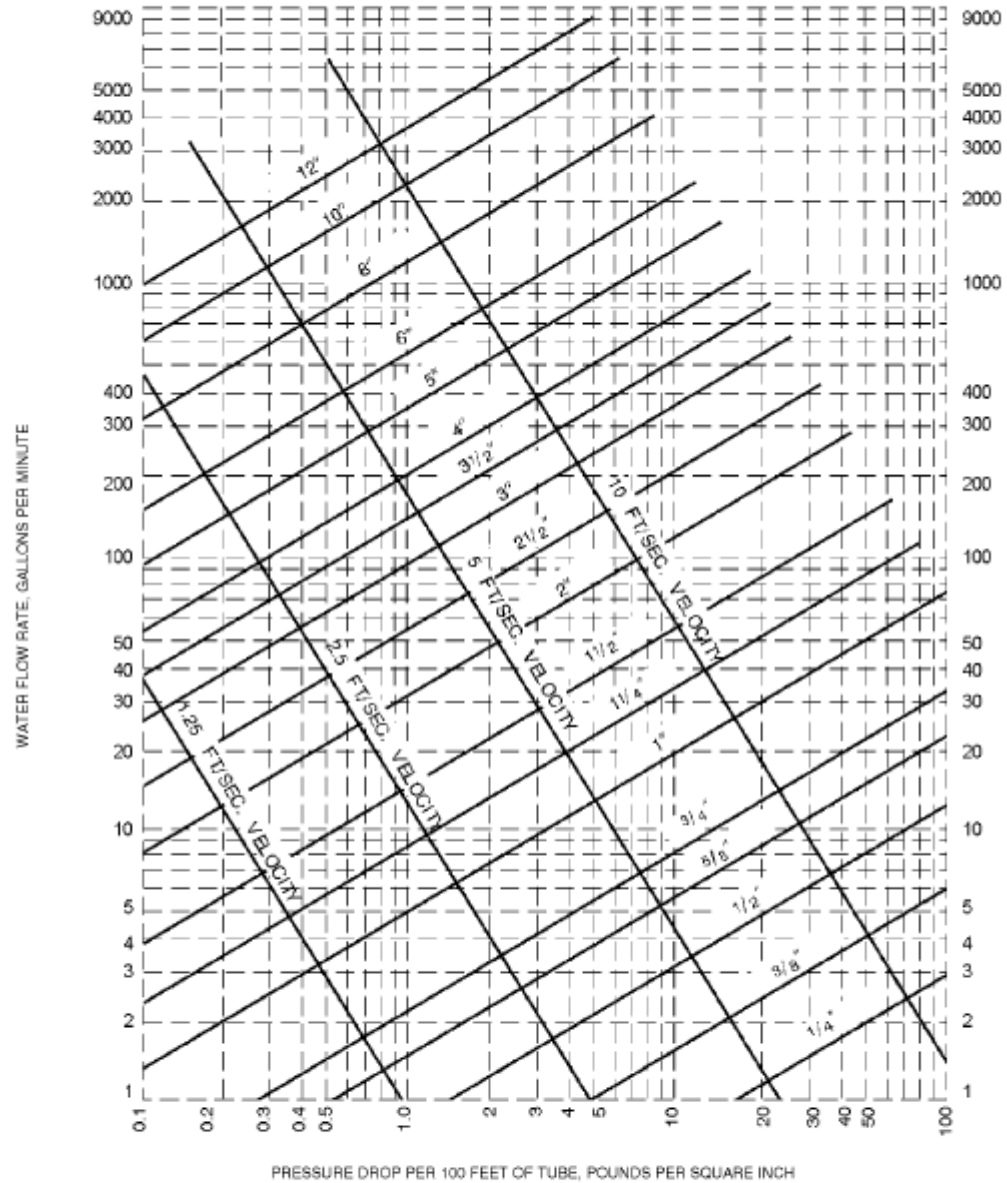
## APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

|                         |                   |   |      |      |      |
|-------------------------|-------------------|---|------|------|------|
| Urinal                  | Public            | 1" flushometer valve                            | 10.0 | —    | 10.0 |
| Urinal                  | Public            | <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " flushometer valve | 5.0  | —    | 5.0  |
| Urinal                  | Public            | Flush tank                                      | 3.0  | —    | 3.0  |
| Washing machine (8 lb)  | Private           | Automatic                                       | 1.0  | 1.0  | 1.4  |
| Washing machine (8 lb)  | Public            | Automatic                                       | 2.25 | 2.25 | 3.0  |
| Washing machine (15 lb) | Public            | Automatic                                       | 3.0  | 3.0  | 4.0  |
| Water closet            | Private           | Flushometer valve                               | 6.0  | —    | 6.0  |
| Water closet            | Private           | Flush tank                                      | 2.2  | —    | 2.2  |
| Water closet            | Public            | Flushometer valve                               | 10.0 | —    | 10.0 |
| Water closet            | Public            | Flush tank                                      | 5.0  | —    | 5.0  |
| Water closet            | Public or private | Flushometer tank                                | 2.0  | —    | 2.0  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

- a. For fixtures not listed, loads should be assumed by comparing the fixture to one listed using water in similar quantities and at similar rates. The assigned loads for fixtures with both hot and cold water supplies are given for separate hot and cold water loads and for total load. The separate hot and cold water loads being three-fourths of the total load for the fixture in each case.

## APPENDIX E



Note: Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE E103.3(2)  
FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE\* (TYPE K, ASTM B 88 COPPER TUBING)

APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

TABLE E103.3(3)  
TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND

| SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS |                      |                         | SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSHOMETER VALVES |                      |                         |
|--|----------------------|-------------------------|---|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Load   | Demand               |                         | Load  | Demand               |                         |
| (Water supply fixture units)                 | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) | (Water supply fixture units)                        | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) |
| 1  | 3.0                  | 0.04104                 | —   | —                    | —                       |
| 2  | 5.0                  | 0.0684                  | —   | —                    | —                       |
| 3  | 6.5                  | 0.86892                 | —   | —                    | —                       |
| 4  | 8.0                  | 1.06944                 | —   | —                    | —                       |
| 5  | 9.4                  | 1.256592                | 5   | 15.0                 | 2.0052                  |
| 6  | 10.7                 | 1.430376                | 6   | 17.4                 | 2.326032                |
| 7  | 11.8                 | 1.577424                | 7   | 19.8                 | 2.646364                |
| 8  | 12.8                 | 1.711104                | 8   | 22.2                 | 2.967696                |
| 9  | 13.7                 | 1.831416                | 9   | 24.6                 | 3.288528                |
| 10   | 14.6                 | 1.951728                | 10  | 27.0                 | 3.60936                 |
| 11   | 15.4                 | 2.058672                | 11  | 27.8                 | 3.716304                |
| 12   | 16.0                 | 2.13888                 | 12  | 28.6                 | 3.823248                |
| 13   | 16.5                 | 2.20572                 | 13  | 29.4                 | 3.930192                |
| 14   | 17.0                 | 2.27256                 | 14  | 30.2                 | 4.037136                |
| 15   | 17.5                 | 2.3394                  | 15  | 31.0                 | 4.14408                 |
| 16   | 18.0                 | 2.90624                 | 16  | 31.8                 | 4.241024                |
| 17   | 18.4                 | 2.459712                | 17  | 32.6                 | 4.357968                |
| 18   | 18.8                 | 2.513184                | 18  | 33.4                 | 4.464912                |
| 19   | 19.2                 | 2.566656                | 19  | 34.2                 | 4.571856                |
| 20   | 19.6                 | 2.620128                | 20  | 35.0                 | 4.6788                  |
| 25   | 21.5                 | 2.87412                 | 25  | 38.0                 | 5.07984                 |
| 30   | 23.3                 | 3.114744                | 30  | 42.0                 | 5.61356                 |
| 35   | 24.9                 | 3.328632                | 35  | 44.0                 | 5.88192                 |
| 40   | 26.3                 | 3.515784                | 40  | 46.0                 | 6.14928                 |

APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

|     |      |          |     |       |          |
|-----|------|----------|-----|-------|----------|
| 45  | 27.7 | 3.702936 | 45  | 48.0  | 6.41664  |
| 50  | 29.1 | 3.890088 | 50  | 50.0  | 6.684    |
| 60  | 32.0 | 4.27776  | 60  | 54.0  | 7.21872  |
| 70  | 35.0 | 4.6788   | 70  | 58.0  | 7.75344  |
| 80  | 38.0 | 5.07984  | 80  | 61.2  | 8.181216 |
| 90  | 41.0 | 5.48088  | 90  | 64.3  | 8.595624 |
| 100 | 43.5 | 5.81508  | 100 | 67.5  | 9.0234   |
| 120 | 48.0 | 6.41664  | 120 | 73.0  | 9.75864  |
| 140 | 52.5 | 7.0182   | 140 | 77.0  | 10.29336 |
| 160 | 57.0 | 7.61976  | 160 | 81.0  | 10.82808 |
| 180 | 61.0 | 8.15448  | 180 | 85.5  | 11.42964 |
| 200 | 65.0 | 8.6892   | 200 | 90.0  | 12.0312  |
| 225 | 70.0 | 9.3576   | 225 | 95.5  | 12.76644 |
| 250 | 75.0 | 10.026   | 250 | 101.0 | 13.50168 |
| 275 | 80.0 | 10.6944  | 275 | 104.5 | 13.96956 |

(continued)

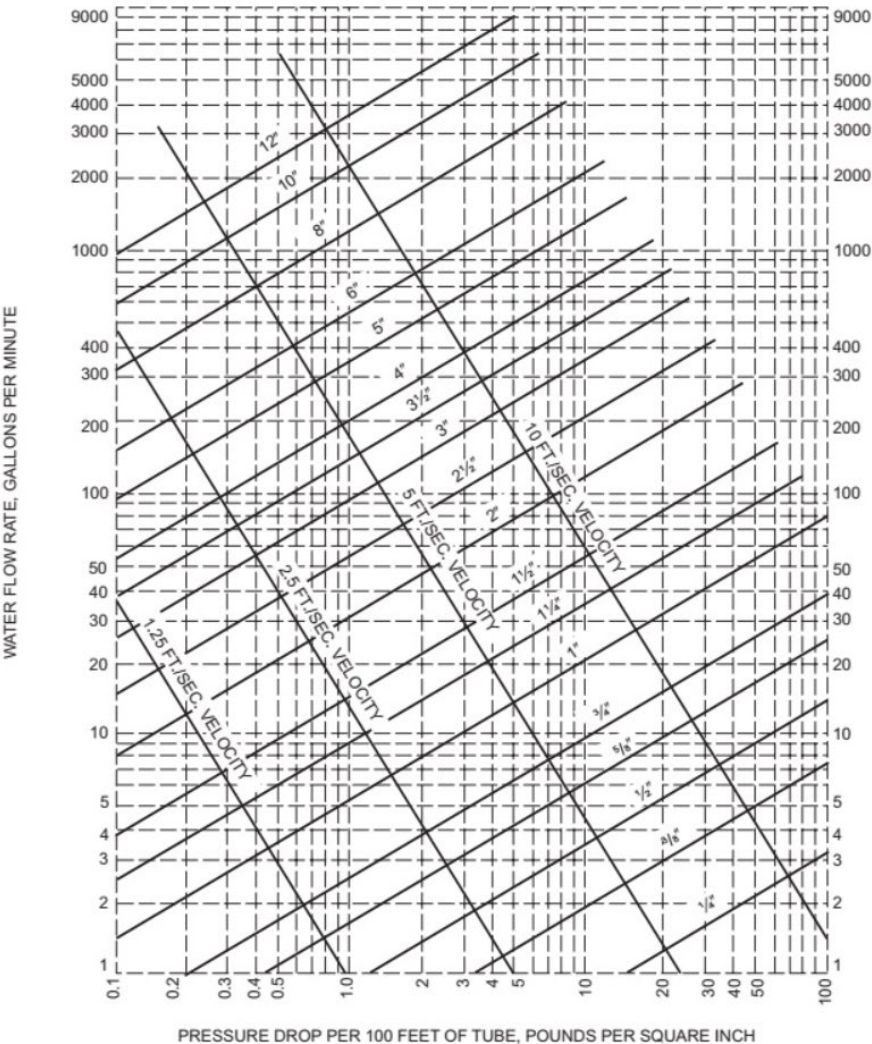
TABLE E103.3(3) —continued  
TABLE FOR ESTIMATING DEMAND

| SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSH TANKS |                      |                         | SUPPLY SYSTEMS PREDOMINANTLY FOR FLUSHOMETER VALVES |                      |                         |
|--|----------------------|-------------------------|---|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Load   | Demand               |                         | Load  | Demand               |                         |
| (Water supply fixture units)                 | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) | (Water supply fixture units)                        | (Gallons per minute) | (Cubic feet per minute) |
| 300  | 85.0                 | 11.3628                 | 300   | 108.0                | 14.43744                |
| 400  | 105.0                | 14.0364                 | 400   | 127.0                | 16.97736                |
| 500  | 124.0                | 16.57632                | 500   | 143.0                | 19.11624                |
| 750  | 170.0                | 22.7256                 | 750   | 177.0                | 23.66136                |
| 1,000  | 208.0                | 27.80544                | 1,000   | 208.0                | 27.80544                |
| 1,250  | 239.0                | 31.94952                | 1,250   | 239.0                | 31.94952                |
| 1,500  | 269.0                | 35.95992                | 1,500   | 269.0                | 35.95992                |
| 1,750  | 297.0                | 39.70296                | 1,750   | 297.0                | 39.70296                |
| 2,000  | 325.0                | 43.446                  | 2,000   | 325.0                | 43.446                  |
| 2,500  | 380.0                | 50.7984                 | 2,500   | 380.0                | 50.7984                 |
| 3,000  | 433.0                | 57.88344                | 3,000   | 433.0                | 57.88344                |

APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

|       |       |          |       |       |          |
|-------|-------|----------|-------|-------|----------|
| 4,000 | 525.0 | 70.182   | 4,000 | 525.0 | 70.182   |
| 5,000 | 593.0 | 79.27224 | 5,000 | 593.0 | 79.27224 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m, 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.28 m³ per minute.



**Note:** Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

- a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

FIGURE E103.3(3) FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE<sup>a</sup> (TYPE L, ASTM B88 COPPER TUBING)

TABLE E103.3(4)  
LOSS OF PRESSURE THROUGH TAPS AND TEES IN POUNDS PER SQUARE INCH (psi)

| GALLONS PER MINUTE | SIZE OF TAP OR TEE (inches) |      |      |       |       |   |   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|------|------|-------|-------|---|---|
|                    | 5/8                         | 3/4  | 1    | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 | 3 |
| 10                 | 1.35                        | 0.64 | 0.18 | 0.08  | —     | — | — |

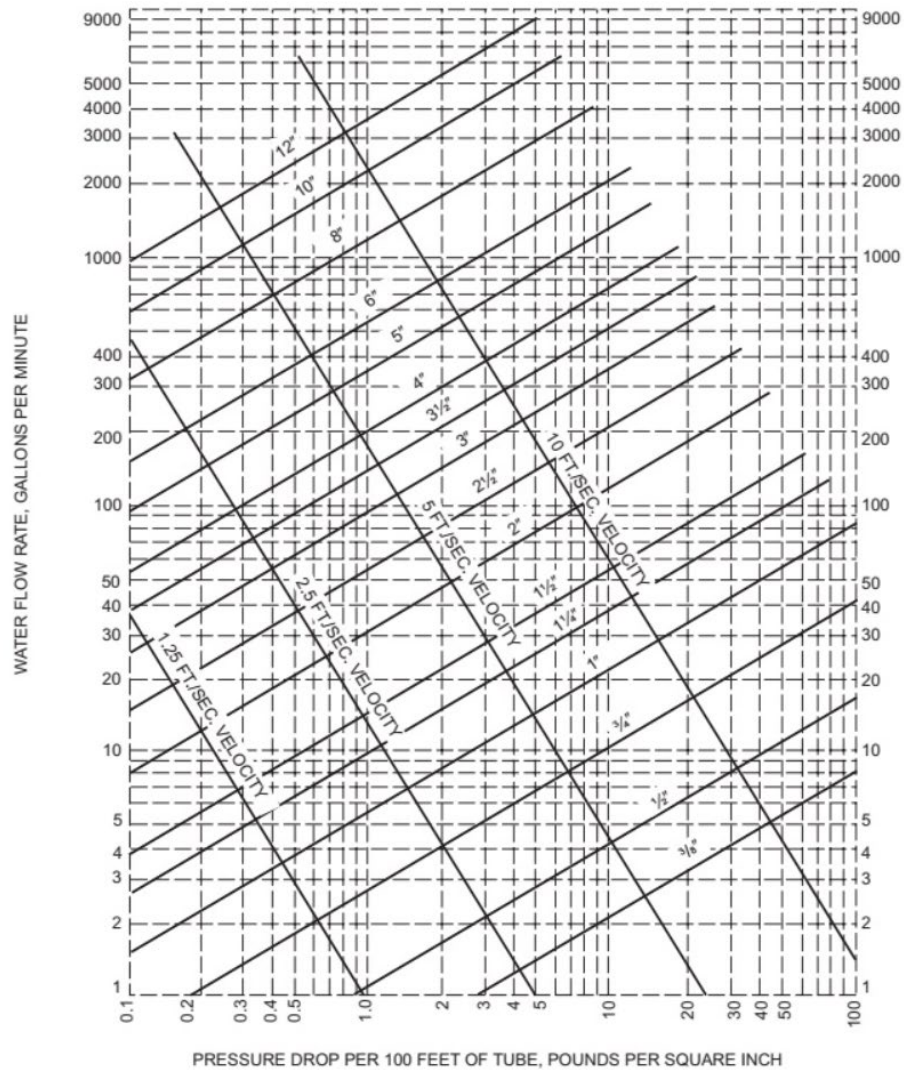


**APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM**

|     |       |       |       |       |       |       |      |
|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| 20  | 5.38  | 2.54  | 0.77  | 0.31  | 0.14  | —     | —    |
| 30  | 12.10 | 5.72  | 1.62  | 0.69  | 0.33  | 0.10  | —    |
| 40  | —     | 10.20 | 3.07  | 1.23  | 0.58  | 0.18  | —    |
| 50  | —     | 15.90 | 4.49  | 1.92  | 0.91  | 0.28  | —    |
| 60  | —     | —     | 6.46  | 2.76  | 1.31  | 0.40  | —    |
| 70  | —     | —     | 8.79  | 3.76  | 1.78  | 0.55  | 0.10 |
| 80  | —     | —     | 11.50 | 4.90  | 2.32  | 0.72  | 0.13 |
| 90  | —     | —     | 14.50 | 6.21  | 2.94  | 0.91  | 0.16 |
| 100 | —     | —     | 17.94 | 7.67  | 3.63  | 1.12  | 0.21 |
| 120 | —     | —     | 25.80 | 11.00 | 5.23  | 1.61  | 0.30 |
| 140 | —     | —     | 35.20 | 15.00 | 7.12  | 2.20  | 0.41 |
| 150 | —     | —     | —     | 17.20 | 8.16  | 2.52  | 0.47 |
| 160 | —     | —     | —     | 19.60 | 9.30  | 2.92  | 0.54 |
| 180 | —     | —     | —     | 24.80 | 11.80 | 3.62  | 0.68 |
| 200 | —     | —     | —     | 30.70 | 14.50 | 4.48  | 0.84 |
| 225 | —     | —     | —     | 38.80 | 18.40 | 5.60  | 1.06 |
| 250 | —     | —     | —     | 47.90 | 22.70 | 7.00  | 1.31 |
| 275 | —     | —     | —     | —     | 27.40 | 7.70  | 1.59 |
| 300 | —     | —     | —     | —     | 32.60 | 10.10 | 1.88 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

## APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM



**Note:** Fluid velocities in excess of 5 to 8 feet/second are not usually recommended.

**For SI:** 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

- a. This chart applies to smooth new copper tubing with recessed (streamline) soldered joints and to the actual sizes of types indicated on the diagram.

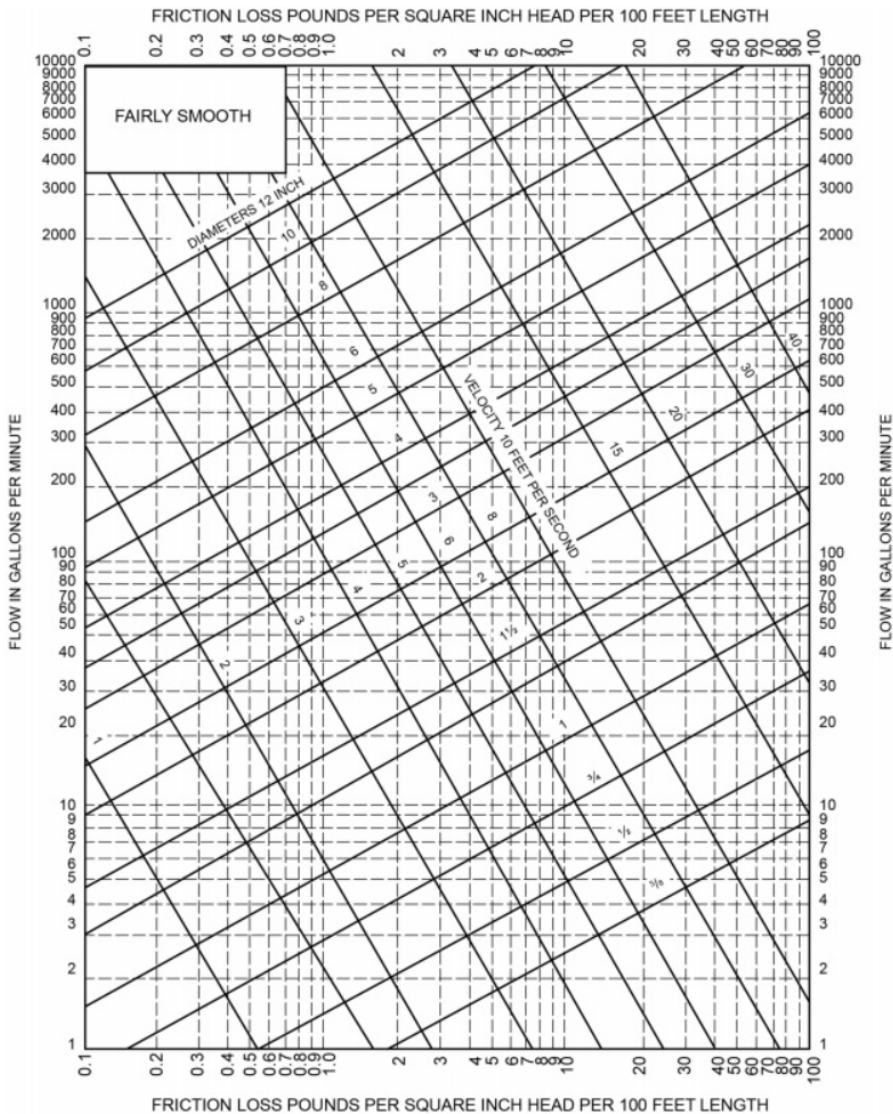
**FIGURE E103.3(4) FRICTION LOSS IN SMOOTH PIPE<sup>a</sup> (TYPE M, ASTM B88 COPPER TUBING)**

**TABLE E103.3(5)**  
**ALLOWANCE IN EQUIVALENT LENGTHS OF PIPE FOR FRICTION LOSS IN VALVES AND THREADED FITTINGS (feet)**

| FITTING OR VALVE | PIPE SIZE (inches) |     |     |       |       |      |       |      |
|------------------|--------------------|-----|-----|-------|-------|------|-------|------|
|                  | 1/2                | 3/4 | 1   | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2    | 2 1/2 | 3    |
| 45-degree elbow  | 1.2                | 1.5 | 1.8 | 2.4   | 3.0   | 4.0  | 5.0   | 6.0  |
| 90-degree elbow  | 2.0                | 2.5 | 3.0 | 4.0   | 5.0   | 7.0  | 8.0   | 10.0 |
| Tee, run         | 0.6                | 0.8 | 0.9 | 1.2   | 1.5   | 2.0  | 2.5   | 3.0  |
| Tee, branch      | 3.0                | 4.0 | 5.0 | 6.0   | 7.0   | 10.0 | 12.0  | 15.0 |
| Gate valve       | 0.4                | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.8   | 1.0   | 1.3  | 1.6   | 2.0  |
| Balancing valve  | 0.8                | 1.1 | 1.5 | 1.9   | 2.2   | 3.0  | 3.7   | 4.5  |

|                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Plug-type cock     | 0.8  | 1.1  | 1.5  | 1.9  | 2.2  | 3.0  | 3.7  | 4.5  |
| Check valve, swing | 5.6  | 8.4  | 11.2 | 14.0 | 16.8 | 22.4 | 28.0 | 33.6 |
| Globe valve        | 15.0 | 20.0 | 25.0 | 35.0 | 45.0 | 55.0 | 65.0 | 80.0 |
| Angle valve        | 8.0  | 12.0 | 15.0 | 18.0 | 22.0 | 28.0 | 34.0 | 40.0 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

a. This chart applies to smooth new steel (fairly smooth) pipe and to actual diameters of standard-weight pipe.

FIGURE E103.3(5) FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY SMOOTH PIPE<sup>a</sup>

TABLE E103.3(6)  
PRESSURE LOSS IN FITTINGS AND VALVES EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE<sup>a</sup> (feet)

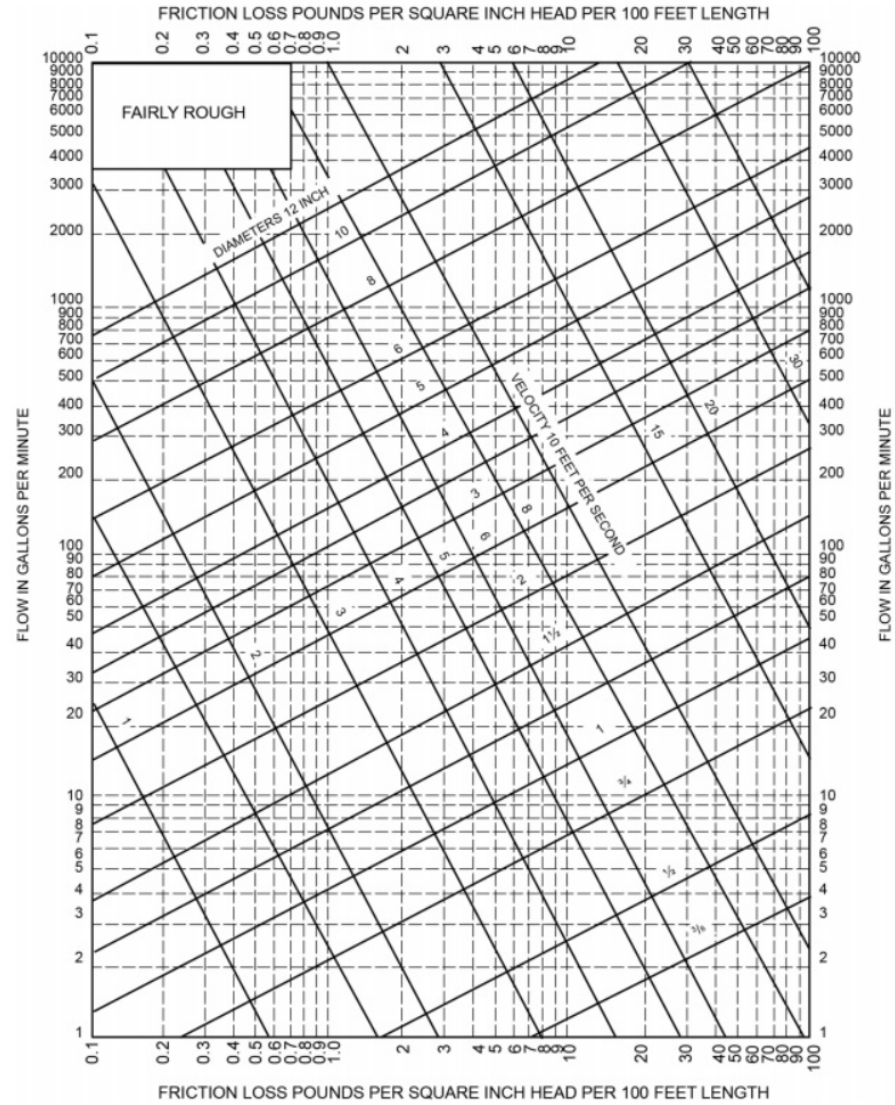
| NOMINAL OR | FITTINGS | Coupling | VALVES |
|------------|----------|----------|--------|
|------------|----------|----------|--------|

# APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

| STANDARD<br>SIZE (inches) | Standard Ell |           | 90-Degree Tee |              |     | Ball | Gate | Butterfly | Check |
|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|-----|------|------|-----------|-------|
|                           | 90 Degree    | 45 Degree | Side Branch   | Straight Run |     |      |      |           |       |
| 3/8                       | 0.5          | —         | 1.5           | —            | —   | —    | —    | —         | 1.5   |
| 1/2                       | 1            | 0.5       | 2             | —            | —   | —    | —    | —         | 2     |
| 5/8                       | 1.5          | 0.5       | 2             | —            | —   | —    | —    | —         | 2.5   |
| 3/4                       | 2            | 0.5       | 3             | —            | —   | —    | —    | —         | 3     |
| 1                         | 2.5          | 1         | 4.5           | —            | —   | 0.5  | —    | —         | 4.5   |
| 1 1/4                     | 3            | 1         | 5.5           | 0.5          | 0.5 | 0.5  | —    | —         | 5.5   |
| 1 1/2                     | 4            | 1.5       | 7             | 0.5          | 0.5 | 0.5  | —    | —         | 6.5   |
| 2                         | 5.5          | 2         | 9             | 0.5          | 0.5 | 0.5  | 0.5  | 7.5       | 9     |
| 2 1/2                     | 7            | 2.5       | 12            | 0.5          | 0.5 | —    | 1    | 10        | 11.5  |
| 3                         | 9            | 3.5       | 15            | 1            | 1   | —    | 1.5  | 15.5      | 14.5  |
| 3 1/2                     | 9            | 3.5       | 14            | 1            | 1   | —    | 2    | —         | 12.5  |
| 4                         | 12.5         | 5         | 21            | 1            | 1   | —    | 2    | 16        | 18.5  |
| 5                         | 16           | 6         | 27            | 1.5          | 1.5 | —    | 3    | 11.5      | 23.5  |
| 6                         | 19           | 7         | 34            | 2            | 2   | —    | 3.5  | 13.5      | 26.5  |
| 8                         | 29           | 11        | 50            | 3            | 3   | —    | 5    | 12.5      | 39    |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

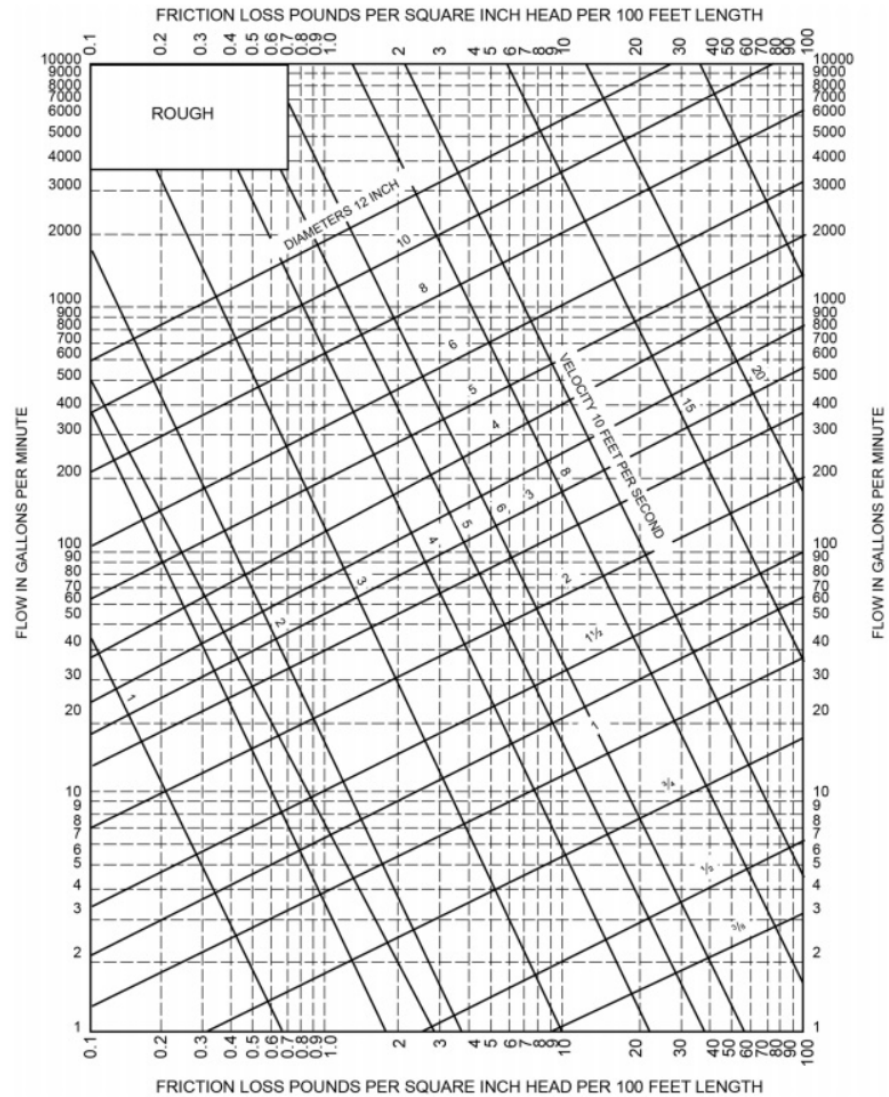
- Allowances are for streamlined soldered fittings and recessed threaded fittings. For threaded fittings, double the allowances shown in the table. The equivalent lengths presented above are based on a C factor of 150 in the Hazen-Williams friction loss formula. The lengths shown are rounded to the nearest half-foot.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

- a. This chart applies to fairly rough pipe and to actual diameters, which in general will be less than the actual diameters of the new pipe of the same kind.

FIGURE E103.3(6) FRICTION LOSS IN FAIRLY ROUGH PIPE<sup>a</sup>



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gpm = 3.785 L/m, 1 psi = 6.895 kPa, 1 foot per second = 0.305 m/s.

- a. This chart applies to very rough pipe and existing pipe and to their actual diameters.

**FIGURE E103.3(7) FRICTION LOSS IN ROUGH PIPE<sup>a</sup>**

**Problem:** **E103.3.1 Sample problem.** What size Type L copper water pipe, service and distribution will be required to serve a two-story factory building having on each floor, back-to-back, two toilet rooms each equipped with hot and cold water? The highest fixture is 21 feet (6401 mm) above the street main, which is tapped with a 2-inch (51 mm) corporation cock at which point the minimum pressure is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). In the building basement, a 2-inch (51 mm) meter with a maximum pressure drop of 11 psi (75.8 kPa) and 3-inch (76 mm) reduced pressure principle backflow preventer with a maximum pressure drop of 9 psi (621 kPa) are to be installed. The system is shown by Figure E103.3(1). To be determined are the pipe sizes for the service main and the cold and hot water distribution pipes.

**Problem Solution:** A tabular arrangement such as shown in Table E103.3(1) should first be constructed. The steps to be followed are indicated by the tabular arrangement itself as they are in sequence, Columns 1 through 10 and Lines A through L.

#### Step 1

**Columns 1 and 2:** Divide the system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups. After point B [see Figure E103.3(1)], separate consideration will be given to the hot and cold water piping. Enter the sections to be considered in the service and cold water piping in Column 1 of the tabular arrangement. Column 1 of Table E103.3(1) provides a line-by-line recommended tabular arrangement for use in solving pipe sizing.

The objective in designing the water supply system is to ensure an adequate water supply and pressure to all fixtures and equipment. Column 2 provides the pounds per square inch (psi) to be considered separately from the minimum pressure available at the main. Losses to take into consideration are the following: the differences in elevation between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet, meter pressure losses, the tap in main loss, special fixture devices such as water softeners and backflow prevention devices and the pressure required at the most remote fixture outlet. The difference in elevation can result in an increase or decrease in available pressure at the main. Where the water supply outlet is located above the source, this results in a loss in the available pressure and is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water supply source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

**Column 3:** According to Table E103.3(3), determine the gpm (L/m) of flow to be expected in each section of the system. These flows range from 28.6 to 108 gpm. Load values for fixtures must be determined as water supply fixture units and then converted to a gallon-per-minute (gpm) rating to determine peak demand. When calculating peak demands, the water supply fixture units are added and then converted to the gallon-per-minute rating. For continuous flow fixtures such as hose bibbs and lawn sprinkler systems, add the gallon-per-minute demand to the intermittent demand of fixtures. For example, a total of 120 water supply fixture units is converted to a demand of 48 gallons per minute. Two hose bibbs  $\times$  5 gpm demand = 10 gpm. Total gpm rating = 48.0 gpm + 10 gpm = 58.0 gpm demand.

## Step 2

**Line A:** Enter the minimum pressure available at the main source of supply in Column 2. This is 55 psi (379.2 kPa). The local water authorities generally keep records of pressures at different times of day and year. The available pressure can also be checked from nearby buildings or from fire department hydrant checks.

**Line B:** Determine from Table 604.3 the highest pressure required for the fixtures on the system, which is 15 psi (103.4 kPa), to operate a flushometer valve. The most remote fixture outlet is necessary to compute the pressure loss caused by pipe and fittings, and represents the most downstream fixture along the circuit of piping requiring the available pressure to operate properly as indicated by Table 604.3.

**Line C:** Determine the pressure loss for the meter size given or assumed. The total water flow from the main through the service as determined in Step 1 will serve to aid in the meter selected. There are three common types of water meters; the pressure losses are determined by the American Water Works Association Standards for displacement type, compound type and turbine type. The maximum pressure loss of such devices takes into consideration the meter size, safe operating capacity (gpm) and maximum rates for continuous operations (gpm). Typically, equipment imparts greater pressure losses than piping.

**Line D:** Select from Table E103.3(4) and enter the pressure loss for the tap size given or assumed. The loss of pressure through taps and tees in pounds per square inch (psi) is based on the total gallon-per-minute flow rate and size of the tap.

**Line E:** Determine the difference in elevation between the main and source of supply and the highest fixture on the system. Multiply this figure, expressed in feet, by 0.43 psi (2.9 kPa). Enter the resulting psi loss on Line E. The difference in elevation between the water supply source and the highest water supply outlet has a significant impact on the sizing of the water supply system. The difference in elevation usually results in a loss in the available pressure because the water supply outlet is generally located above the water supply source. The loss is caused by the pressure required to lift the water to the outlet. The pressure loss is subtracted from the pressure at the water source. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the water source, there will be an increase in pressure that is added to the available pressure of the water source.

**Lines F, G and H:** The pressure losses through filters, backflow prevention devices or other special fixtures must be obtained from the manufacturer or estimated and entered on these lines. Equipment such as backflow prevention devices, check valves, water softeners, instantaneous or tankless water heaters, filters and strainers can impart a much greater pressure loss than the piping. The pressure losses can range from 8 psi to 30 psi.

## Step 3

**Line I:** The sum of the pressure requirements and losses that affect the overall system (Lines B through H) is entered on this line. Summarizing the steps, all of the system losses are subtracted from the minimum water pressure. The remainder is the pressure available for friction, defined as the energy available to push the water through the pipes to each fixture. This force can be used as an average pressure loss, as long as the pressure available for friction is not exceeded. Saving a certain amount for available water supply pressures as an area incurs growth, or because of aging of the pipe or equipment added to the system is recommended.

#### Step 4

**Line J:** Subtract Line I from Line A. This gives the pressure that remains available from overcoming friction losses in the system. This figure is a guide to the pipe size that is chosen for each section, incorporating the total friction losses to the most remote outlet (measured length is called developed length).

**Exception:** ~~When~~ Where the main is above the highest fixture, the resulting psi must be considered a pressure gain (static head gain) and omitted from the sums of Lines B through H and added to Line J.

The maximum friction head loss that can be tolerated in the system during peak demand is the difference between the static pressure at the highest and most remote outlet at no-flow conditions and the minimum flow pressure required at that outlet. If the losses are within the required limits, then every run of pipe will ~~also~~ be within the required friction head loss. Static pressure loss is the most remote outlet in feet  $\times 0.433$  = loss in psi caused by elevation differences.

#### Step 5

**Column 4:** Enter the length of each section from the main to the most remote outlet (at Point E). Divide the water supply system into sections breaking at major changes in elevation or where branches lead to fixture groups.

#### Step 6

~~E103.3.3. Selection of pipe size, Step 6 Column 5:~~ When selecting a trial pipe size, the length from the water service or meter to the most remote fixture outlet must be measured to determine the developed length. However, in systems having a flushometer valve or temperature controlled shower at the topmost floors the developed length would be from the water meter to the most remote flushometer valve on the system. A rule of thumb is that size will become progressively smaller as the system extends farther from the main source of supply. ~~Trial pipe size may be arrived at by the following formula:~~ The following formula is an acceptable method to determine trial pipe size:

**Line J:** (Pressure available to overcome pipe friction)  $\times 100$ /equivalent length of run total developed length to most remote fixture  $\times$  percentage factor of 1.5 (Note: a percentage factor is used only as an estimate for friction losses imposed for fittings for initial trial pipe size) = psi (average pressure drops per 100 feet of pipe).

For trial pipe size, see Figure E103.3(3) (Type L copper) based on 2.77 psi and a 108 gpm = 2½ inches. To determine the equivalent length of run to the most remote outlet, the developed length is determined and added to the friction losses for fittings and valves. ~~The developed lengths of the designated pipe sections are shown in Table E103.3.1(1). The developed lengths of the designated pipe sections are as follows:~~

A—B 54 ft

B—C 8 ft

C—D 13 ft

D—E 150 ft

Total developed length = 225 ft

The equivalent length of the friction loss in fittings and valves must be added to the developed length (most remote outlet). Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction loss should be approximated. A general rule that has been used is to add 50 percent of the developed length to allow for fittings and valves. For example, the equivalent length of run equals the developed length of run (225 ft  $\times 1.5$  = 338 ft). The total equivalent length of run for determining a trial pipe size is 338 feet.

**Example:** 9.36 (pressure available to overcome pipe friction)  $\times 100/338$  (equivalent length of run = 225  $\times 1.5$ ) = 2.77 psi (average pressure drop per 100 feet of pipe).



**Step 7**

**Column 6:** Select from Table E103.3(6) the equivalent lengths for the trial pipe size of fittings and valves on each pipe section. Enter the sum for each section in Column 6. (The number of fittings to be used in this example must be an estimate.) The equivalent length of piping is the developed length plus the equivalent lengths of pipe corresponding to friction head losses for fittings and valves. Where the size of fittings and valves is not known, the added friction head losses must be approximated. An estimate for this example is found in Table ~~E-1~~ E103.3.1(2).

**Step 8**

**Column 7:** Add the figures from Column 4 and Column 6, and enter in Column 7. Express the sum in hundreds of feet.

**Step 9**

**Column 8:** Select from Figure E103.3(3) the friction loss per 100 feet (30 480 mm) of pipe for the gallon-per-minute flow in a section (Column 3) and trial pipe size (Column 5). Maximum friction head loss per 100 feet is determined on the basis of total pressure available for friction head loss and the longest equivalent length of run. The selection is based on the gallon-per-minute demand, the uniform friction head loss and the maximum design velocity. Where the size indicated by hydraulic table indicates a velocity in excess of the selected velocity, a size must be selected that produces the required velocity.

**Step 10**

**Column 9:** Multiply the figures in Columns 7 and 8 for each section and enter in Column 9.

Total friction loss is determined by multiplying the friction loss per 100 feet (30 480 mm) for each pipe section in the total developed length by the pressure loss in fittings expressed as equivalent length in feet. Note: Section C-F should be considered in the total pipe friction losses only if greater loss occurs in Section C-F than in pipe section D-E. Section C-F is not considered in the total developed length. Total friction loss in equivalent length is determined in ~~E-2~~ Table E103.3.1(3).

**Step 11**

**Line K:** Enter the sum of the values in Column 9. The value is the total friction loss in equivalent length for each designated pipe section.

**Step 12**

**Line L:** Subtract Line J from Line K and enter in Column 10.

The result should always be a positive or plus figure. If it is not, repeat the operation using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 until a balance or near balance is obtained. If the difference between Lines J and K is a high positive number, it is an indication that the pipe sizes are too large and should be reduced, thus saving materials. In such a case, the operations using Columns 5, 6, 8 and 9 should again be repeated.

The total friction losses are determined and subtracted from the pressure available to overcome pipe friction for trial pipe size. This number is critical as it provides a guide to whether the pipe size selected is too large and the process should be repeated to obtain an economically designed system.

**Answer:** The final figures entered in Column 5 become the design pipe size for the respective sections. Repeating this operation a second time using the same sketch but considering the demand for hot water, it is possible to size the hot water distribution piping. This has been worked up as a part of the overall problem in the tabular arrangement used for sizing the service and water distribution piping. Note that consideration must be given to the pressure losses from the street main to the water heater (Section A-B) in determining the hot water pipe sizes.

**TABLE E103.3.1(1)**  
**SUMMATION OF DEVELOPED PIPE LENGTHS**

| <u>SEGMENT</u> | <u>LENGTH<sup>a</sup> (feet)</u> |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| <u>A-B</u>     | <u>54</u>                        |
| <u>B-C</u>     | <u>8</u>                         |

## APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

|            |            |
|------------|------------|
| <u>C-D</u> | <u>13</u>  |
| <u>D-E</u> | <u>150</u> |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Total developed length = 225 feet.

**Table E.1** **TABLE E103.3.1(2)**  
**FITTING PRESSURE LOSSES EXPRESSED IN EQUIVALENT LENGTHS (formerly Table E1)**

| COLD WATER PIPE SECTION | FITTINGS/VALVES          | PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT LENGTH OF TUBE (feet) | HOT WATER PIPE SECTION | FITTINGS/VALVES         | PRESSURE LOSS EXPRESSED AS EQUIVALENT OF TUBE (feet) |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---|------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| A-B                     | (3) 2½" Gate valves      | 3   | A-B                    | (3) 2½" Gate valves     | 3  |
|                         | (1) 2½" Side branch tee  | 12  |                        | (1) 2½" Side branch tee | 12   |
| B-C                     | (1) 2½" Straight run tee | 0.5   | B-C                    | (1) 2" Straight run tee | 7  |
|                         | —                        | —   |                        | (1) 2" 90-degree elbow  | 0.5  |
| C-F                     | (1) 2½" Side branch tee  | 12  | C-F                    | (1) 1½" Side branch tee | 7  |
| C-D                     | (1) 2½" 90-degree elbow  | 7   | C-D                    | (1) 1½" 90-degree elbow | 4  |
| D-E                     | (1) 2½" Side branch tee  | 12  | D-E                    | (1) 1½" Side branch tee | 7  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

**E.2** **TABLE E103.3.1(3)**  
**TOTAL FRICTION LOSS EQUIVALENT PIPING LENGTH (formerly Table E2)**

| PIPE SECTION                        | FRICTION LOSS EQUIVALENT LENGTH (feet) |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
|                                     | Cold Water                             | Hot Water                |
| A-B                                 | $0.69 \times 3.2 = 2.21$               | $0.69 \times 3.2 = 2.21$ |
| B-C                                 | $0.085 \times 3.1 = 0.26$              | $0.16 \times 1.4 = 0.22$ |
| C-D                                 | $0.20 \times 1.9 = 0.38$               | $0.17 \times 3.2 = 0.54$ |
| D-E                                 | $1.62 \times 1.9 = 3.08$               | $1.57 \times 3.2 = 5.02$ |
| Total pipe friction losses (Line K) | 5.93                                   | 7.99                     |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon per minute = 3.785 L/m.

### SECTION ~~E204~~E104 SELECTION OF PIPE SIZE

**~~E204.1~~E104.1** **Size of water service mains, branch mains and risers.** The minimum size water service pipe shall be ¾ inch (19.1 mm). The size of water service mains, *branch* mains and risers shall be determined according to water supply demand [gpm (L/m)], available water pressure [psi (kPa)] and friction loss due to the water meter and *developed length* of pipe [feet (m)], including equivalent length of fittings. The size of each water distribution system shall be determined according to the procedure outlined in this section or by other design methods conforming to acceptable engineering practice and *approved* by the code official:

1. Supply load in the building water distribution system shall be determined by total load on the pipe being sized, in terms of water-supply fixture units (w.s.f.u.), as shown in Table E103.3(2). For fixtures not listed, choose a w.s.f.u. value of a fixture with similar flow characteristics.

2. Obtain the minimum daily static service pressure [psi (kPa)] available (as determined by the local water authority) at the water meter or other source of supply at the installation location. Adjust this minimum daily static pressure [psi (kPa)] for the following conditions:
  - 2.1. Determine the difference in elevation between the source of supply and the highest water supply outlet. Where the highest water supply outlet is located above the source of supply, deduct 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation. Where the highest water supply outlet is located below the source of supply, add 0.5 psi (3.4 kPa) for each foot (0.3 m) of difference in elevation.
  - 2.2. Where a water pressure-reducing valve is installed in the water distribution system, the minimum daily static water pressure available is 80 percent of the minimum daily static water pressure at the source of supply or the set pressure downstream of the pressure-reducing valve, whichever is smaller.
  - 2.3. Deduct all pressure losses due to special equipment such as a backflow preventer, water filter and water softener. Pressure loss data for each piece of equipment shall be obtained through the manufacturer of such devices.
  - 2.4. Deduct the pressure in excess of 8 psi (55 kPa) due to installation of the special plumbing fixture, such as temperature controlled shower and flushometer tank water closet. Using the resulting minimum available pressure, find the corresponding pressure range in Table ~~E201.1~~E104.1.
3. The maximum *developed length* for water piping is the actual length of pipe between the source of supply and the most remote fixture, including either hot (through the water heater) or cold water branches multiplied by a factor of 1.2 to compensate for pressure loss through fittings. Select the appropriate column in Table ~~E201.1~~E104.1 equal to or greater than the calculated maximum *developed length*.
4. To determine the size of water service pipe, meter and main distribution pipe to the building using the appropriate table, follow down the selected “maximum *developed length*” column to a fixture unit equal to, or greater than the total installation demand calculated by using the “combined” water supply fixture unit column of Table E103.3(2). Read the water service pipe and meter sizes in the first left-hand column and the main distribution pipe to the building in the second left-hand column on the same row.
5. To determine the size of each water distribution pipe, start at the most remote outlet on each *branch* (either hot or cold *branch*) and, working back toward the main distribution pipe to the building, add up the water supply fixture unit demand passing through each segment of the distribution system using the related hot or cold column of Table E103.3(2). Knowing demand, the size of each segment shall be read from the second left-hand column of the same table and maximum *developed length* column selected in Steps 1 and 2, under the same or next smaller size meter row. ~~In no case does the~~The size of any *branch* or main does not need to be larger than the size of the main distribution pipe to the building established in Step 4.

**TABLE ~~E201.1~~E104.1**  
**MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION**  
**PIPING BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)**

| METER AND SER-<br>VICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) |     |     |      |      |     |     |     |      |      |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|------|------|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| Pressure Range 30 to 39 psi          |                               | 40                                | 60  | 80  | 100  | 150  | 200 | 250 | 300 | 400  | 500  |
| 3/4                                  | 1/2 <sup>a</sup>              | 2.5                               | 2   | 1.5 | 1.5  | 1    | 1   | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0    | 0    |
| 3/4                                  | 3/4                           | 9.5                               | 7.5 | 6   | 5.5  | 4    | 3.5 | 3   | 2.5 | 2    | 1.5  |
| 3/4                                  | 1                             | 32                                | 25  | 20  | 16.5 | 11   | 9   | 7.8 | 6.5 | 5.5  | 4.5  |
| 1                                    | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 27  | 21   | 13.5 | 10  | 8   | 7   | 5.5  | 5    |
| 3/4                                  | 1 1/4                         | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32   | 30   | 24  | 20  | 17  | 13   | 10.5 |
| 1                                    | 1 1/4                         | 80                                | 80  | 70  | 61   | 45   | 34  | 27  | 22  | 16   | 12   |
| 1 1/2                                | 1 1/4                         | 80                                | 80  | 80  | 75   | 54   | 40  | 31  | 25  | 17.5 | 13   |
| 1                                    | 1 1/2                         | 87                                | 87  | 87  | 87   | 84   | 73  | 64  | 56  | 45   | 36   |

**APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM**

|    |    |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1½ | 1½ | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 117 | 92  | 79  | 69  | 54  | 43  |
| 2  | 1½ | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 128 | 99  | 83  | 72  | 56  | 45  |
| 1  | 2  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 86  |
| 1½ | 2  | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 258 | 223 | 196 | 174 | 144 | 122 |
| 2  | 2  | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 318 | 266 | 229 | 201 | 160 | 134 |
| 2  | 2½ | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 495 | 448 | 409 | 353 | 311 |

| METER AND SER-<br>VICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) |     |     |     |     |      |      |     |     |      |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|-----|-----|------|
| Pressure Range 40 to 49 psi          |                               | 40                                | 60  | 80  | 100 | 150 | 200  | 250  | 300 | 400 | 500  |
| 3/4                                  | 1/2 <sup>a</sup>              | 3                                 | 2.5 | 2   | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1    | 1    | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5  |
| 3/4                                  | 3/4                           | 9.5                               | 9.5 | 8.5 | 7   | 5.5 | 4.5  | 3.5  | 3   | 2.5 | 2    |
| 3/4                                  | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 26  | 18  | 13.5 | 10.5 | 9   | 7.5 | 6    |
| 1                                    | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 21  | 15   | 11.5 | 9.5 | 7.5 | 6.5  |
| 3/4                                  | 1 1/4                         | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32   | 32   | 27  | 21  | 16.5 |
| 1                                    | 1 1/4                         | 80                                | 80  | 80  | 80  | 65  | 52   | 42   | 35  | 26  | 20   |
| 1 1/2                                | 1 1/4                         | 80                                | 80  | 80  | 80  | 75  | 59   | 48   | 39  | 28  | 21   |
| 1                                    | 1 1/2                         | 87                                | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87   | 87   | 78  | 65  | 55   |
| 1 1/2                                | 1 1/2                         | 151                               | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 130  | 109  | 93  | 75  | 63   |
| 2                                    | 1 1/2                         | 151                               | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 139  | 115  | 98  | 77  | 64   |
| 1                                    | 2                             | 87                                | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87   | 87   | 87  | 87  | 87   |
| 1 1/2                                | 2                             | 275                               | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275  | 264  | 238 | 198 | 169  |
| 2                                    | 2                             | 365                               | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 349  | 304  | 270 | 220 | 185  |
| 2                                    | 2 1/2                         | 533                               | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533  | 533  | 528 | 456 | 403  |

(continued)

**TABLE E201.1E104.1—continued**  
**MINIMUM SIZE OF WATER METERS, MAINS AND DISTRIBUTION**  
**PIPING BASED ON WATER SUPPLY FIXTURE UNIT VALUES (w.s.f.u.)**

| METER AND SER-<br>VICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) |     |     |     |     |      |      |     |     |     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|-----|-----|-----|
| Pressure Range 50 to 60 psi          |                               | 40                                | 60  | 80  | 100 | 150 | 200  | 250  | 300 | 400 | 500 |
| 3/4                                  | 1/2 <sup>a</sup>              | 3                                 | 3   | 2.5 | 2   | 1.5 | 1    | 1    | 1   | 0.5 | 0.5 |
| 3/4                                  | 3/4                           | 9.5                               | 9.5 | 9.5 | 8.5 | 6.5 | 5    | 4.5  | 4   | 3   | 2.5 |
| 3/4                                  | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 25  | 18.5 | 14.5 | 12  | 9.5 | 8   |
| 1                                    | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 30  | 22   | 16.5 | 13  | 10  | 8   |

**APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM**

|       |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 3/4   | 1 1/4 | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 29  | 24  |
| 1     | 1 1/4 | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 68  | 57  | 48  | 35  | 28  |
| 1 1/2 | 1 1/4 | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 75  | 63  | 53  | 39  | 29  |
| 1     | 1 1/2 | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 82  | 70  |
| 1 1/2 | 1 1/2 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 139 | 120 | 94  | 79  |
| 2     | 1 1/2 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 146 | 126 | 97  | 81  |
| 1     | 2     | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  |
| 1 1/2 | 2     | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 247 | 213 |
| 2     | 2     | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 365 | 329 | 272 | 232 |
| 2     | 2 1/2 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 486 |

| METER AND SER-<br>VICE PIPE (inches) | DISTRIBUTION PIPE<br>(inches) | MAXIMUM DEVELOPMENT LENGTH (feet) |     |     |     |     |     |      |      |      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|-----|
| Pressure Range Over 60               |                               | 40                                | 60  | 80  | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250  | 300  | 400  | 500 |
| 3/4                                  | 1/2 <sup>a</sup>              | 3                                 | 3   | 3   | 2.5 | 2   | 1.5 | 1.5  | 1    | 1    | 0.5 |
| 3/4                                  | 3/4                           | 9.5                               | 9.5 | 9.5 | 9.5 | 7.5 | 6   | 5    | 4.5  | 3.5  | 3   |
| 3/4                                  | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 24  | 19.5 | 15.5 | 11.5 | 9.5 |
| 1                                    | 1                             | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 28  | 28   | 17   | 12   | 9.5 |
| 3/4                                  | 1 1/4                         | 32                                | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32  | 32   | 32   | 32   | 30  |
| 1                                    | 1 1/4                         | 80                                | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 69   | 60   | 46   | 36  |
| 1 1/2                                | 1 1/4                         | 80                                | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 80  | 76   | 65   | 50   | 38  |
| 1                                    | 1 1/2                         | 87                                | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87   | 87   | 87   | 84  |
| 1 1/2                                | 1 1/2                         | 151                               | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151  | 144  | 114  | 94  |
| 2                                    | 1 1/2                         | 151                               | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151 | 151  | 151  | 118  | 97  |
| 1                                    | 2                             | 87                                | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87  | 87   | 87   | 87   | 87  |
| 1 1/2                                | 2                             | 275                               | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275 | 275  | 275  | 275  | 252 |
| 2                                    | 2                             | 365                               | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368 | 368  | 368  | 318  | 273 |
| 2                                    | 2 1/2                         | 533                               | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533 | 533  | 533  | 533  | 533 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Minimum size for building supply is 3/4-inch pipe.

## SECTION ~~E202~~E105 DETERMINATION OF PIPE VOLUMES

**~~E202.1~~E105.1 Determining volume of piping systems.** Where required for engineering design purposes, Table ~~E202.1~~E105.1 shall be used to determine the approximate internal volume of water distribution piping.

# APPENDIX E—SIZING OF WATER PIPING SYSTEM

**TABLE E202.1E105.1**  
**INTERNAL VOLUME OF VARIOUS WATER DISTRIBUTION TUBING**

| OUNCES OF WATER PER FOOT OF TUBE |               |               |               |                 |             |             |             |                      |               |
|----------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------|
| Size Nominal, Inch               | Copper Type M | Copper Type L | Copper Type K | CPVC CTS SDR 11 | CPVC SCH 40 | CPVC SCH 80 | PE-RT SDR 9 | Composite ASTM F1281 | PEX CTS SDR 9 |
| 3/8                              | 1.06          | 0.97          | 0.84          | N/A             | 1.17        | —           | 0.64        | 0.63                 | 0.64          |
| 1/2                              | 1.69          | 1.55          | 1.45          | 1.25            | 1.89        | 1.46        | 1.18        | 1.31                 | 1.18          |
| 3/4                              | 3.43          | 3.22          | 2.90          | 2.67            | 3.38        | 2.74        | 2.35        | 3.39                 | 2.35          |
| 1                                | 5.81          | 5.49          | 5.17          | 4.43            | 5.53        | 4.57        | 3.91        | 5.56                 | 3.91          |
| 1 1/4                            | 8.70          | 8.36          | 8.09          | 6.61            | 9.66        | 8.24        | 5.81        | 8.49                 | 5.81          |
| 1 1/2                            | 12.18         | 11.83         | 11.45         | 9.22            | 13.20       | 11.38       | 8.09        | 13.88                | 8.09          |
| 2                                | 21.08         | 20.58         | 20.04         | 15.79           | 21.88       | 19.11       | 13.86       | 21.48                | 13.86         |

N/A = applicable.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 0.030 L.

[A] APPENDIX F  
**BOARD OF APPEALS**

Deleted.

DRAFT

**RESOURCE A**  
**PLUMBING PROVISIONS EXCERPTED FROM:**  
**ICC A117.1-2017 STANDARD FOR ACCESSIBLE**  
**AND USABLE BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES**

---

**User note:**

*About this resource: Sections 404.2 and 410.3 reference ICC A117.1 for accessible plumbing facilities and fixtures. Key to these references are provisions which state, "Accessible plumbing fixtures shall be installed in accordance with ICC A117.1" (Section 404.2) and "where drinking fountains are primarily for children's use, the drinking fountains for people using wheelchairs shall be permitted to comply with the children's provisions in ICC A117.1 and drinking fountains for standing children shall be permitted to provide the spout at 30 inches (762 mm) minimum above the floor" (Exception 2 to Section 410.3).*

*For user convenience and in order to ensure an accessible plumbing design, plumbing design-related excerpts from ICC A117.1-2017 have been included in this new Resource A. Marginal markings indicate changes from the 2009 edition. This resource material is not part of the /PC requirements.*

*ICC A117.1 is an approved American National Standard (ANS) developed in accordance with ANSI's requirements for ANS standard development.*

---





Plumbing Provisions Excerpted from:

**11:1: A117.1-21)17**

**Standard for Accessible  
and Usable Buildings  
and Facilities**

ICC A117.1-2017  
Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities  
(Plumbing Provisions)

ISBN: 978-1-60983-758-7

COPYRIGHT® 2017  
By  
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. The 2017 ICC Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities (ICC A117.1-2017) is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc ("ICC"). Without advance written permission from the ICC, no part of this book may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage retrieval system). For information on use rights and permissions, please contact: ICC Publications, 4051 Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, IL 60478. Phone 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233).

Trademarks: "International Code Council," the "International Code Council" logo, "ICC," the "ICC" logo, and other names and trademarks appearing in this book are registered trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc., and/or its licensors (as applicable), and may not be used without permission.

# Table of Contents

## **CHAPTER 1 APPLICATION AND**

### **ADMINISTRATION .. RESOURCE A-1**

|            |                                      |                     |
|------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <u>101</u> | <u>Title .....</u>                   | <u>RESOURCE A-1</u> |
| <u>102</u> | <u>Purpose .....</u>                 | <u>RESOURCE A-1</u> |
| <u>103</u> | <u>Human Factor Provisions .....</u> | <u>RESOURCE A-1</u> |
| <u>104</u> | <u>Compliance Alternatives .....</u> | <u>RESOURCE A-1</u> |
| <u>105</u> | <u>Conventions .....</u>             | <u>RESOURCE A-1</u> |
| <u>106</u> | <u>Referenced Documents .....</u>    | <u>RESOURCE A-1</u> |
| <u>107</u> | <u>Definitions .....</u>             | <u>RESOURCE A-3</u> |

## **CHAPTER 3 BUILDING**

### **BLOCKS ..... RESOURCE A-7**

|            |                                     |                      |
|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <u>301</u> | <u>General.....</u>                 | <u>RESOURCE A-7</u>  |
| <u>302</u> | <u>Floor Surfaces.....</u>          | <u>RESOURCE A-7</u>  |
| <u>303</u> | <u>Changes in Level.....</u>        | <u>RESOURCE A-7</u>  |
| <u>304</u> | <u>Turning Space.....</u>           | <u>RESOURCE A-8</u>  |
| <u>305</u> | <u>Clear Floor Space .....</u>      | <u>RESOURCE A-10</u> |
| <u>306</u> | <u>Knee and Toe Clearance .....</u> | <u>RESOURCE A-11</u> |
| <u>307</u> | <u>Protruding Objects .....</u>     | <u>RESOURCE A-13</u> |
| <u>308</u> | <u>Reach Ranges .....</u>           | <u>RESOURCE A-14</u> |
| <u>309</u> | <u>Operable Parts .....</u>         | <u>RESOURCE A-15</u> |

## **CHAPTER 6 PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND**

### **FACILITIES ..... RESOURCE A-17**

|            |   |                      |
|------------|---|----------------------|
| <u>601</u> | <u>General .....</u>  | <u>RESOURCE A-17</u> |
| <u>602</u> | <u>Drinking Fountains and</u><br><u>Bottle Filling Stations .....</u> | <u>RESOURCE A-17</u> |
| <u>603</u> | <u>Toilet and Bathing Rooms .....</u>                                 | <u>RESOURCE A-18</u> |
| <u>604</u> | <u>Water Closets and Toilet</u><br><u>Compartments .....</u>          | <u>RESOURCE A-19</u> |
| <u>605</u> | <u>Urinals .....</u>  | <u>RESOURCE A-28</u> |
| <u>606</u> | <u>Lavatories and Sinks.....</u>                                      | <u>RESOURCE A-29</u> |
| <u>607</u> | <u>Bathtubs .....</u>   | <u>RESOURCE A-30</u> |
| <u>608</u> | <u>Shower Compartments .....</u>                                      | <u>RESOURCE A-32</u> |
| <u>609</u> | <u>Grab Bars .....</u>  | <u>RESOURCE A-37</u> |
| <u>610</u> | <u>Seats .....</u>  | <u>RESOURCE A-39</u> |
| <u>611</u> | <u>Washing Machines and Clothes</u><br><u>Dryers .....</u>            | <u>RESOURCE A-40</u> |
| <u>612</u> | <u>Saunas and Steam Rooms.....</u>                                    | <u>RESOURCE A-42</u> |

## **CHAPTER 8 SPECIAL ROOMS**

### **AND SPACES..... RESOURCE A-43**

|            |                       |                      |
|------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <u>801</u> | <u>General. ....</u>  | <u>RESOURCE A-43</u> |
| <u>804</u> | <u>Kitchens .....</u> | <u>RESOURCE A-43</u> |

## **CHAPTER 11 DWELLING UNITS AND**

### **SLEEPING UNITS... RESOURCE A-47**

|             |  |                      |
|-------------|--|----------------------|
| <u>1101</u> | <u>General.....</u>                                      | <u>RESOURCE A-47</u> |
| <u>1102</u> | <u>Accessible Units.....</u>                             | <u>RESOURCE A-47</u> |
| <u>1103</u> | <u>Type A Units .....</u>                                | <u>RESOURCE A-48</u> |
| <u>1104</u> | <u>Type B Units .....</u>                                | <u>RESOURCE A-54</u> |
| <u>1105</u> | <u>Type C (Visitable) Units .....</u>                    | <u>RESOURCE A-63</u> |
| <u>1106</u> | <u>Units with Communication</u><br><u>Features .....</u> | <u>RESOURCE A-64</u> |



# CHAPTER 1

## APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

### SECTION 101 TITLE

This document shall be known as the standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities, hereinafter referred to as "this standard."

### SECTION 102 PURPOSE

**102.1 General.** The technical criteria in Chapters 3 through 10, Sections 1102, 1103 and 1106 of this standard make sites, facilities, buildings and elements accessible to and usable by people with such physical disabilities as the inability to walk, difficulty walking, reliance on walking aids, blindness and visual impairment, deafness and hearing impairment, incoordination, reaching and manipulation disabilities, lack of stamina, difficulty interpreting and reacting to sensory information, and extremes of physical size. The intent of these sections is to allow a person with a physical disability to independently get to, enter, and use a site, facility, building or element.

Section 1104 of this standard provides criteria for Type B units. These criteria are intended to be consistent with the intent of the criteria of the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines. The Type B units are intended to supplement, not replace, Accessible units or Type A units as specified in this standard.

Section 1105 of this standard provides criteria for minimal accessibility features for one and two family dwelling units and townhouses which are not covered by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines.

This standard is intended for adoption by government agencies and by organizations setting model codes to achieve uniformity in the technical design criteria in building codes and other regulations.

**102.2 Applicability.** Sites, facilities, buildings, and elements required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapters 3 through 10. Dwelling units and sleeping units shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 11.

### SECTION 103 HUMAN FACTOR PROVISIONS

The technical criteria in this standard are based on body sizes and functional abilities of adults and, in those sections where specifically noted, children.

### SECTION 104 COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES

Nothing in this standard is intended to prevent the use of designs, products or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed by this standard, provided they result in equivalent or greater accessibility and such equivalency is approved by the administrative authority adopting this standard.

### SECTION 105 CONVENTIONS

**105.1 General.** Where specific criteria of this standard differ from the general criteria of this standard, the specific criteria shall apply.

**105.2 Calculation of percentages.** Where the determination of the required size or dimension of an element or facility involves ratios or percentages, rounding down for values less than one half shall be permitted.

**105.3 Dimension tolerances.** All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where the requirement is a range with stated minimum and maximum end points.

**105.4 Figures.** Unless specifically stated, figures included herein are provided for informational purposes only and are not considered part of the standard.

**105.5 Floor or floor surface.** The terms floor or floor surface refer to the finish floor surface or ground surface, as applicable.

**105.6 Referenced sections.** Unless specifically stated otherwise, a reference to another section or subsection within this standard includes all subsections of the referenced section or subsection.

### SECTION 106 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

**106.1 General.** The documents listed in Section 106.2 shall be considered part of this standard to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where criteria in this standard differ from those of these referenced documents, the criteria of this standard shall apply.

#### **106.2 Documents.**

**106.2.1 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Transportation Vehicles.** 36 CFR 1192 published in 56 Federal Register 45558, September 6, 1991 (United States Access Board, 1331 F Street, NW, Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004-1111).

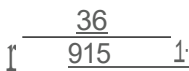
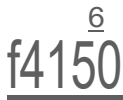
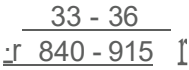












| Convention  | Description  |
|---|--|
|    | <u>dimension showing English units (in inches unless otherwise specified) above the line and SI units (in millimeters unless otherwise specified) below the line</u> |
|    | <u>dimension for small measurements</u>  |
|    | <u>dimension showing a range with minimum - maximum</u>  |
|    | <u>minimum</u>   |
|    | <u>maximum</u>   |
|    | <u>greater than</u>  |
|   | <u>greater than or equal to</u>  |
|    | <u>less than</u>   |
|    | <u>less than or equal to</u>   |
|    | <u>boundary of clear floor space or maneuvering clearance</u>  |
|    | <u>centerline</u>  |
|  | <u>a permitted element or its extension</u>  |
|  | <u>direction of travel or approach</u>   |
|  | <u>a wall, floor, ceiling or other element cut in section or plan</u>  |
|  | <u>a highlighted element in elevation or plan</u>  |
|  | <u>location zone of element, control or feature</u>  |

FIGURE 105.4  
GRAPHIC CONVENTION FOR FIGURES

**106.2.2 Hearing aids - Magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aids operating with an induction pickup coil.** IEC 60118.4-2014 (International Electrotechnical Commission, 3 rue de Varenbe, PO Box 131, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.)

**106.2.3 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.** MUTCD-2009 with Revisions I and 2 incorporated, May 2012 (The Federal Highway Administration, Office of Transportation Operations, Room 3408, 400 7th Street, S.W., Washington, DC 20590).

**106.2.4 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.** NFPA 72-2016 (National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101).

**106.2.5 Performance Criteria for Accessible Communications Entry Systems.** DASMA 303-2006. (Door and

Access Systems Manufacturers Association, 1300 Sumner Avenue, Cleveland, OH 44115-2851).

**106.2.6 Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors.** BHMA A156.19-2013 (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017).

**106.2.7 Power Operated Pedestrian Doors.** ANSI/ BHMA A156.10-201 J (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017).

**106.2.8 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.** ASME A17.1-2013/CSA B44- I6 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).

**106.2.9 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts.** ASME A18.1-2014 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).

**106.2.10 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use.** ASTM F 1487-01 (ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA, 19428-2959).

**106.2.11 Standard Laboratory Test Method for Determination of Forces and Motions Required to Activate Operable Parts of Operable Windows and Doors in Accessible Spaces.** AAMA 513-14 (AAMA, 1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550, Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268).

**106.2.12 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment.** ASTM F 1292-13 (ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA, 19428-2959).

**106.2.13 Standard Test Method for Determination of Decay Rates for Use in Sound Insulation Test Methods.** ASTM E 2235-04 (2012) (ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959).

## SECTION 107 DEFINITIONS

**107.1 General.** For the purpose of this standard, the terms listed in Section 107.5 have the indicated meaning.

**107.2 Terms defined in referenced documents.** Terms specifically defined in a referenced document, and not defined in this section, shall have the specified meaning from the referenced document.

**107.3 Undefined terms.** The meaning of terms not specifically defined in this standard or in a referenced document shall be as defined by collegiate dictionaries in the sense that the context implies.

**107.4 Interchangeability.** Words, terms and phrases used in the singular include the plural, and those used in the plural include the singular.

**107.5 Defined terms.**

**accessible:** Describes a site, building, facility or portion thereof that complies with this standard.

**administrative authority:** A jurisdictional body that adopts or enforces regulations and standards for the design, construction or operation of buildings and facilities.

**amusement attraction:** Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Amusement attractions include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels and other attractions without seats.

**amusement ride:** A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.

**amusement ride seat:** A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.

**area of sport activity:** That portion of a room or space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

**assembly area:** A building or facility, or portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, worship, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include, but are not limited to, classrooms, lecture halls, courtrooms, public meeting rooms, public hearing rooms, legislative chambers, spaces utilized for viewing motion picture projections, auditoria, theaters, playhouses, dinner theaters, concert halls, centers for the performing arts, amphitheaters, arenas, stadiums, grandstands, places of religious worship or convention centers.

**assistive listening system (ALS):** An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared, or direct-wired equipment.

**blended transition:** A raised pedestrian street crossing, depressed corner or similar connection between the pedestrian access route at the level of the sidewalk and the level of the pedestrian street crossing that has a grade of 1:20 or less.

**boarding pier:** A portion of a pier where a boat is temporarily secured for the purpose of embarking or disembarking.

**boat launch ramp:** A sloped surface designed for launching and retrieving trailered boats and other water craft to and from a body of water.

**boat slip:** That portion of a pier, main pier, finger pier or float where a boat is moored for the purpose of berthing, embarking, or disembarking.

**catch pool:** A pool or designated section of a pool used as a terminus for water slide flumes.

**characters:** Letters, numbers, punctuation marks and typographic symbols.

**children's use:** Spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.

**circulation path:** An exterior or interior way of passage provided for pedestrian travel, including but not limited to, walks, hallways, courtyards, elevators, platform lifts, ramps, stairways and landings.

**common use:** Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

**counter slope:** Any slope opposing the running slope of a curb ramp.

**cross slope:** The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel (see running slope).



**curb ramp:** A short ramp cutting through a curb or built up to it.

**destination-oriented elevator system:** An elevator system that provides lobby controls for the selection of destination floors, lobby indicators designating which elevator to board and a car indicator designating the floors at which the car will stop.

**detectable warning:** A standardized surface feature built in or applied to floor surfaces to warn of hazards on a circulation path.

**dwelling unit:** A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

**element:** An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space or site.

**elevated play component:** A play component that is approached above or below grade and that is part of a composite play structure consisting of two or more play components attached or functionally linked to create an integrated unit providing more than one play activity.

**elevator car call sequential step scanning:** A technology used to enter a car call by means of an up or down floor selection button.

**employee work area:** All or any portion of a space used only by employees and used only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.

**existing building:** A building erected prior to the date of adoption of this standard, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

**existing facility:** A facility completed prior to the date of adoption of this standard, or one for which a legal permit has been issued.

**facility:** All or any portion of a building, structure, site improvements, elements and pedestrian routes or vehicular ways located on a site.

**gangway:** A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways that connect to vessels are not addressed by this document.

**golf car passage:** A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.

**grade break:** The line where two surface planes with different grades meet.

**ground level play component:** A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.

**habitable:** A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered habitable spaces.

**key surface:** The surface or plane of any key or button that must be touched to activate or deactivate an operable part or a machine function or enter data.

**marked crossing:** A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.

**operable part:** A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate or adjust the element.

**pictogram:** A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities or concepts.

**play area:** A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.

**play component:** An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization or learning. Play components are manufactured or natural; and are stand-alone or part of a composite play structure.

**ramp:** A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than 1:20.

**running slope:** The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel (see cross slope).

**sign:** An architectural element composed of displayed textual, symbolic, tactile or pictorial information.

**site:** A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

**sleeping unit:** A room or space in which people sleep that can also include permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

**soft contained play structure:** A play structure made up of one or more play components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials, such as plastic, netting or fabric.

**teeing ground:** In golf, the starting place for the hole to be played.

**transfer device:** Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility aide to and from an amusement ride seat.

**transition plate:** A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the ends of a gangway.

**TTY:** An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Equipment that employs interactive, text-based communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. The term TTY also refers to devices known as text telephones and TDDs.

**use zone:** The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or play equipment that is designated by ASTM F 1487 listed in Section 106.2.10, for unrestricted circulation around the play equipment and where it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the play equipment.

**variable message signs (VMS):** Electronic signs that have a message with the capacity to change by means of scrolling, streaming or paging across a background.

**variable message sign (VMS) characters:** Characters of an electronic sign are composed of pixels in an array. High reso-

lution VMS characters have vertical pixel counts of 16 rows or greater. Low resolution VMS characters have vertical pixel counts of 7 to 15 rows.

**vehicular way:** A route provided for vehicular traffic, such as in a street, driveway or parking facility.

**walk:** An exterior pathway with a prepared surface for pedestrian use.

**wheelchair charging area:** A clear floor area where people with disabilities can recharge their wheelchair batteries.

**wheelchair space:** A space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

**wheelchair space locations:** A space for a minimum of a single wheelchair and the associated companion seating. Wheelchair space locations can contain multiple wheelchair spaces and associated companion seating.



## CHAPTER 3

# BUILDING BLOCKS

### SECTION 301 GENERAL

**301.1 Scope.** The provisions of Chapter 3 shall apply where required by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority or by Chapters 4 through 11.

**301.2 Overlap.** Unless otherwise specified, clear floor spaces, clearances at fixtures, maneuvering clearances at doors, and turning spaces shall be permitted to overlap.

### SECTION 302 FLOOR SURFACES

**302.1 General.** Floor surfaces shall be stable, firm, and slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 302. Changes in level in floor surfaces shall comply with Section 303.

**302.2 Carpet.** Carpet or carpet tile shall be securely attached and shall have a firm cushion, pad, or backing or no cushion or pad. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, or level cut/uncut pile texture. The pile shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) maximum in height. Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to the floor and shall have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with Section 303.



**FIGURE 302.2  
CARPET ON FLOOR SURFACES**

**302.3 Openings.** Openings in floor surfaces shall be of a size that does not permit the passage of a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter sphere, except as allowed in Sections 407.4.3, 408.4.3, 409.4.3, 410.4 and 805.10. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the predominant direction of travel.

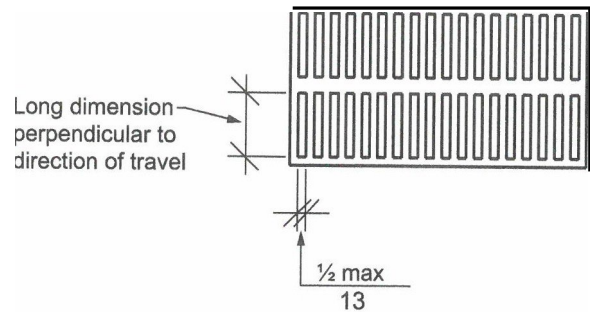
### SECTION 303 CHANGES IN LEVEL

**303.1 General.** Changes in level in floor surfaces shall comply with Section 303.

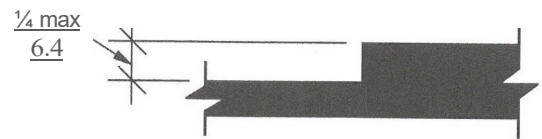
**303.2 Vertical.** Changes in level of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) maximum in height shall be permitted to be vertical.

**303.3 Beveled.** Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in height and not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) maximum in height shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.

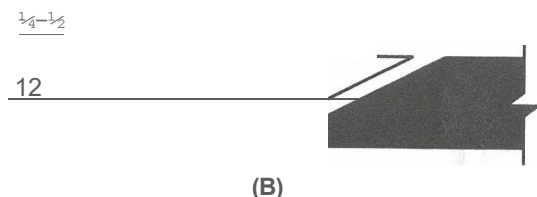
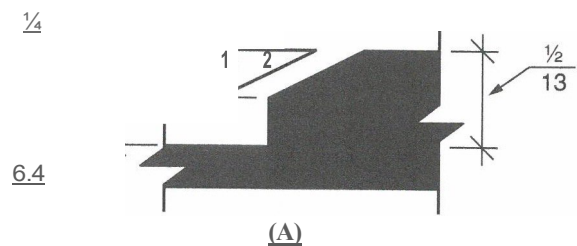
Predominant direction of travel



**FIGURE 302.3  
OPENINGS IN FLOOR SURFACES**



**FIGURE 303.2  
VERTICAL CHANGE IN LEVEL**



**FIGURE 303.3  
BEVELED CHANGES IN LEVEL**

**303.4 Ramps.** Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in height shall be by a ramp complying with Section 405 or by a curb ramp complying with Section 406.

**SECTION 304**  
**TURNING SPACE**

**304.1 General.** A turning space shall comply with Section 304.

**304.2 Floor surface.** Floor surfaces of a turning space shall comply with Section 302. Changes in level shall not be permitted within the turning space.

**Exception:** Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

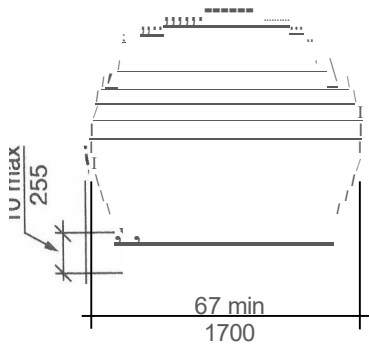
**304.3 Size.** Turning spaces shall comply with Section 304.3.1 or 304.3.2.

**304.3.1 Circular space.**

**304.3.1.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a circular space with a 67-inch (1700 mm) minimum diameter.

**304.3.1.1.1 Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306. Where the turning space includes knee and toe clearances under an obstruction, the overlap shall comply with all of the following:

1. The depth of the overlap shall not be more than 10 inches (255 mm), and
2. The depth shall not exceed the depth of the knee and toe clearances provided, and
3. The overlap shall be permitted only within the turning circle area shown shaded in Figure 304.3.1.

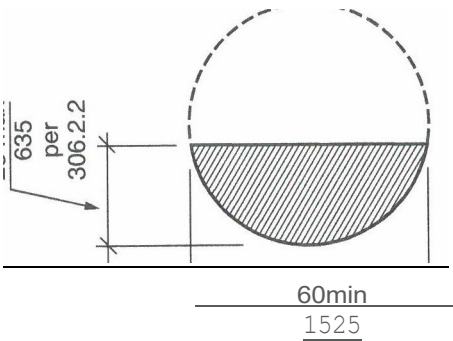


Overlap of knee and toe clearance

**FIGURE 304.3.1.1**  
**CIRCULAR TURNING SPACE- NEW BUILDINGS**  
**SIZE AND OVERLAP**

**304.3.1.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a circular space with a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum diameter.

**304.3.1.2.1 Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.



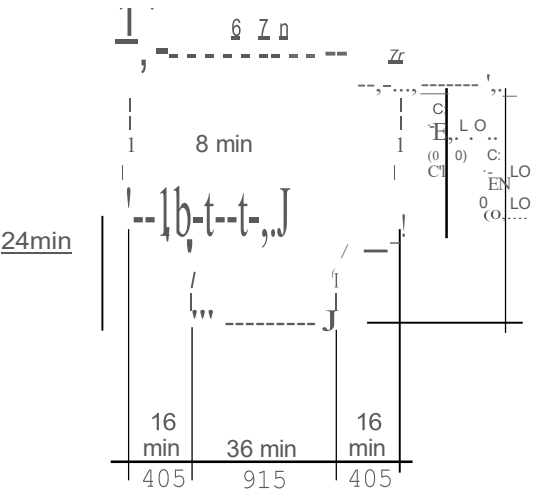
Overlap of knee and toe clearance

**FIGURE 304.3.1.2**  
**CIRCULAR TURNING SPACE - EXISTING BUILDINGS- SIZE**  
**AND OVERLAP**

**304.3.2 T-Shaped space.**

**304.3.2.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a T-shaped space complying with one of the following:

1. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, that fits within an area 68 inches (1725 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms and one base that are all 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from each side of the base located opposite the other, and the base shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) minimum from the arms. At the intersection of each arm and the base, the interior corners shall be chamfered for 8 inches (205 mm) minimum along both the arm and along the base.



**FIGURE 304.3.2.1(A)**  
**T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE**  
**NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 1**

2. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, that fits within an area 64 inches (1625 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms 38 inches (965 mm) minimum in width and a base 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 11 inches (280 mm) minimum from each side of the base, located opposite the other, and the base shall extend 22 inches (560 mm) minimum from each arm.

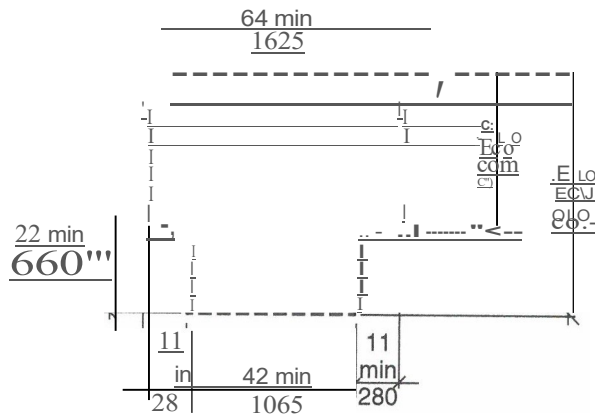


FIGURE 304.3.2.1(8)  
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE  
NEW BUILDINGS • OPTION 2

3. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, 64 inches (1625 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms and one base 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum in width. Each

arm shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from each side of the base and the base shall extend 20 inches (510 mm) minimum from each arm.

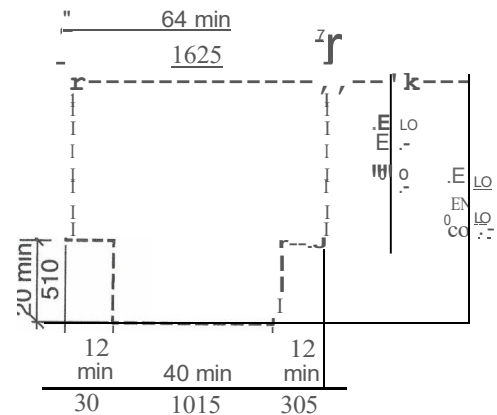


FIGURE 304.3.2.1(C)  
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE  
NEW BUILDINGS • OPTION 3

**304.3.2.1.1 Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 of either the base or one arm. For Option 1, the base or arm is the portion beyond the chamfer.

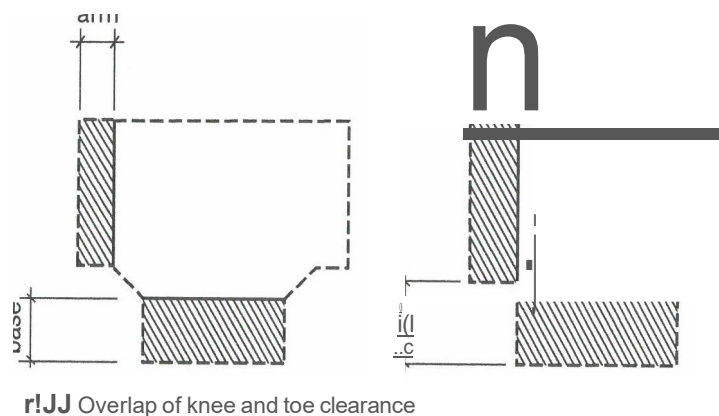
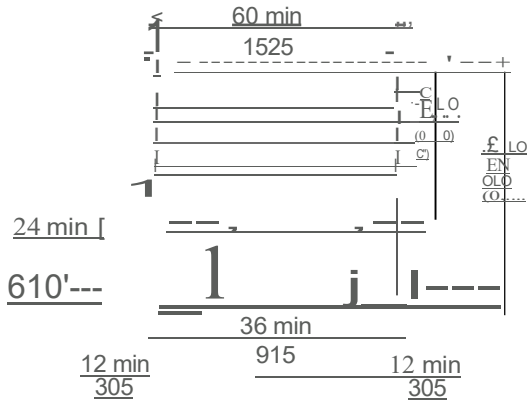


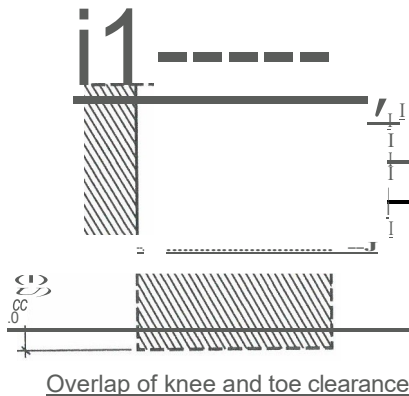
FIGURE 304.3.2.1.1  
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE  
NEW BUILDINGS • OVERLAP

**304.3.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum square, with arms and base 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction, and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.



**FIGURE 304.3.2.2  
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE  
EXISTING BUILDINGS - SIZE**

**304.3.2.2.1 Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 only at the end of either the base or one arm.



**FIGURE 304.3.2.2.1  
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE - EXISTING BUILDINGS  
OVERLAP**

**304.4 Door swing.** Unless otherwise specified, doors shall be permitted to swing into turning spaces.

**SECTION 305  
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE**

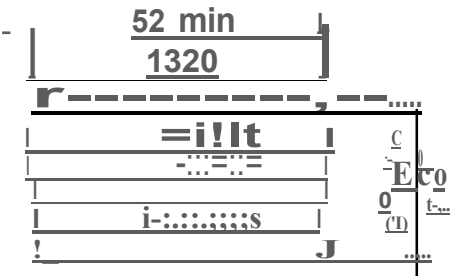
**305.1 General.** A clear floor space shall comply with Section 305.

**305.2 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces of a clear floor space shall comply with Section 302. Changes in level shall not be permitted within the clear floor space.

**Exception:** Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

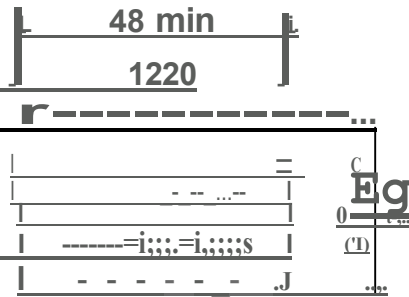
**305.3 Size.**

**305.3.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, the clear floor space shall be 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.



**FIGURE 305.3.1  
SIZE OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - NEW BUILDINGS**

**305.3.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, the clear floor space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.



**FIGURE 305.3.2  
SIZE OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - EXISTING BUILDINGS**

**305.4 Knee and toe clearance.** Unless otherwise specified, clear floor space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.

**305.5 Position.** Unless otherwise specified, clear floor spaces shall be positioned for either forward or parallel approach to an element.

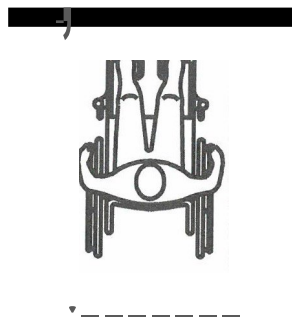


FIGURE 305.5(A)  
POSITION OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - FORWARD

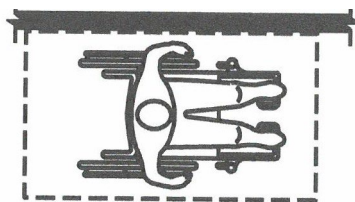


FIGURE 305.5(B)  
POSITION OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - PARALLEL

**305.6 Approach.** One full, unobstructed side of a clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or adjoin another clear floor space.

**305.7 Alcoves.** If a clear floor space is in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances complying with Sections 305.7.1 and 305.7.2 shall be provided, as applicable.

**305.7.1 Parallel approach.** Where a clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the alcove shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width where the depth exceeds 15 inches (380 mm).

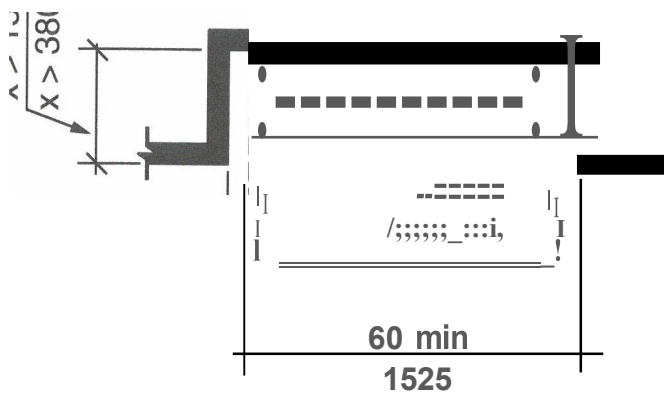


FIGURE 305.7.1  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCE IN AN ALCOVE  
PARALLEL APPROACH

**305.7.2 Forward approach.** Where a clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, the alcove shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width where the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).

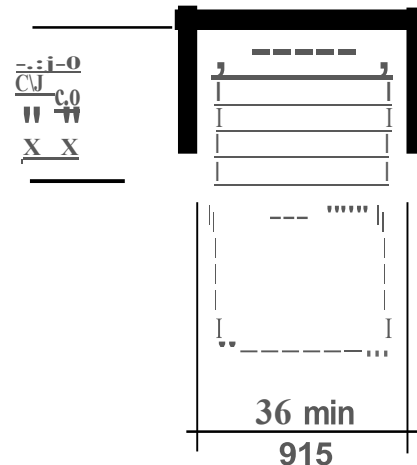


FIGURE 305.7.2  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCE IN AN ALCOVE  
FORWARD APPROACH

## SECTION 306 KNEE AND TOE CLEARANCE

**306.1 General.** Where space beneath an element is included as part of the clear floor space at an element, clearance at an element, or a turning space, the space shall comply with Section 306. Additional space shall not be prohibited beneath an element, but shall not be considered as part of the clear floor space or turning space.

### 306.2 Toe clearance.

**306.2.1 General.** Space beneath an element between the floor and 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor shall be considered toe clearance and shall comply with Section 306.2.

**306.2.2 Maximum depth.** Toe clearance shall be permitted to extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.

**306.2.3 Minimum depth.** Where toe clearance is required at an element as part of a clear floor space complying with Section 305, the toe clearance shall extend 17 inches (430 mm) minimum beneath the element.

**306.2.4 Additional clearance.** Space extending greater than 6 inches (150 mm) beyond the available knee clearance at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor shall not be considered toe clearance.

**306.2.5 Width.** Toe clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.



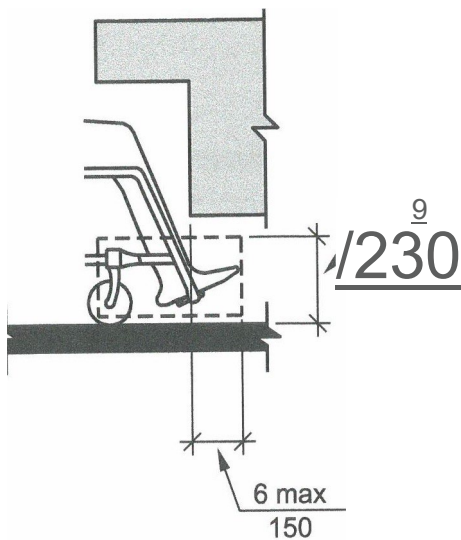


FIGURE 306.2(A)  
TOE CLEARANCE - ELEVATION

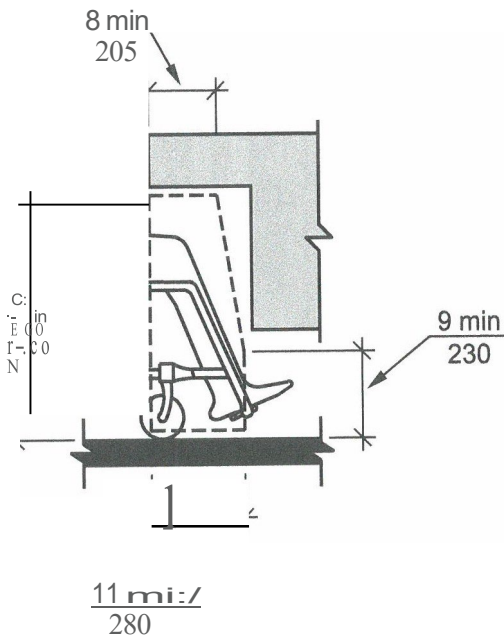
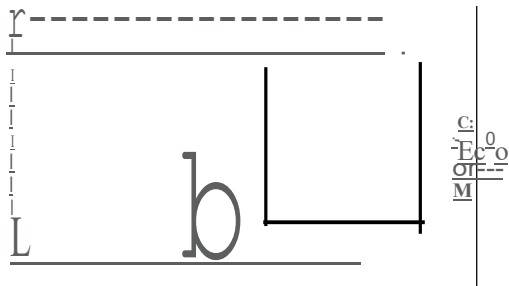


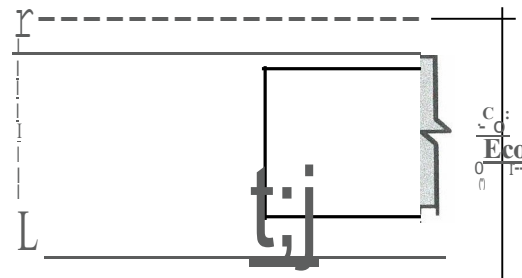
FIGURE 306.3(A)  
KNEE CLEARANCE - ELEVATION



430-635  
FIGURE 306.2(6)  
TOE CLEARANCE - PLAN

306.3 Knee clearance.

**306.3.1 General.** Space beneath an element between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor shall be considered knee clearance and shall comply with Section 306.3.



635  
FIGURE 306.3(6)  
KNEE CLEARANCE - PLAN

**306.3.2 Maximum depth.** Knee clearance shall be permitted to extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor.

**306.3.3 Minimum depth.** Where knee clearance is required beneath an element as part of a clear floor space complying with Section 305, the knee clearance shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum in depth at 9 inches (230 mm) above the floor, and 8 inches (205 mm) minimum in depth at 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor.

**306.3.4 Clearance reduction.** Between 9 inches (230 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor, the knee clearance shall be permitted to be reduced at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for each 6 inches (150 mm) in height.

**306.3.5 Width.** Knee clearance shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.

### SECTION 307 PROTRUDING OBJECTS

**307.1 General.** Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with Section 307.

**307.2 Protrusion limits.** Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor shall protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontally into a circulation path.

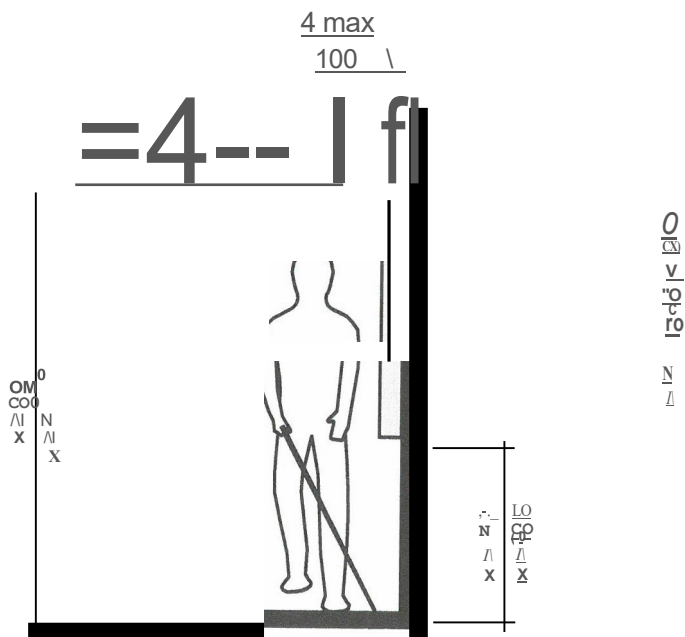


FIGURE 307.2  
LIMITS OF PROTRUDING OBJECTS

**Exception:** Handrails shall be permitted to protrude 4½ inches (115 mm) maximum.

**307.3 Post-mounted objects.** Objects on posts or pylons shall be permitted to overhang 4 inches (100 mm) maximum where more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor. Objects on multiple posts or pylons where the clear distance between posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm) shall have the lowest edge of such object either 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the floor.

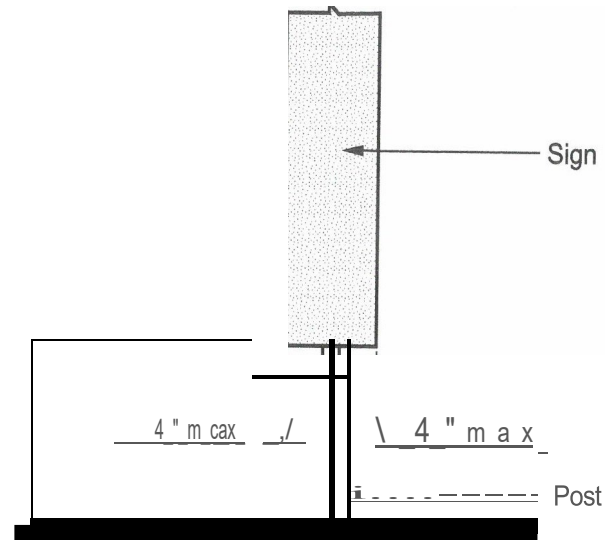


FIGURE 307.3(A)  
POST-MOUNTED PROTRUDING OBJECTS

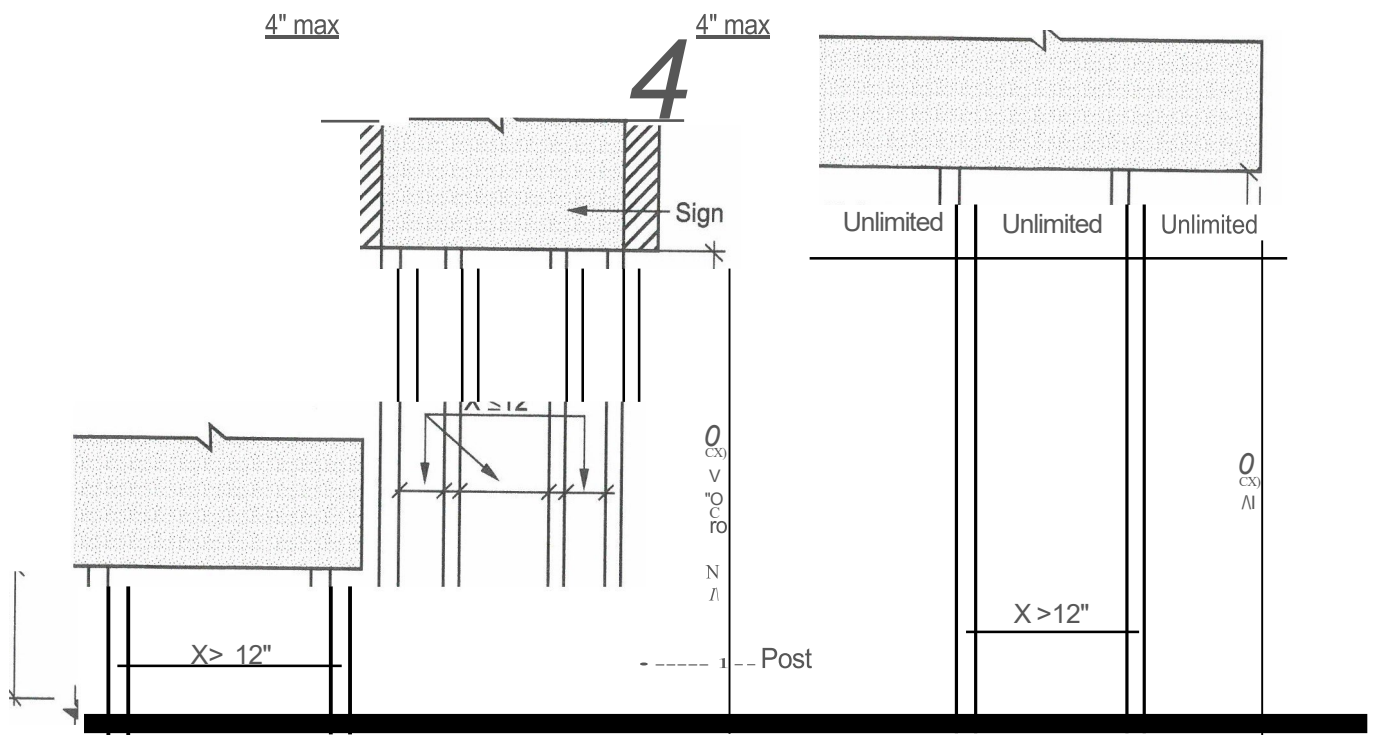
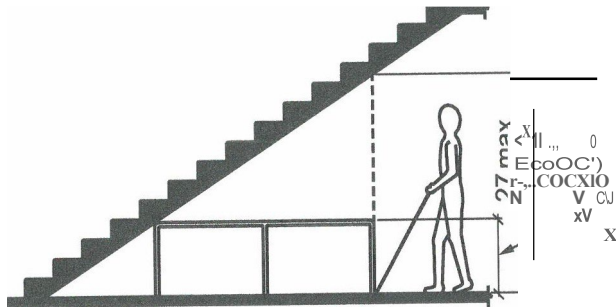


FIGURE 307.3(8)  
POST-MOUNTED PROTRUDING OBJECTS

**Exception:** Sloping portions of handrails between the top and bottom riser of stairs and above the ramp run shall not be required to comply with this section.

**307.4 Vertical clearance.** Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum. Rails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm). The leading edge of such rails or barrier shall be located 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.



**FIGURE 307.4**  
**REDUCED VERTICAL CLEARANCE**

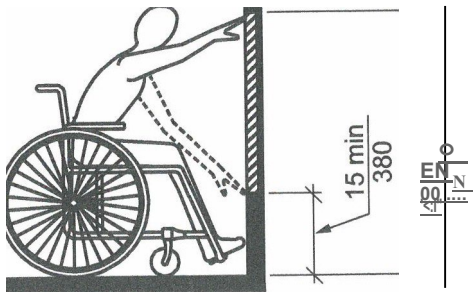
**307.5 Required clear width.** Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width required for accessible routes.

## SECTION 308 REACH RANGES

**308.1 General.** Reach ranges shall comply with Section 308.

**308.2 Forward reach.**

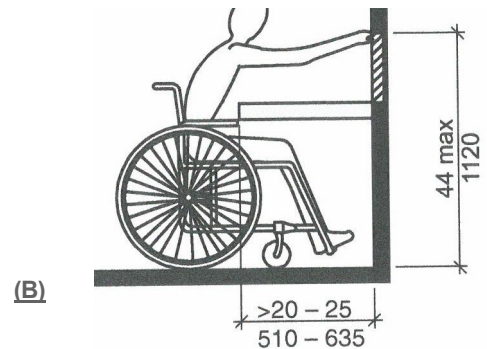
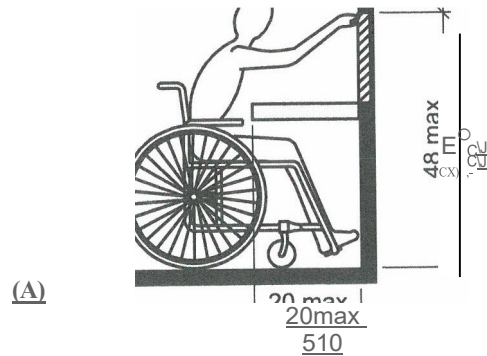
**308.2.1 Unobstructed.** Where a forward reach is unobstructed, the high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low forward reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the floor.



**FIGURE 308.2.1**  
**UNOBSTRUCTED FORWARD REACH**

**308.2.2 Obstructed high reach.** Where a high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space complying with Section 305 and knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall extend beneath the element for

a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. The high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor where the reach depth over the obstruction is 20 inches (510 mm) maximum. The high forward reach shall be 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the floor where the reach depth over the obstruction is greater than 20 inches (510 mm) and not more than 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.



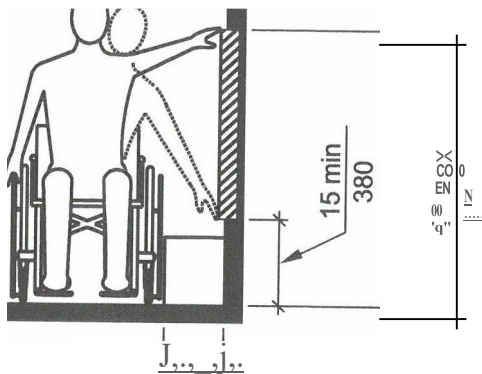
**FIGURE 308.2.2**  
**OBSTRUCTED HIGH FORWARD REACH**

**308.3 Side reach.**

**308.3.1 Unobstructed.** Where a clear floor space complying with Section 305 allows a parallel approach to an element and the edge of the clear floor space is 10 inches (255 mm) maximum from the element, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum above the floor.

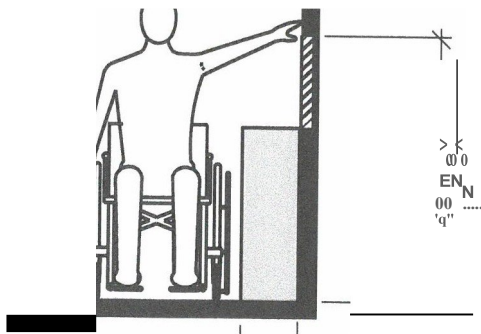
**Exceptions:**

- Existing elements that are not altered shall be permitted at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor.
- Operable parts on fuel dispensers installed on existing curbs shall be permitted at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor.

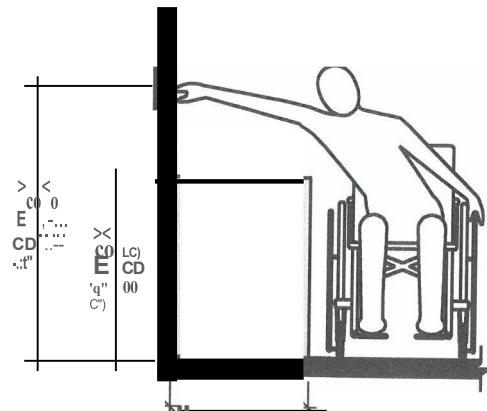


**10 max /  
255**  
**FIGURE 308.3.1**  
**UNOBSTRUCTED SIDE REACH**

**308.3.2 Obstructed high reach.** Where a clear floor space complying with Section 305 allows a parallel approach to an element and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor and the depth of the obstruction shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The high side reach shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor for a reach depth of 10 inches (255 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (255 mm), the high side reach shall be 46 inches (1170 mm) maximum above the floor for a reach depth of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.



**10 max /  
255**  
**FIGURE 308.3.2(A)**  
**OBSTRUCTED HIGH SIDE REACH**



**FIGURE 308.3.2(8)**  
**OBSTRUCTED HIGH SIDE REACH**

## **SECTION 309** **OPERABLE PARTS**

**309.1 General.** Operable parts shall comply with Section 309.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Receptacle outlets serving a dedicated use.
2. Where two or more receptacle outlets are provided in a kitchen above a length of countertop that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, one receptacle outlet shall not be required to comply with this section.
3. In a kitchen, where a clear floor space for a parallel approach cannot be located at a countertop in a corner between appliances, receptacle outlets over the countertop shall not be required to comply with this section provided that the countertop area does not exceed 9 square feet (0.835 m<sup>2</sup>) maximum.
4. Floor receptacle outlets.
5. HYAC diffusers.
6. Controls mounted on ceiling fans.
7. Where redundant controls other than light switches are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to comply with this section.
8. Reset buttons and shut-offs serving appliances, piping and plumbing fixtures.
9. Electrical panelboards shall not be required to comply with Section 309.4.

10. Emergency aid devices, such as fire department hose connections, valve controls, gauges, police call boxes and annunciator panels shall not be required to comply with this section provided that they are used only for emergencies by emergency personnel acting in their official capacity.

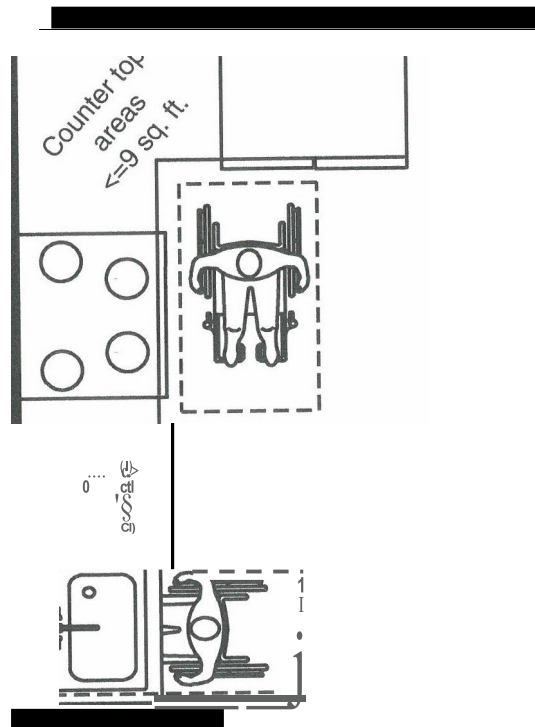
**309.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space complying with Section 305 shall be provided.

**309.3 Height.** Operable parts shall be placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.

**309.4 Operation.** Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twist-

ing of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

**Exception:** Gas pump nozzles shall not be required to provide operable parts that have an activating force of 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.



**FIGURE 309.1**  
**OPERABLE PARTS • EXCEPTION 3**





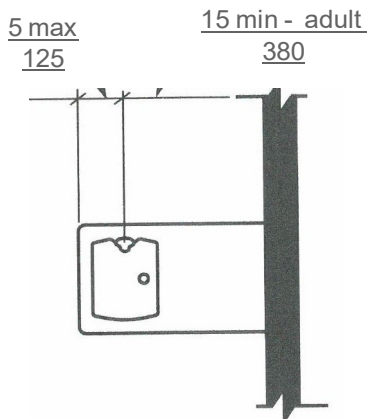


FIGURE 602.2.4  
WHEELCHAIR DRINKING FOUNTAIN SPOUT LOCATION

**602.2.5 Water flow.** The spout shall provide a flow of water 4 inches (100 mm) minimum in height. The angle of the water stream from spouts within 3 inches (75 mm) of the front of the drinking fountain shall be 30 degrees maximum, and from spouts between 3 inches (75 mm) and 5 inches (125 mm) from the front of the drinking fountain shall be 15 degrees maximum, measured horizontally relative to the front face of the drinking fountain.

**602.3 Drinking fountains for persons who are standing.** Drinking fountains for persons who are standing shall comply with Sections 602.3.1 through 602.3.4.

**602.3.1 Operable parts.** Operable parts shall comply with Sections 309.3 and 309.4.

**602.3.2 Spout outlet height.** Spout outlets of drinking fountains shall be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** Drinking fountains primarily for children's use shall be permitted where the spout outlet is 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor.

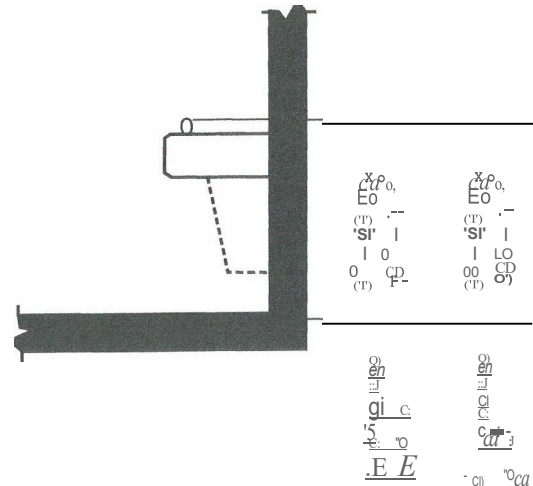


FIGURE 602.3.2  
STANDING USE DRINKING FOUNTAIN SPOUT  
HEIGHT AND LOCATION

**602.3.3 Spout location.** The spout shall be located 5 inches (125 mm) maximum from the front edge of the drinking fountain, including bumpers.

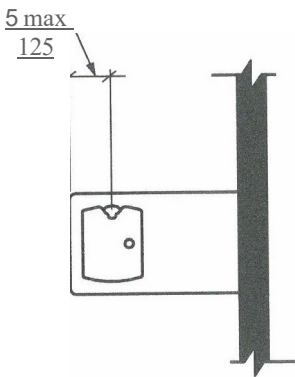


FIGURE 602.3.3  
STANDING USE DRINKING FOUNTAIN SPOUT LOCATION

**602.3.4 Water flow.** The spout shall provide a flow of water 4 inches (100 mm) minimum in height. The angle of the water stream from spouts within 3 inches (75 mm) of the front of the drinking fountain shall be 30 degrees maximum, and from spouts between 3 inches (75 mm) and 5 inches (125 mm) from the front of the drinking fountain shall be 15 degrees maximum, measured horizontally relative to the front face of the drinking fountain.

**602.4 Bottle filling stations.** Bottle filling stations shall comply with Sections 602.4.1 and 602.4.2.

**Exception:** Where bottle filling stations are part of the drinking fountain for persons who are standing, the bottle filling station is not required to comply with this section provided a bottle filling station is located at the drinking fountain for persons using wheelchairs.

**602.4.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space positioned for a forward or side approach shall be provided.

**602.4.2 Controls.** Controls for bottle filling stations shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated controls shall comply with Section 309.

### SECTION 603 TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

**603.1 General.** Toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Section 603.

**603.2 Clearances.**

**603.2.1 Turning space.** A turning space shall be provided within the room. The required turning space shall not be provided within a toilet compartment.

**603.2.2 Door swing.** Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture.

**Exceptions:**

1. Doors to a toilet or bathing room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space, provided the swing of the door can be reversed to comply with Section 603.2.2.
2. Where the room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, the door shall not be required to comply with Section 603.2.2.

**603.3 Mirrors.** Where mirrors are located above lavatories, a mirror shall be located over the lavatory complying with Section 606 and shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor. Where mirrors are located above counters that do not contain lavatories, the mirror shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** Other than within Accessible dwelling or sleeping units, mirrors shall not be required over the lavatories or counters if a mirror is located within the same toilet or bathing room and mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (890 mm) maximum above the floor.

**603.4 Coat hooks and shelves.** Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.

Shelves shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.

**603.5 Diaper changing tables.** Diaper changing tables shall comply with Sections 309 and 902

**603.6 Operable parts.** Operable parts on towel dispensers and hand dryers serving lavatories complying with Section 606 shall comply with Table 603.6.

## SECTION 604

### WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

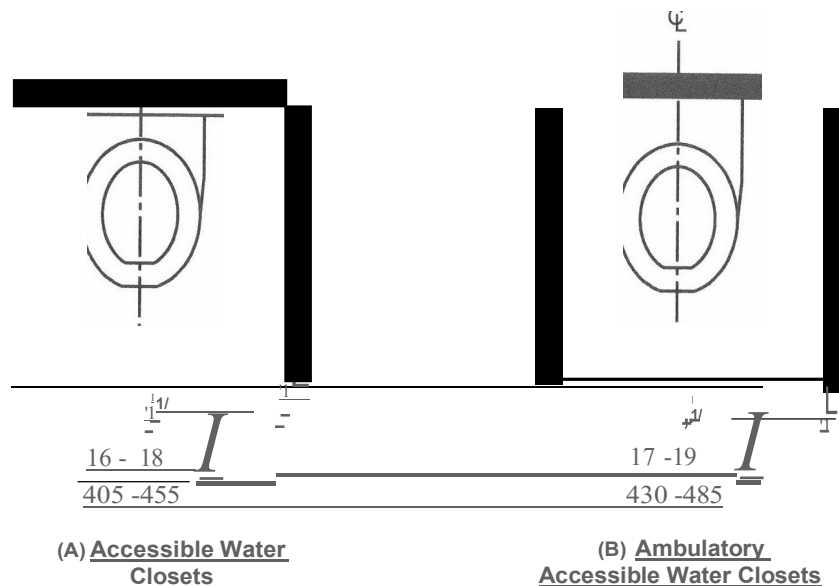
**604.1 General.** Water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with Section 603. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.9. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.10.

**Exception:** Water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 604.11 as applicable.

**604.2 Location.** The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall have the centerline of the water closet 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition.

**TABLE 603.6**  
**MAXIMUM REACH DEPTH AND HEIGHT**

|                             |                        |                        |                        |                        |                       |                       |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Maximum Reach Depth</b>  | 0.5 inch<br>(13 mm)    | 2 inches<br>(51 mm)    | 5 inches<br>(125 mm)   | 6 inches<br>(150 mm)   | 9 inches<br>(230 mm)  | 11 inches<br>(280 mm) |
| <b>Maximum Reach Height</b> | 48 inches<br>(1220 mm) | 46 inches<br>(1170 mm) | 42 inches<br>(1065 mm) | 40 inches<br>(1015 mm) | 36 inches<br>(915 mm) | 34 inches<br>(865 mm) |



**FIGURE 604.2**  
**WATER CLOSET LOCATION**

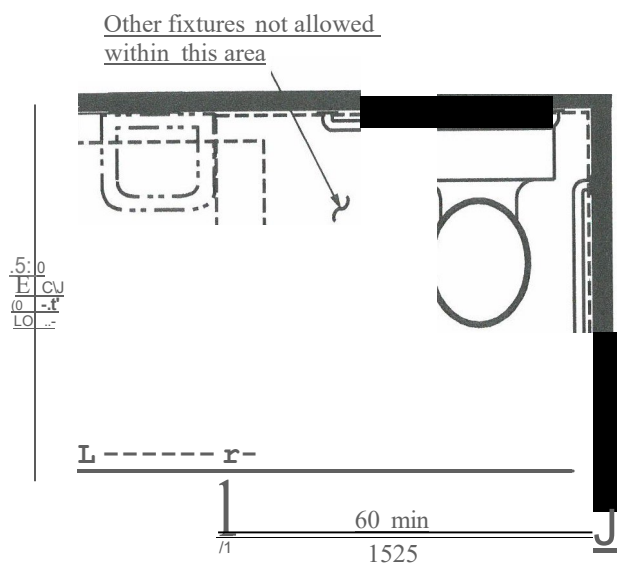


**604.3 Clearance.**

**604.3.1 Clearance width.** Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the sidewall.

**604.3.2 Clearance depth.** Clearance around the water closet shall be 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

**604.3.3 Clearance overlap.** The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, paper dispensers, sanitary napkin receptacles, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be within the required water closet clearance.

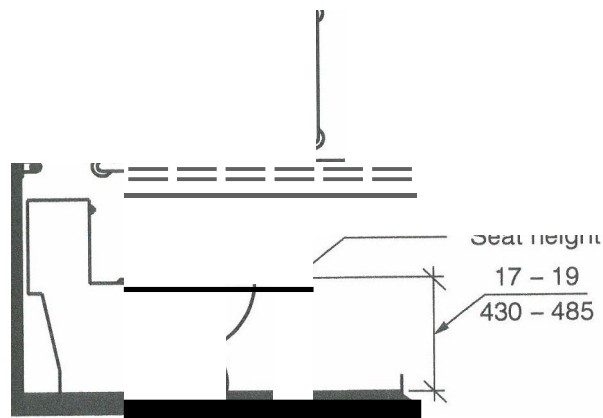


**FIGURE 604.3**  
**SIZE OF CLEARANCE FOR WATER CLOSET**

**604.4 Height.** The height of water closet seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

**Exceptions:**

1. A water closet which is adjustable in height by the user is permitted provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in this section.
2. A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with this section.



Note: For children's dimensions see Fig. 604.11.4

**FIGURE 604.4**  
**WATER CLOSET SEAT HEIGHT**

**604.5 Grab bars.** Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Sections 604.5.1 and 604.5.2. Grab bars shall be provided on the rear wall and on the side wall closest to the water closet.

**Exceptions:**

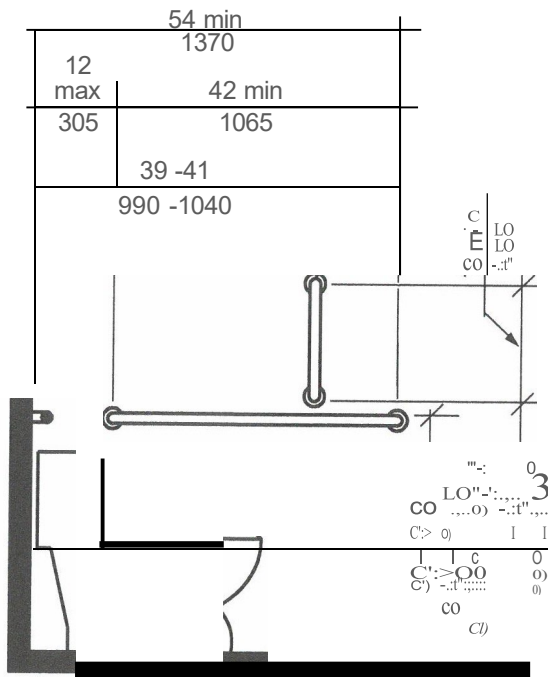
1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 604.5.
2. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells or rooms that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

**604.5.1 Fixed side-wall grab bars.** Fixed side-wall grab bars shall include a horizontal bar complying with Section

604.5.1.1 and a vertical grab bar complying with Section 604.5.1.2. The vertical grab bar at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

**604.5.1.1 Horizontal grab bar.** A horizontal grab bar 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length shall be located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extend 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum from the rear wall.

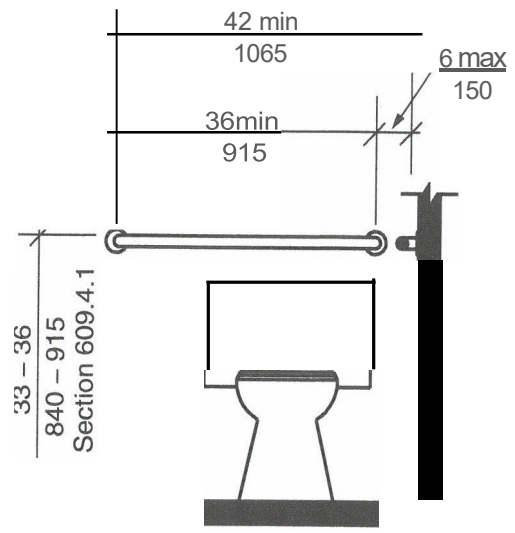
**604.5.1.2 Vertical grab bar.** A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located 39 inches (990 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1040 mm) maximum above the floor, and with the center line of the bar located 39 inches (990 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1040 mm) maximum from the rear wall.



Note: For children's dimensions see Fig. 609.4.2

**FIGURE 604.5.1**

**SIDE-WALL GRAB BAR FOR WATER CLOSET**



Note: For children's dimensions see Fig. 609.4.2

**FIGURE 604.5.2**

**REAR-WALL GRAB BAR FOR WATER CLOSET**

**604.5.2 Rear-wall grab bars.** The fixed rear-wall grab bar shall

1. Be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length,
2. Be located 6 inches maximum (150 mm) from the side wall, and
3. Extend 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum from the side wall.

**Exceptions:**

1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.
2. Where an administrative authority requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, that grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.

**604.6 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet.

**Exception:** In ambulatory accessible toilet compartments complying with Section 604.10, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.

**604.7 Dispensers.** Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Sections 309.4 and 609.3. Dispensers shall not be of a type that control delivery or do not allow continuous paper flow.

**604.7.1 Location.** Where the dispenser is located above the grab bar, the outlet of the dispenser shall be located within an area 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall. Where the dispenser is located below the grab bar, the outlet of the dispenser shall be located 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** Toilet paper dispensers that accommodate a maximum of 2 toilet paper rolls of not more than 5-inch (125 mm) diameter each shall be permitted to be located 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.

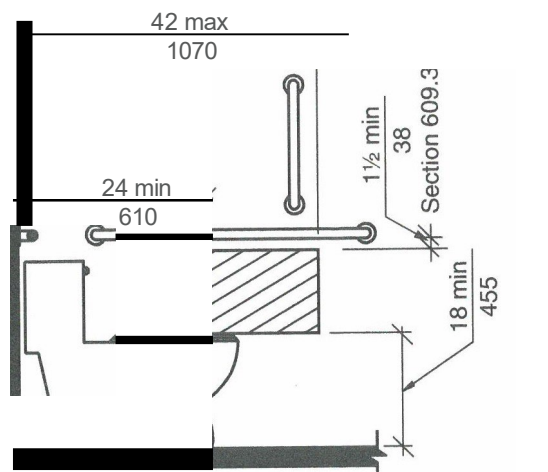


FIGURE 604.7.1(A)  
DISPENSER OUTLET LOCATION - PROTRUDING DISPENSER  
BELOW GRAB BAR

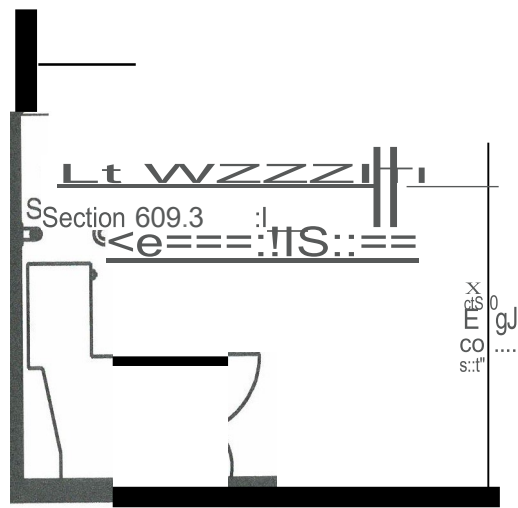
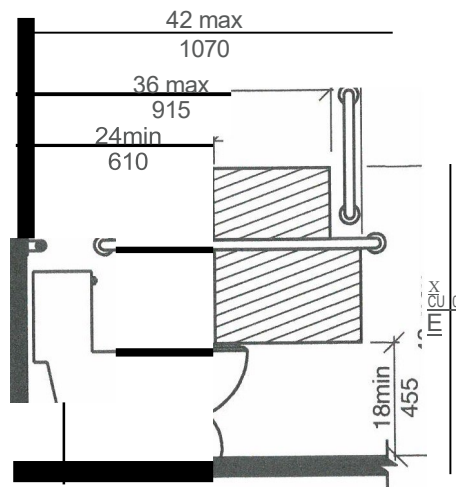
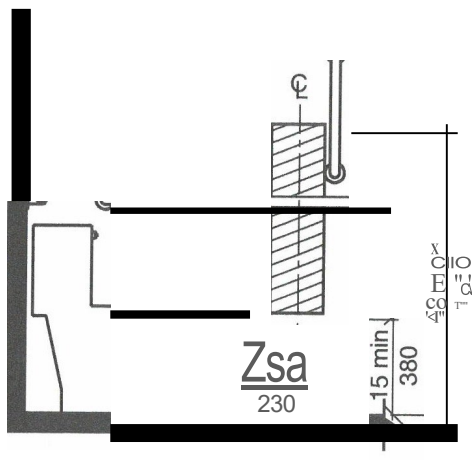


FIGURE 604.7.1(8)  
DISPENSER OUTLET LOCATION  
PROTRUDING DISPENSER ABOVE GRAB BAR



Note: For children's dimensions see Fig. 604.11.7 dispenser outlet location

FIGURE 604.7.1(C)  
DISPENSER OUTLET LOCATION  
RECESSED DISPENSER



**FIGURE 604.7.1(0)**  
**DISPENSER OUTLET LOCATION**  
**DISPENSER IN FRONT OF WATER CLOSET- EXCEPTION**

**604.8 Coat hooks and shelves.** Coat hooks provided within toilet compartments shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Shelves shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.

**604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.**

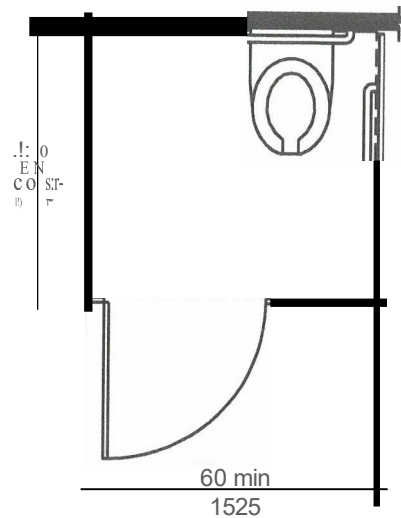
**604.9.1 General.** Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.

**604.9.2 Size.** Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.2.1, 604.9.2.2 or 604.9.2.3 as applicable.

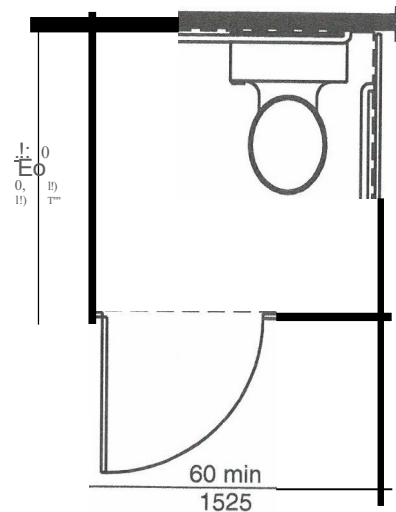
**604.9.2.1 Minimum area.** The minimum area of a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum in depth for wall hung water closets, and 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in depth for floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall.

**604.9.2.2 Compartment for children's use.** The minimum area of a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment primarily for children's use shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in depth for wall hung and floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall.

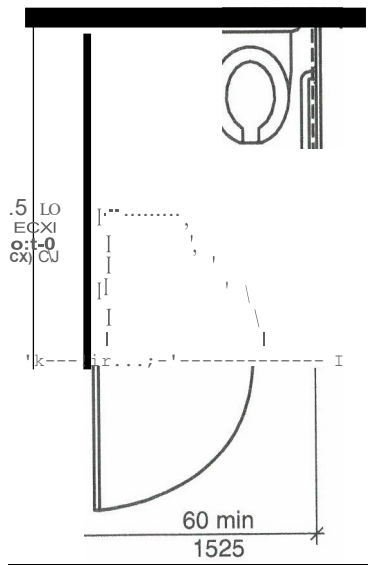
**604.9.2.3 Alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.** Where an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment is provided, the minimum area of the compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 84 inches (2135 mm) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular to the rear wall.



**FIGURE 604.9.2(A)**  
**WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENTS**  
**WALL HUNG CLOSET, ADULT**



**FIGURE 604.9.2(8)**  
**WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENTS**  
**FLOOR MOUNTED WATER CLOSET, ADULT · WALL HUNG**  
**AND FLOOR MOUNTED WATER CLOSET, CHILDREN**



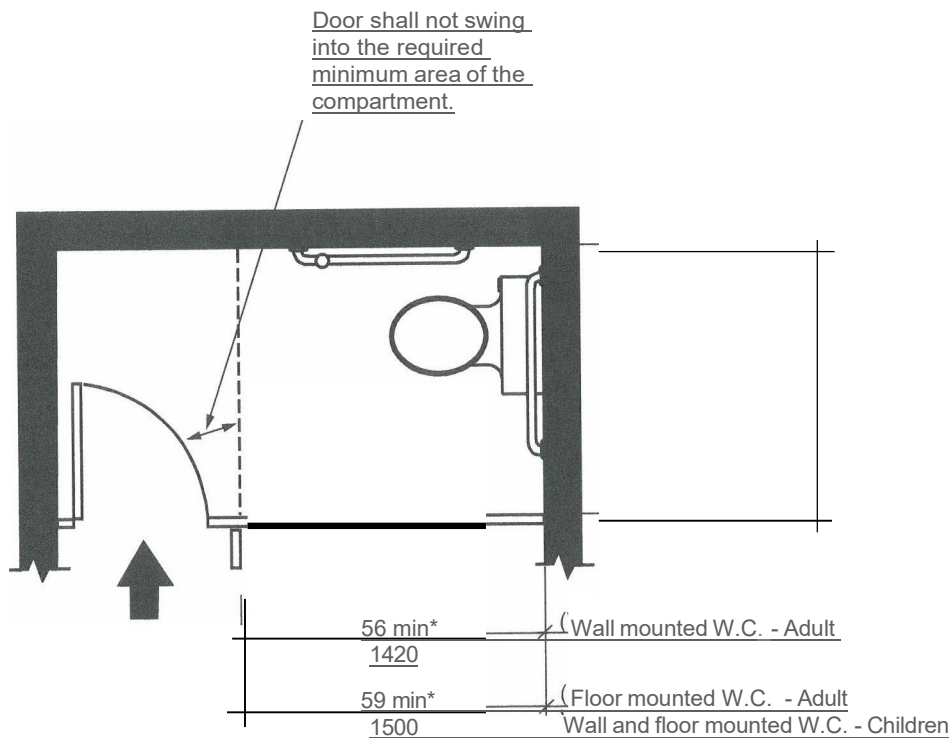
**FIGURE 604.9.2.3**  
**WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENTS**  
**ALTERNATE WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT**

**604.9.3 Doors.** Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.

**Exceptions:**

1. Outside of the compartment, where the approach is to the latch side of the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, door clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.
2. Within the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.
3. In an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, the door shall be permitted to swing into the stall where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the stall beyond the arc of the door swing.

**604.9.3.1 Door opening location.** The farthest edge of the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment door opening shall be located in the front wall or partition or in the side wall or partition as required by Table 604.9.3.1.



• Toilet compartment size per  
 Sections 604.9.2.1 and 604.9.2.2

**FIGURE 604.9.3(A)**  
**WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT DOORS**  
**DOOR SWINGING INTO THE WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT**

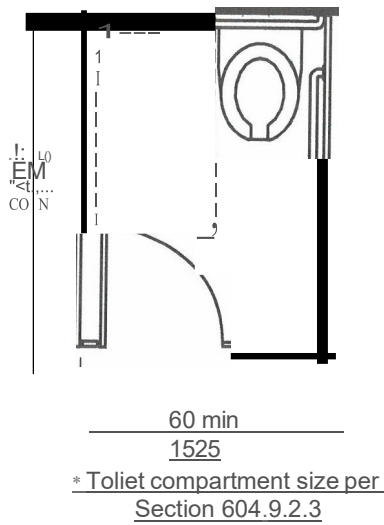


FIGURE 604.9.3(8)  
WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT DOORS  
EXCEPTION 3 • ALTERNATE WHEELCHAIR COMPARTMENT

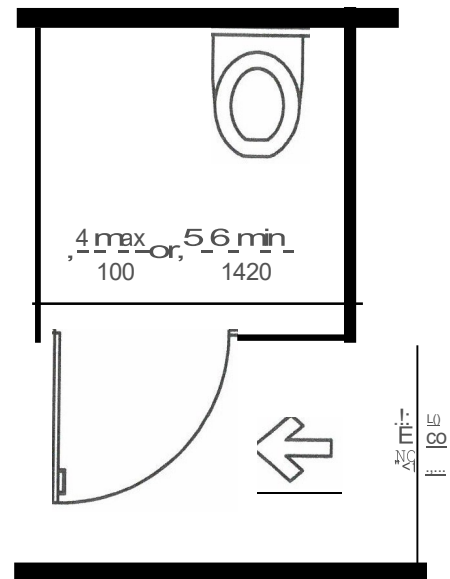


FIGURE 604.9.3.1(A)  
WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT DOOR OPENING  
LOCATION • DOOR SWINGING IN ON FRONT WALL OF  
PARTITION

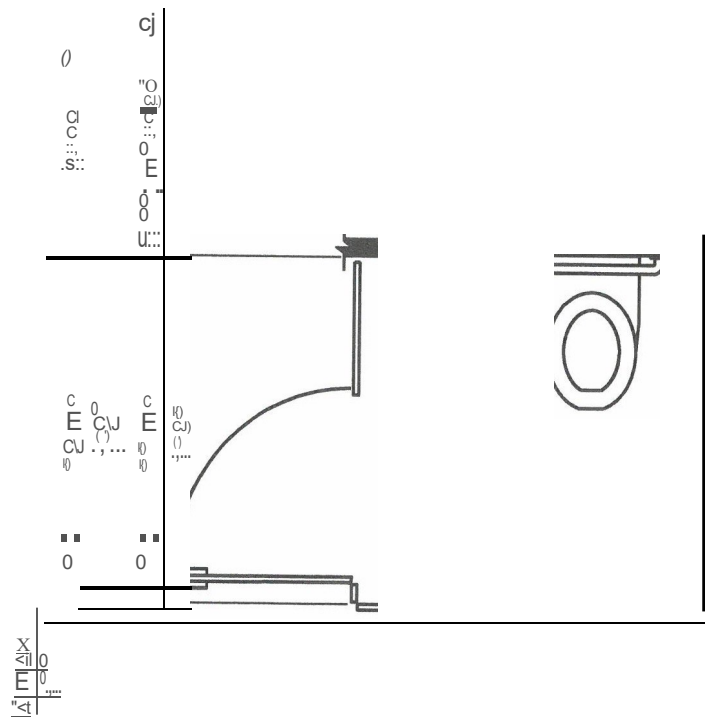


FIGURE 604.9.3.1(8)  
WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT DOOR OPENING LOCATION  
DOOR SWINGING IN ON SIDE WALL OF PARTITIONS

TABLE 604.9.3.1-DOOR OPENING LOCATION

| Door Opening Location                                | Measured From  | Dimension                   |
|--|--|-----------------------------|
| Front Wall or Partition                              | From the side wall or partition closest to the water closet    | 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum |
|  | or   |                             |
|  | From the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet | 4 inches (100 mm) maximum   |
| Side Wall or Partition<br>Wall-Hung Water Closet     | From the rear wall   | 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum |
|  | or   |                             |
|  | From the front wall or partition                               | 4 inches (100 mm) maximum   |
| Side Wall or Partition<br>Floor-Mounted Water Closet | From the rear wall   | 55 inches (1395 mm) minimum |
|  | or   |                             |
|  | From the front wall or partition                               | 4 inches (100 mm) maximum   |

**604.9.4 Approach.** Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.

**604.9.5 Toe clearance.** Toe clearance for wheelchair accessible toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 604.9.5.2. Toe clearance for other wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.5.1.

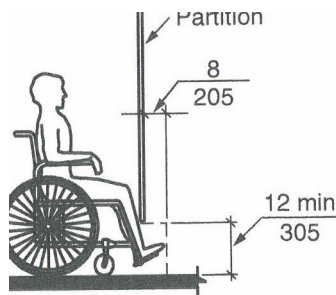


FIGURE 604.9.5(A)  
TOE CLEARANCE - ELEVATION

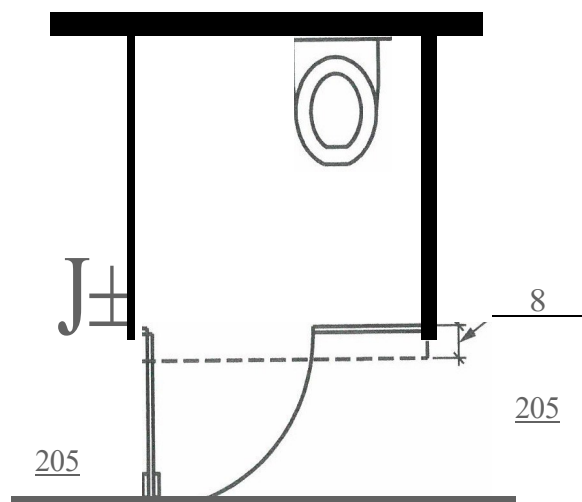


FIGURE 604.9.5(6)  
TOE CLEARANCE - PLAN

**604.9.5.1 Toe clearance at wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.** The front partition and at least one side partition of wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members.

**Exceptions:**

1. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 64 inches (1625 mm) in depth with a wall-hung water closet, or greater than 67 inches (1700 mm) in depth with a floor-mounted water closet.
2. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 68 inches (1725 mm) in width.

**604.9.5.2 Toe clearance at wheelchair accessible toilet compartments for children's use.** The front partition and at least one side partition of wheelchair accessible toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members.

**Exceptions:**

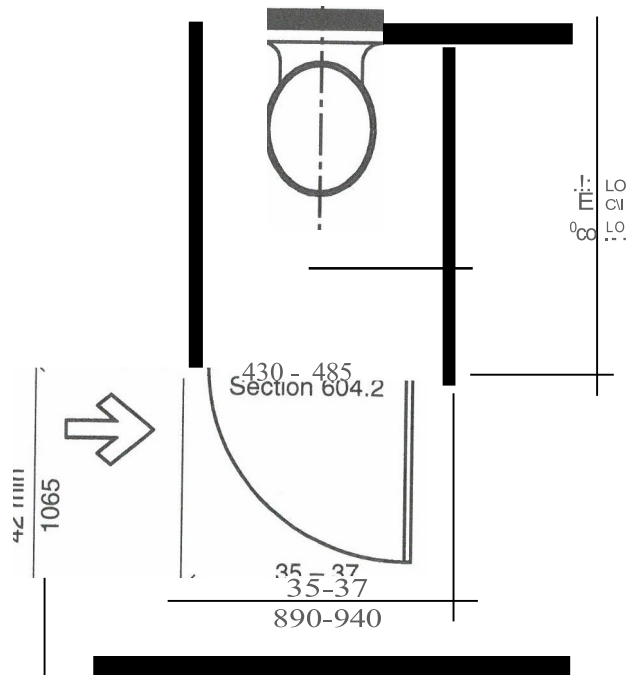
1. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 67 inches (1700 mm) in depth.
2. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 68 inches (1725 mm) in width.

**604.9.6 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with Section 609. Side wall grab bars complying with Section 604.5.1 located on the wall closest to the water closet, and a rear wall grab bar complying with Section 604.5.2, shall be provided.

**604.10 Ambulatory accessible toilet compartments.**

**604.10.1 General.** Ambulatory accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.10.





**FIGURE 604.10.1**  
**AMBULATORY COMPARTMENT**

**604.10.2 Size.** The minimum area of an ambulatory accessible toilet compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth and a width of 35 inches (890 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum.

**604.10.3 Doors.** Ambulatory accessible toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.

**Exceptions:**

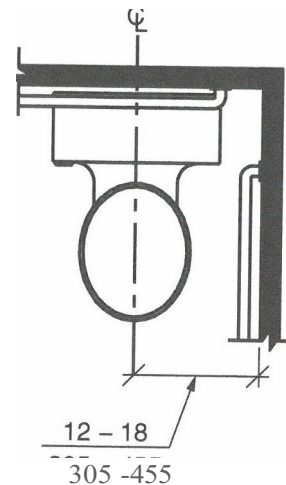
1. Outside of the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment, where the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.
2. Within the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.

**604.10.4 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with Section 609. Side wall grab bars complying with Section 604.5.1 shall be provided on both sides of the compartment.

**604.11 Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use.**

**604.11.1 General.** Water closets and wheelchair and ambulatory accessible toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 604.11.

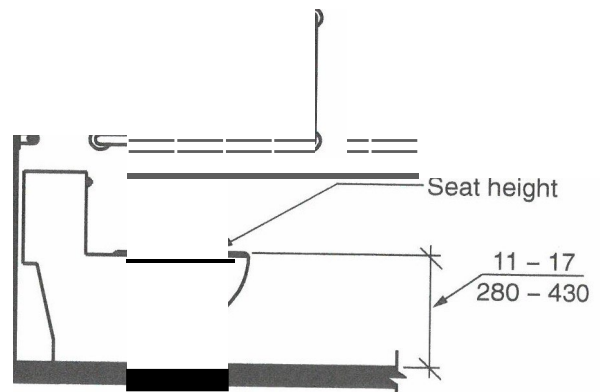
**604.11.2 Location.** The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall be located as specified in Section 604.2.



**FIGURE 604.11.2**  
**CHILDREN'S WATER CLOSET LOCATION**

**604.11.3 Clearance.** A clearance around the water closet complying with Section 604.3 shall be provided.

**604.11.4 Height.** The height of water closet seats shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum and 17 inches (430 mm) maximum.



Note: For adult dimensions see Fig. 604.4

**FIGURE 604.11.4**  
**CHILDREN'S WATER CLOSET HEIGHT**



maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

**604.11.5 Grab bars.** Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 604.5.

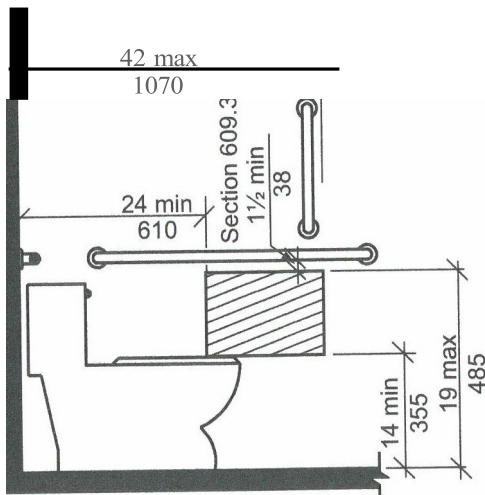
**604.11.6 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.4 and shall be installed 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet.

**Exception:** In ambulatory accessible toilet compartments complying with Section 604.10, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.

**604.11.7 Dispensers.** Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Section 309.4. Dispensers shall not be of a type that control delivery or do not allow continuous paper flow.

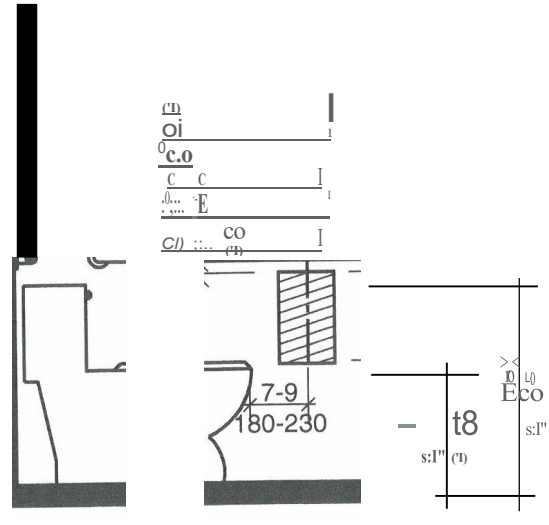
**604.11.7.1 Location.** The outlet of toilet paper dispensers shall be located within an area 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 42 inches (1065 mm) maximum from the rear wall. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** Toilet paper dispensers that accommodate a maximum of 2 toilet paper rolls of not more than 5-inch diameter each shall be permitted to be located 7 inches minimum and 9 inches maximum in front of the of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor.



Note: For adult dimensions see Fig. 604.7

**FIGURE 604.11.7(A)**  
**CHILDREN'S DISPENSER OUTLET LOCATION**



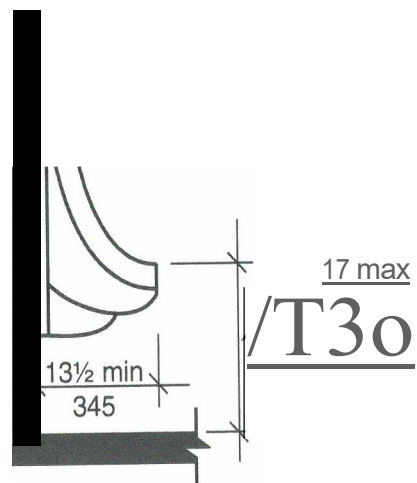
**FIGURE 604.11.7(8)**  
**CHILDREN'S DISPENSER OUTLET EXCEPTION**

**604.11.8 Toilet compartments.** Wheelchair and ambulatory accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Sections 604.9 and 604.10, as applicable.

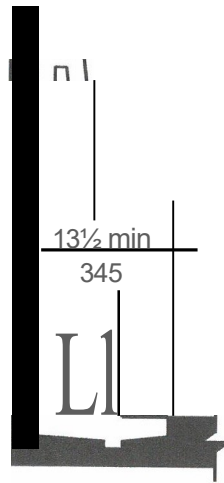
## SECTION 605 URINALS

**605.1 General.** Urinals shall comply with Section 605.

**605.2 Height and depth.** Urinals shall be of the stall type or shall be of the wall hung type with the rim at 17 inches (430 mm) maximum above the floor. Urinals shall be 13½ inches (345 mm) minimum in depth measured from the outer face of the urinal rim to the finished wall surface.



**FIGURE 605.2(A)**  
**HEIGHT AND DEPTH OF URINAL**  
**WALL HUNG TYPE**



**FIGURE 605.2(6)**  
**HEIGHT AND DEPTH OF URINAL**  
**STALL TYPE**

**605.3 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space positioned for forward approach shall be provided.

**605.4 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309.

## **SECTION 606** **LAVATORIES AND SINKS**

**606.1 General.** Lavatories and sinks shall comply with Section 606.

**606.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.

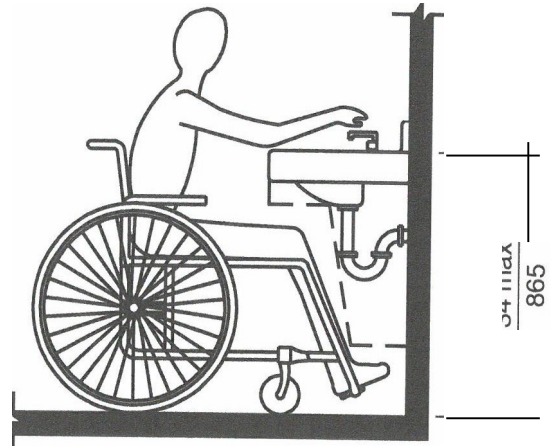
### **Exceptions:**

1. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
2. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use.
3. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 where the higher of the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the floor.
4. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 5 and younger.
5. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multibowl sink.

6. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at wet bars.

**606.3 Height.** The front of lavatories and sinks shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.

**Exception:** A lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with Section 606.3.



**FIGURE 606.3**  
**HEIGHT OF LAVATORIES AND SINKS**

**606.4 Faucets.** Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

**Exception:** Automatic faucets shall not be required to comply with Section 309 provided that the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water flow is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.

**606.5 Lavatories with enhanced reach range.** Where enhanced reach range is required at lavatories, faucets and soap dispenser controls shall have a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum. Water and soap outlets shall be provided with a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum. The lavatory shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Enhanced reach range faucets shall not be required on lavatories provided with automatic faucets where the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water outlet is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.
2. Enhanced reach range soap dispensers shall not be required on lavatories provided with automatic dispensers where the reach depth to activate the soap dispensers and the reach depth to the soap outlet is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.

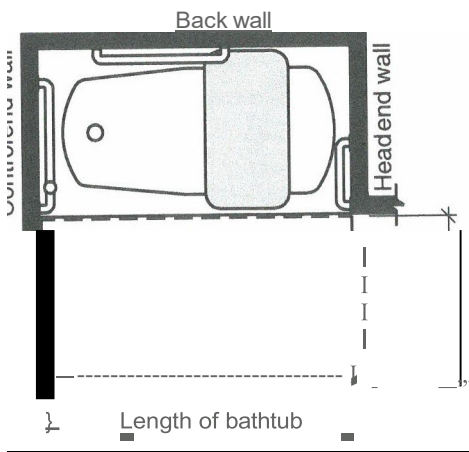
**606.6 Exposed pipes and surfaces.** Water supply and drain-pipes under lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or other-

wise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks.

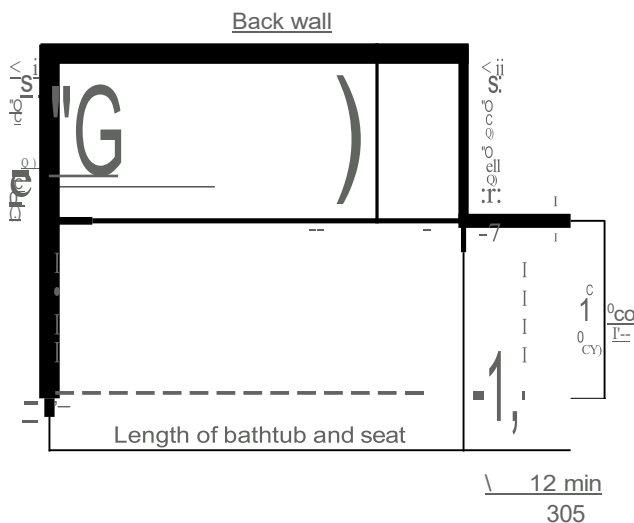
## SECTION 607 BATHTUBS

**607.1 General.** Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

**607.2 Clearance.** A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.



**FIGURE 607.2(A)**  
**CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH**  
**REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS**



**FIGURE 607.2(6)**  
**CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH**  
**SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB**

**607.3 Seat.** A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with Section 610.

**607.4 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

**Exception:** Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

**607.4.1 Bathtubs with permanent seats.** For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars complying with Section

607.4.1 shall be provided.

**607.4.1.1 Back wall.** Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

**607.4.1.2 Control end wall.** Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

**Exception:** An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

**607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar.** A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

**607.4.1.2.2 Vertical grab bar.** A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

**607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable seats.** For bathtubs with removable seats, grab bars complying with Section

607.4.2 shall be provided.

**607.4.2.1 Back wall.** Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

**607.4.2.2 Control end wall.** Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

**607.4.2.3 Head end wall.** A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

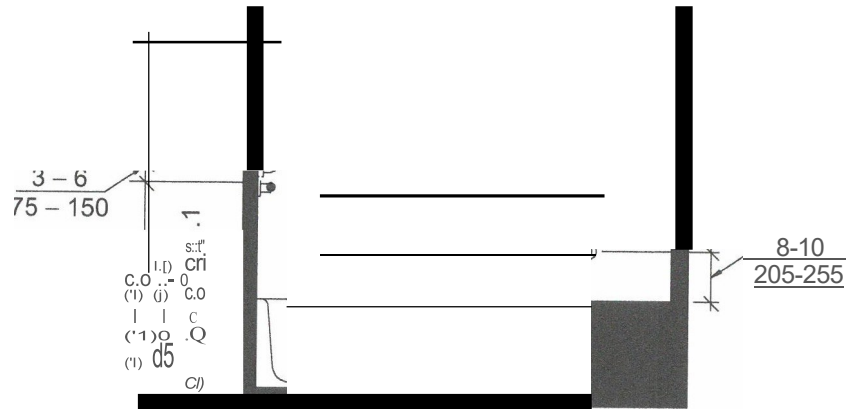


FIGURE 607.4.1(A)  
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB - ELEVATION

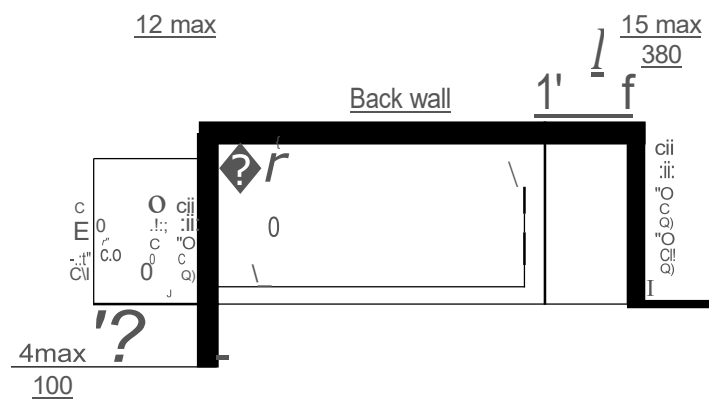


FIGURE 607.4.1(6)  
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB - PLAN

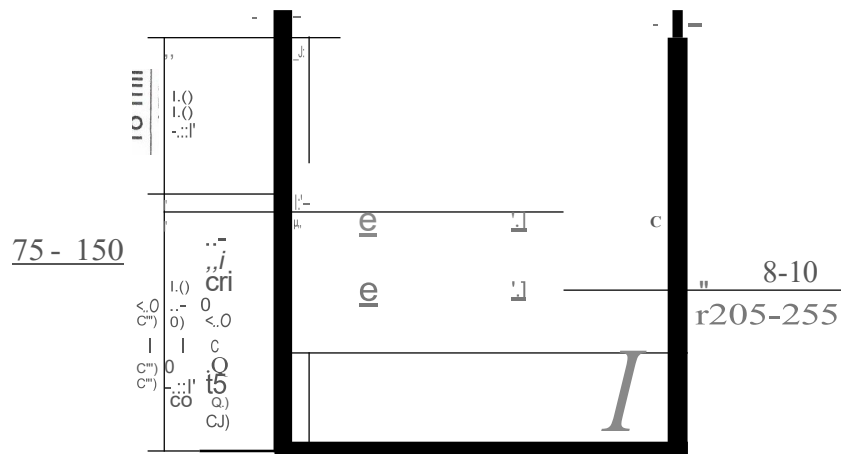
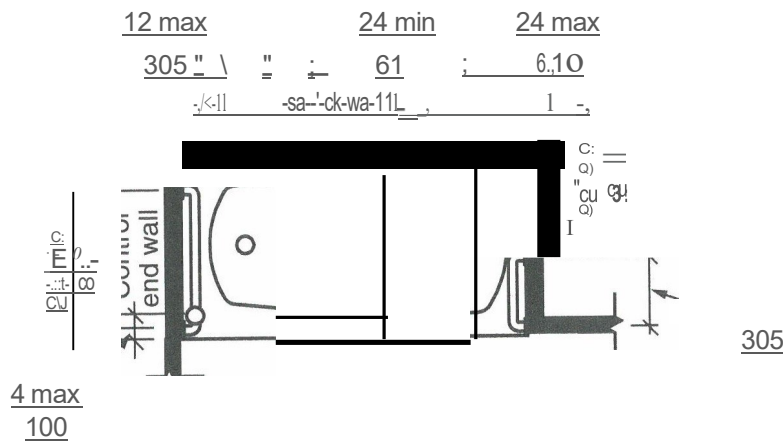
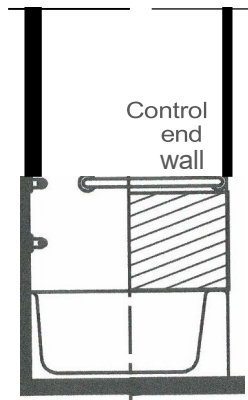


FIGURE 607.4.2(A)  
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS - ELEVATION



**FIGURE 607.4.2(8)**  
**GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS - PLAN**

**607.5 Controls.** Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.



**FIGURE 607.5**  
**LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS**

**607.6 Hand shower.** A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

**607.7 Bathtub enclosures.** Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the bathtub.

**607.8 Water temperature.** Bathtubs shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

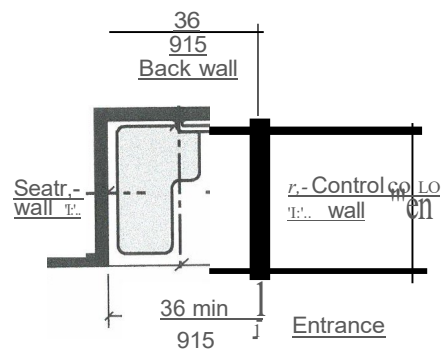
## SECTION 608 SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

**608.1 General.** Shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.

**608.2 Size, clearance and seat.** Shower compartments shall have sizes, clearances and seats complying with Section 608.2.

**608.2.1 Transfer-type shower compartments.** Transfer-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.1.

**608.2.1.1 Size.** Transfer-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 36 inches (915 mm) in width and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.



Note: inside finished dimensions measured  
at the center points of opposing sides

**FIGURE 608.2.1.1**  
**TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE**

#### 608.2.1.2 Clearance.

**608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915

mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the clear floor space shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall.

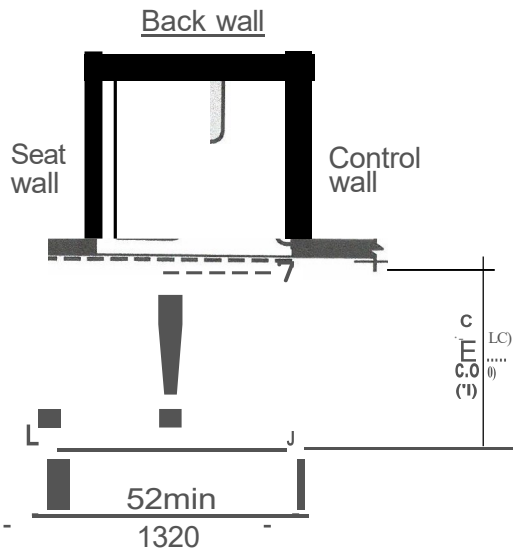


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(A)

**TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES  
NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 1**

**608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment.

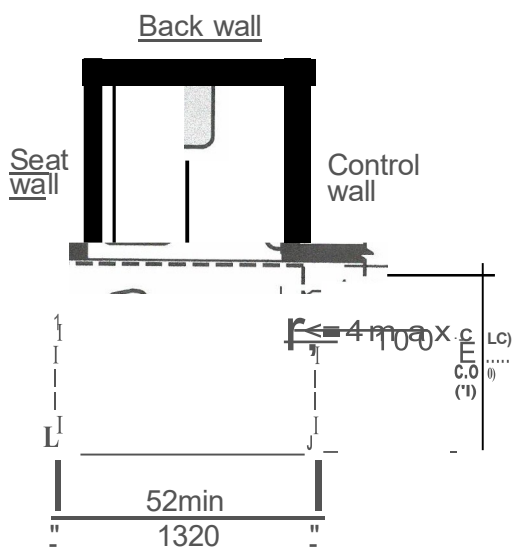


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(B)

**TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES  
NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 2**

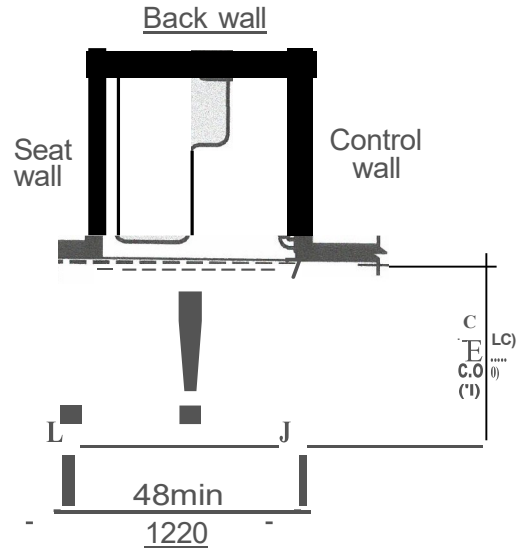


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(C)

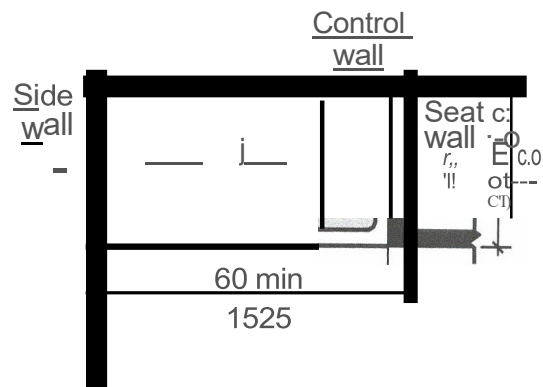
**TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES  
EXISTING BUILDINGS**

**608.2.1.3 Seat.** A folding or non-folding seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided on the wall opposite the control wall.

**Exception:** A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat.

**608.2.2 Standard roll-in-type shower compartments.** Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.2.

**608.2.2.1 Size.** Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.



**Note:** inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

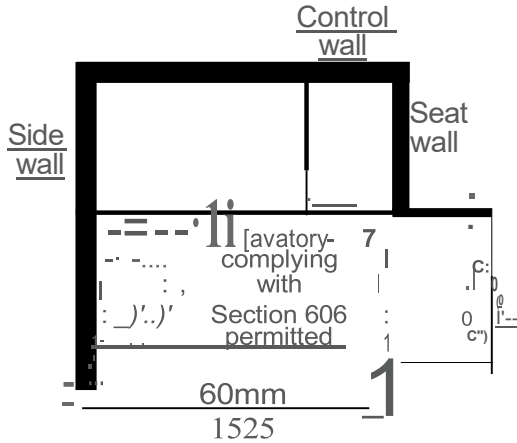
FIGURE 608.2.2.1

**STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE**



**608.2.2.2 Clearance.** A clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length adjacent to the 60-inch (1525 mm) width of the open face of the shower compartment, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, shall be provided.

**Exception:** A lavatory complying with Section 606 shall be permitted at the end of the clearance opposite the seat.



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

**FIGURE 608.2.2.2**  
**STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCE**

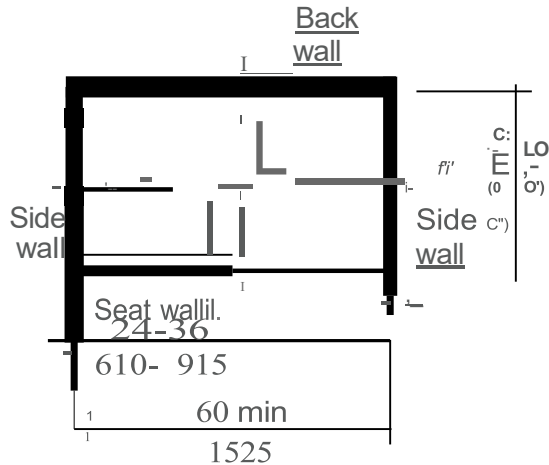
**608.2.2.3 Seat.** A folding seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided on an end wall.

**Exceptions:**

1. A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat.
2. A fixed seat shall be permitted where the seat does not overlap the minimum clear inside dimension required by Section 608.2.2.1.

**608.2.3 Alternate roll-in-type shower compartments.** Alternate roll-in-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.3.

**608.2.3.1 Size.** Alternate roll-in shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided at one end of the 60-inch (1525 mm) width of the compartment. A seat wall, 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in length, shall be provided on the entry side of the compartment.



**FIGURE 608.2.3.1**  
**ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE**

**608.2.3.2 Seat.** A folding seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided on the seat wall opposite the back

wall.

**Exception:** A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat.

**608.3 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.3. Where multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the floor.

**Exception:** Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 608.3.

**608.3.1 Transfer-type showers.** Grab bars for transfer type showers shall comply with Section 608.3.1.

**608.3.1.1 Horizontal grab bars.** Horizontal grab bars shall be provided across the control wall and on the back wall to a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the control wall.

**Vertical grab bar.** A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

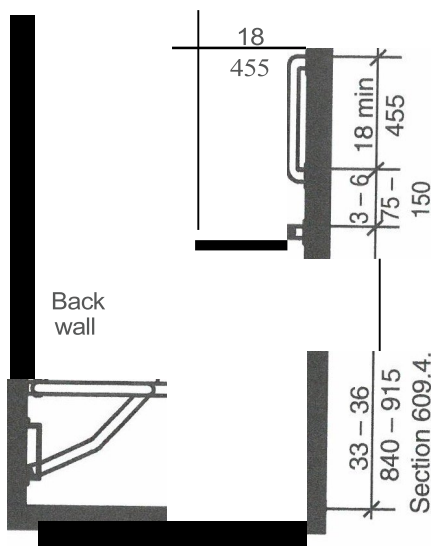


FIGURE 608.3.1(A)  
GRAB BARS IN TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER - ELEVATION

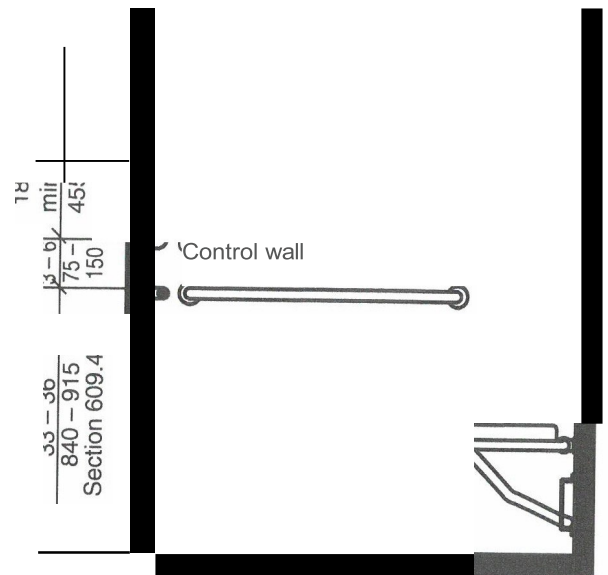


FIGURE 608.3.2(A)  
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER  
ELEVATION

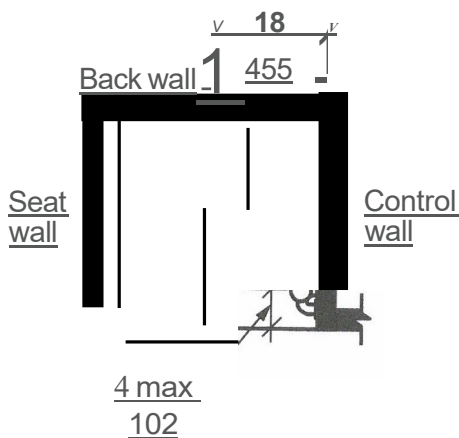
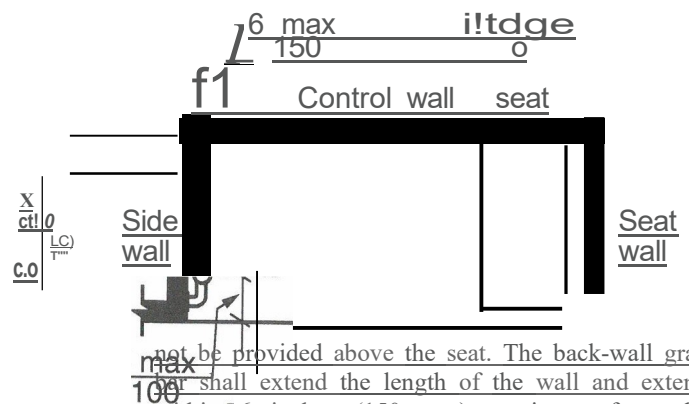


FIGURE 608.3.1(6)  
GRAB BARS IN TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER - PLAN



not be provided above the seat. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side wall opposite the seat.

**Exceptions:**

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.
2. The back-wall grab bar is not required to extend within 6 inches (150 mm) of the adjacent side wall opposite the seat if it would require the grab bar length to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.

**608.3.2 Standard roll-in-type showers.** Grab bars in standard roll-in showers shall comply with Sections 608.3.2.1 through 608.3.2.3.

**608.3.2.1 Back-wall grab bar.** In standard roll-in type showers, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall beginning at the edge of the seat. The grab bars shall



**FIGURE 608.3.2(6)**  
**GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER**  
**PLAN**

**608.3.2.2 Side-wall grab bars.** Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1 830 mm) of the seat wall, a grab bar shall be provided on the side-wall opposite the seat. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

**Exception:** The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length.

**608.3.2.3 Vertical grab bar.** Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1830 mm) of the seat wall a vertical grab bar shall be provided. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

**608.3.3 Alternate roll-in-type showers.** In alternate roll-in type showers, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall adjacent to the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.

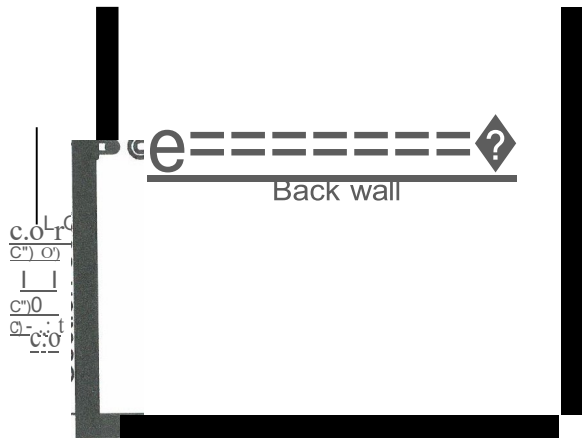


FIGURE 608.3.3(A)  
GRAB BARS IN ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE  
SHOWER ELEVATION

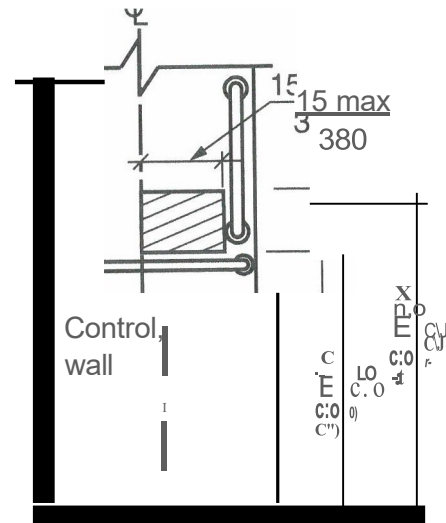


FIGURE 608.4.1  
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND  
HAND SHOWER LOCATION

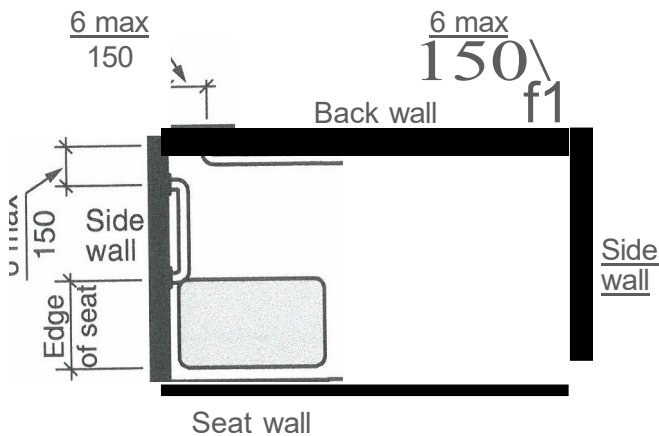


FIGURE 608.3.3(8)  
GRAB BARS IN ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE  
SHOWER - PLAN

**608.4 Controls and hand showers.** Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

**608.4.1 Transfer-type showers.** In transfer-type showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

**608.4.2 Standard roll-in showers.** In standard roll-in showers, the controls and hand shower shall not be located above the seat. Controls and hand showers shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

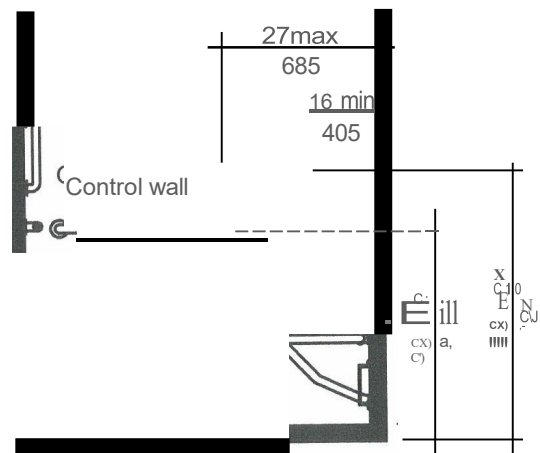


FIGURE 608.4.2  
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND  
HAND SHOWER LOCATION

**608.4.3 Alternate roll-in showers.** In alternate roll-in showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and

2. Where the controls and hand shower are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat wall, or
3. Where the controls and hand shower are located on the back wall opposite the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.

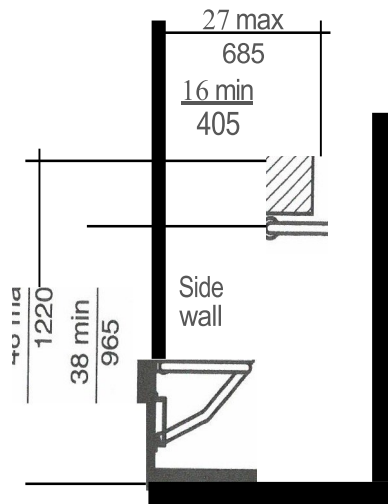


FIGURE 608.4.3(A)

ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION - END WALL - ELEVATION

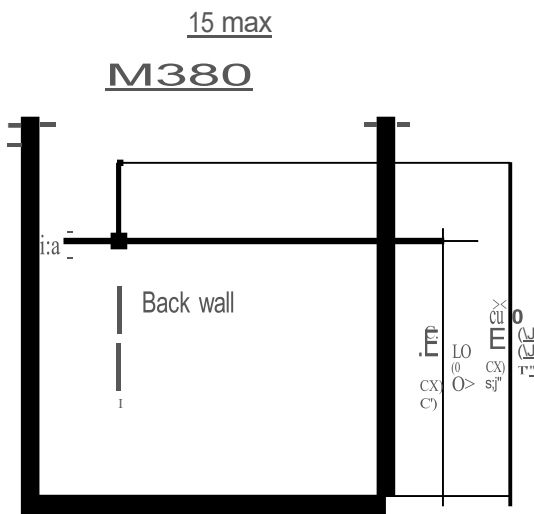


FIGURE 608.4.3(8)

ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION - CONTROL WALL - ELEVATION

**608.5 Hand showers.** A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand

shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower wand while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor.

**Exception:** In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

**608.6 Thresholds.** Thresholds in roll-in-type shower compartments shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) maximum in height in accordance with Section 303. In transfer-type shower compartments, thresholds  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) maximum in height shall be beveled, rounded, or vertical.

**Exception:** In existing facilities, in transfer-type shower compartments where provision of a threshold  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in height would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab, a threshold 2 inches (51 mm) maximum in height shall be permitted.

**608.7 Shower enclosures.** Shower compartment enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.

**608.8 Water temperature.** Showers shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

## SECTION 609 GRAB BARS

**609.1 General.** Grab bars in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

**609.2 Cross section.** Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

**609.2.1 Circular cross section.** Grab bars with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

**609.2.2 Noncircular cross section.** Grab bars with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

**609.3 Spacing.** The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

### Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.



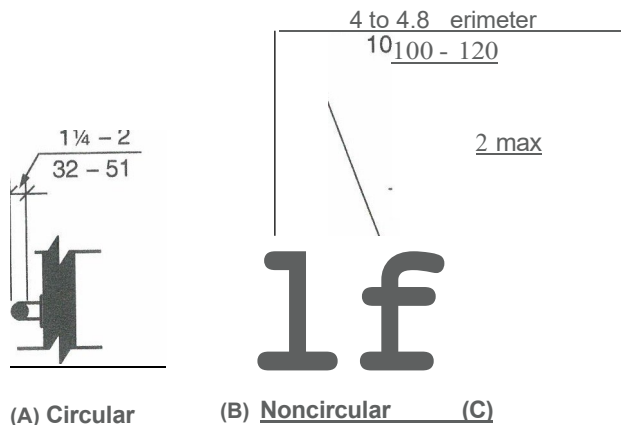


FIGURE 609.2  
SIZE OF GRAB BARS

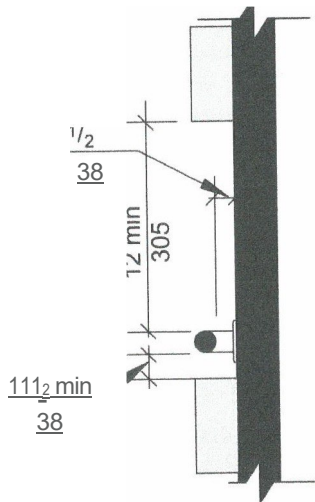


FIGURE 609.3  
SPACING OF GRAB BARS

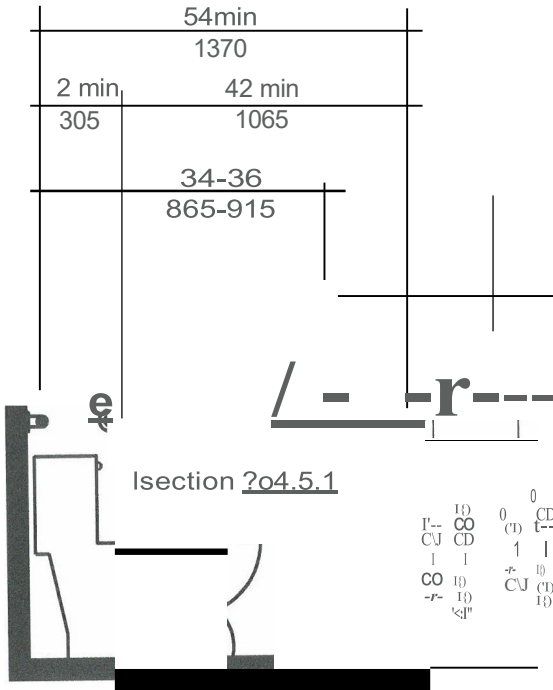
609.4 Position of grab bars.

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.

- I. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.

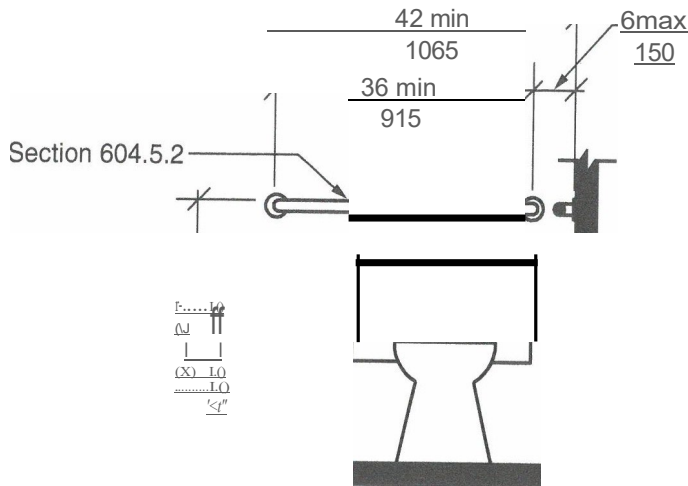
- 2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
- 3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located between 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located between 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.



Note: For adult dimensions see Fig. 604.5.1

FIGURE 609.4.2(A)  
POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS  
SIDE-WALL VIEW



Note: For adult dimensions see Fig. 604.5.2

**FIGURE 609.4.2(8)**  
**POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS**  
**REAR-WALL VIEW**

**609.5 Surface hazards.** Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.

**609.6 Fittings.** Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

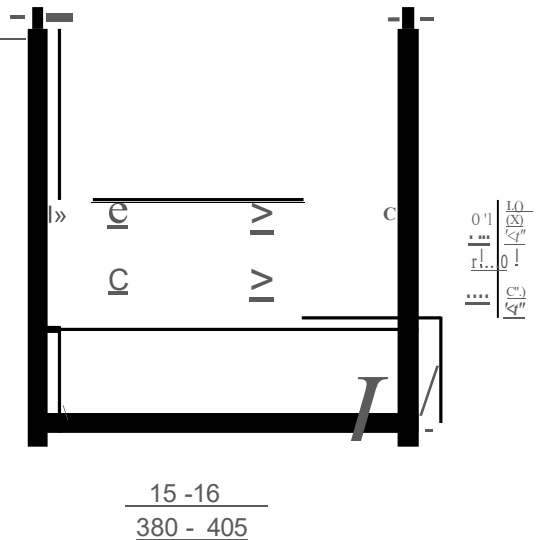
**609.7 Installation and configuration.** Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.

**609.8 Structural strength.** Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

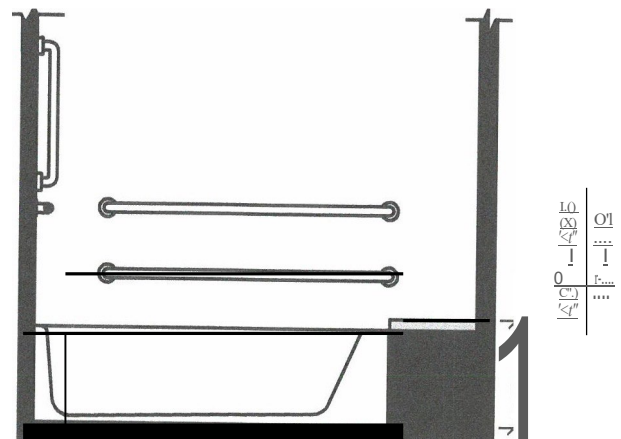
## **SECTION 610** **SEATS**

**610.1 General.** Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 610.

**610.2 Bathtub seats.** The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement. Permanent seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. Permanent seats shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.



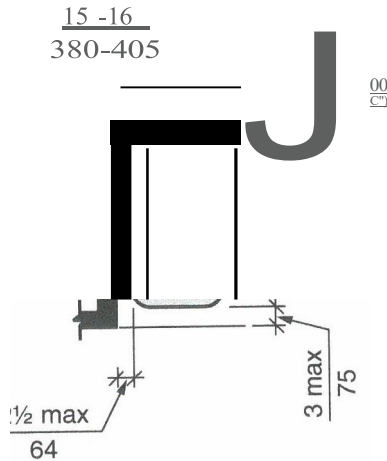
**FIGURE 610.2(A)**  
**BATHTUB SEATS**  
**REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS**



**FIGURE 610.2(8)**  
**BATHTUB SEATS**  
**SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB**

**610.3 Shower compartment seats.** The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

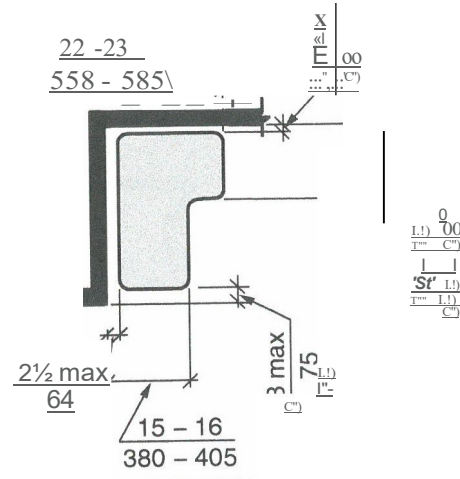
**610.3.1 Rectangular seats.** The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall of a transfer-type shower and 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall of a roll-in-type shower.



**FIGURE 610.3.1**  
**RECTANGULAR SHOWER COMPARTMENT SEATS**

**610.3.2 L-shaped seats.** The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355

mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches (585 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.



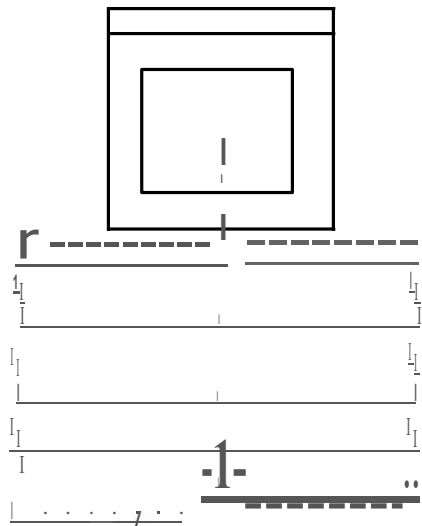
**FIGURE 610.3.2**  
**L-SHAPED SHOWER COMPARTMENT SEATS**

**610.4 Structural strength.** Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

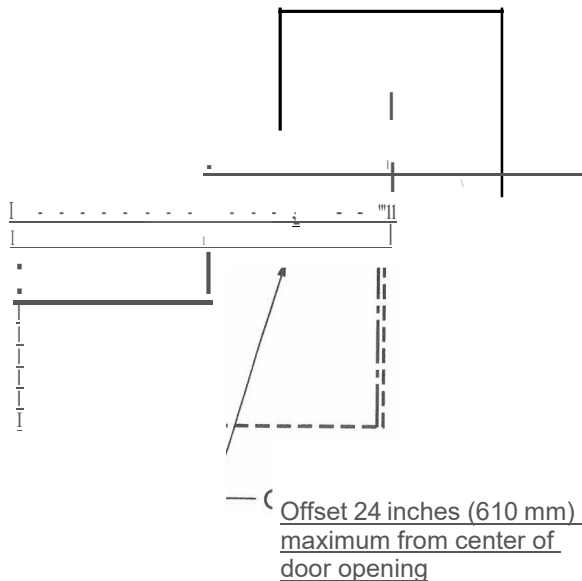
## SECTION 611 WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

**611.1 General.** Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.

**611.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. For top loading machines, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance. For front loading machines, the centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the door opening.



Centered on the  
appliance  
**FIGURE 611.2(A)**  
**CLEAR FLOOR SPACE • TOP LOADING**

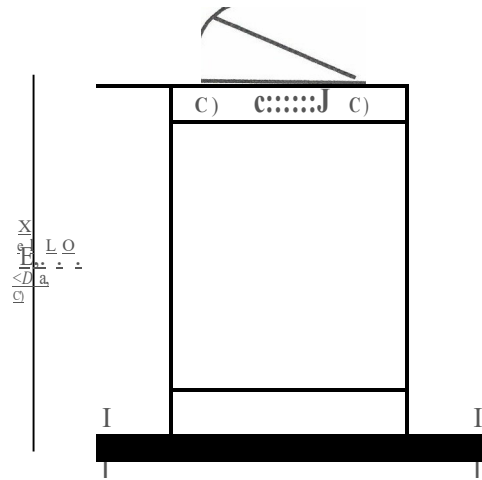


**FIGURE 611.2(8)**  
**CLEAR FLOOR SPACE • FRONT LOADING**

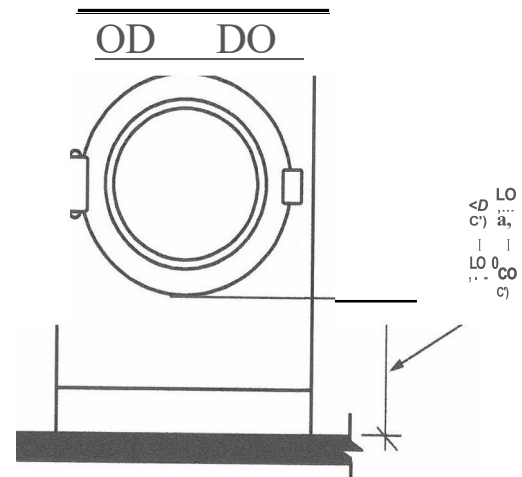
**611.3 Operable parts.** Operable parts, including doors, lint screens, detergent and bleach compartments, shall comply with Sections 308 and 309.

**Exception:** The height of the obstruction in Section 308.3.2 shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor.

**611.4 Height.** Top loading machines shall have the door to the laundry compartment 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor.



**FIGURE 611.4(A)**  
**HEIGHT OF LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT • TOP LOADING**



**FIGURE 611.4(8)**  
**HEIGHT OF LAUNDRY EQUIPMENT • FRONT LOADING**



**SECTION 612**  
**SAUNAS AND STEAM ROOMS**

**612.1 General.** Saunas and steam rooms shall comply with Section 612.

**612.2 Bench.** Where seating is provided in saunas and steam rooms, at least one bench shall comply with Section 903. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required by Section 903.2.

**Exception:** Where the room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, the door shall not be required to comply with this section.

**612.3 Turning space.** A turning space shall be provided within saunas and steam rooms.

## CHAPTER 8

# SPECIAL ROOMS AND SPACES

### SECTION 801 GENERAL

**801.1 Scope.** Special rooms and spaces required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 8.

### SECTION 804 KITCHENS

**804.1 General.** Kitchens shall comply with Section 804.

**804.2 Clearance.** Where a pass-through kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with Section 804.2.1. Where a U-shaped kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with Section 804.2.2. Kitchens where a cook top or conventional range is not provided shall comply with Section 804.2.3.

**804.2.1 Pass-through kitchens.** In pass-through kitchens where counters, appliances or cabinets are on two opposing sides, or where counters, appliances or cabinets are opposite a parallel wall, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum. Pass-through kitchens shall have two entries.

**804.2.2 U-shaped kitchens.** In kitchens enclosed on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** U-shaped kitchens with an island complying with Section 804.2.1.

**804.2.3 Spaces where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.** In a kitchen space where a cooktop or conventional range is not provided, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances and walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40-inch (1015 mm) minimum.

**804.3 Work surface.** At least one accessible work surface 30 inches minimum in length shall be provided in accordance with Section 902. The work surface shall be located in accordance with Section 804.5.5.2 or 804.5.5.3.

**Exception:** Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to provide an accessible work surface.

**804.4 Sinks.** The sink shall comply with Section 606.

**804.5 Appliances.** Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with Section 804.5.

**804.5.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space shall be provided at each kitchen appliance.

**804.5.2 Operable parts.** All appliance controls shall comply with Section 309.

#### **Exceptions:**

- I. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with Section 309.4.

2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with Section 309.3.

**804.5.3 Dishwasher.** A clear floor space positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door, shall be provided. The dishwasher door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the dishwasher or an adjacent sink.

**804.5.4 Cooktop.** Cooktops shall comply with Section 804.5.4.

**804.5.4.1 Approach.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

**804.5.4.2 Forward approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The underside of the cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or electrical shock.

**804.5.4.3 Parallel approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance.

**804.5.4.4 Controls.** The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.

**804.5.5 Oven.** Ovens shall comply with Section 804.5.5.

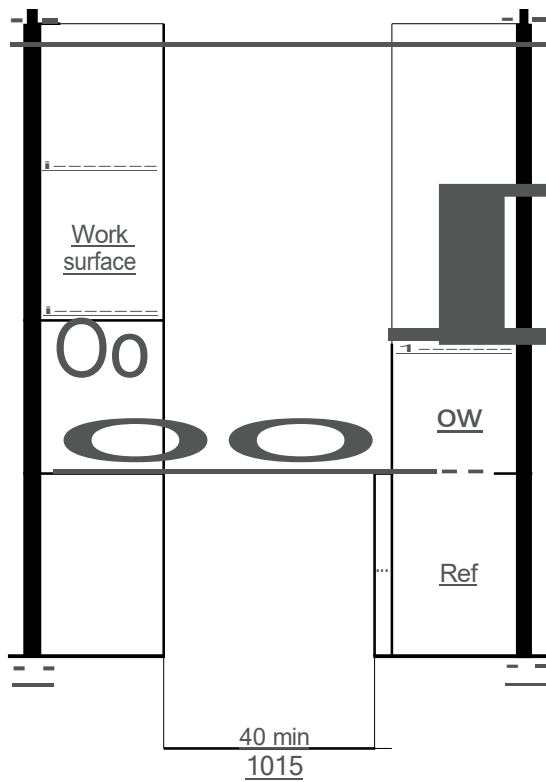
**804.5.5.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space shall be provided. The oven door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the oven.

**804.5.5.2 Side-hinged door ovens.** Side-hinged door ovens shall have a work surface complying with Section 804.3 positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.

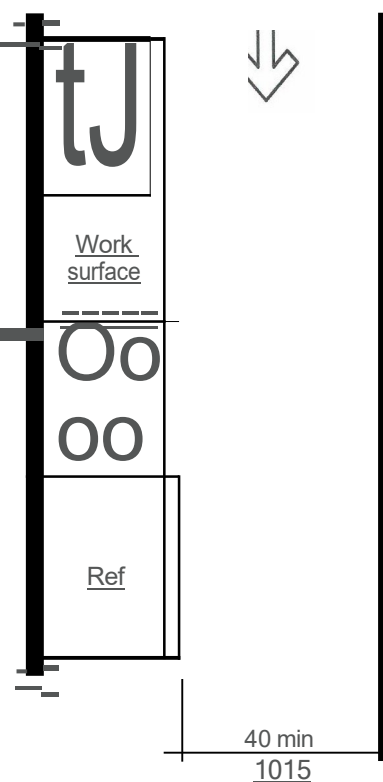
**804.5.5.3 Bottom-hinged door ovens.** Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have a work surface complying with Section 804.3 positioned adjacent to one side of the door.

**804.5.5.4 Controls.** The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.

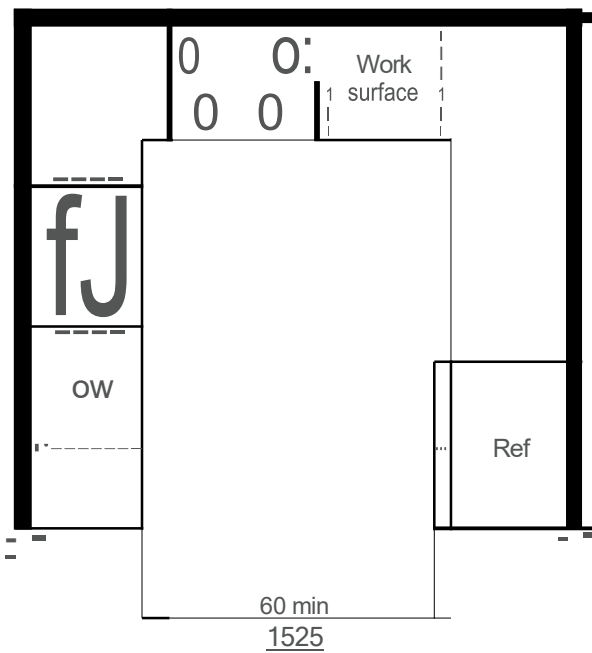
**804.5.6 Refrigerator/freezer.** Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer compartment shelves, including the bottom of the freezer, 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor when the shelves are installed at the maximum heights possible in the compartment. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the refrigerator/freezer, shall be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.



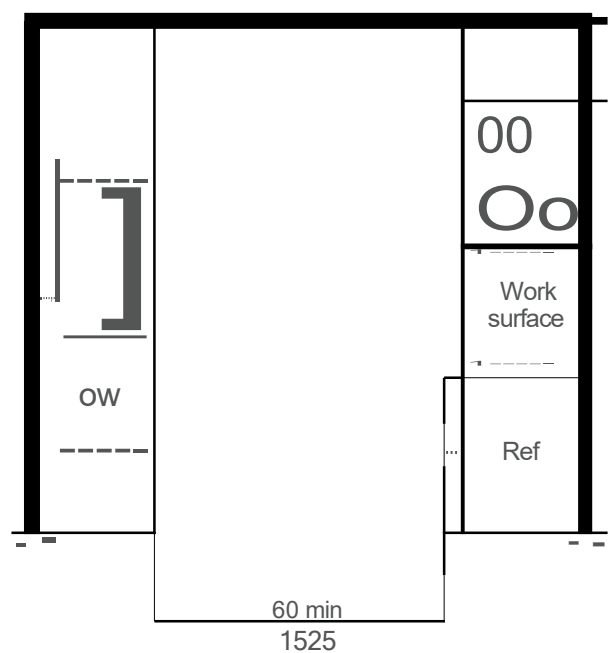
**FIGURE 804.2.1(A)**  
**PASS-THROUGH KITCHEN CLEARANCE**



**FIGURE 804.2.1(8)**  
**PASS-THROUGH KITCHEN CLEARANCE**



**FIGURE 804.2.2(A)**  
**U-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE**



**FIGURE 804.2.2(8)**  
**U-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE**

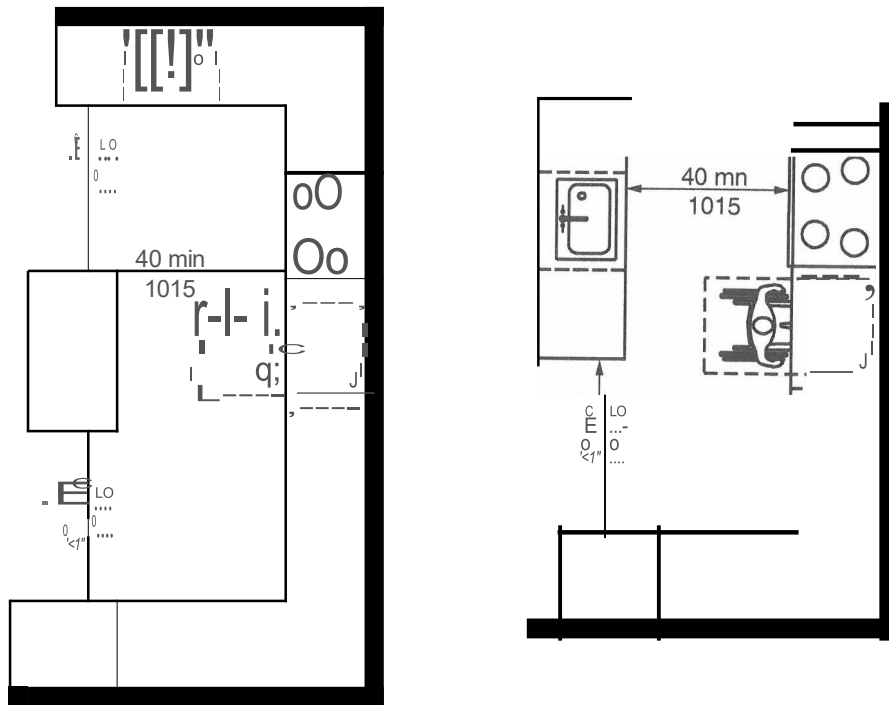


FIGURE 804.2.2(C)  
U-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE • EXCEPTION



## CHAPTER 11

# DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS

### SECTION 1101 GENERAL

**1101.1 Scoping.** Dwelling units and sleeping units required by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority to be Accessible units, Type A units, Type B units, Type C (Visitable) units or units with accessible communication features shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 11.

### SECTION 1102 ACCESSIBLE UNITS

**1102.1 General.** Accessible units shall comply with Section 1102.

**1102.2 Primary entrance.** The primary entrance shall be on an accessible route from public and common areas. The primary entrance shall not be to a bedroom unless it is the only entrance.

**1102.3 Accessible route.** Accessible routes within Accessible units shall comply with Section 1102.3.

**1102.3.1 Location.** At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the unit. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general circulation path.

**Exception:** An accessible route is not required to unfinished attics and unfinished basements that are part of the unit.

**1102.3.2 Turning space.** All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. A turning space shall not be required in toilet rooms and bathrooms that are not required to comply with Section 1102.11.2.
2. A turning space is not required within closets or pantries that are 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum in depth.

**1102.3.3 Components.** Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, ramps, elevators, and platform lifts.

**1102.4 Walking surfaces.** Walking surfaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.

**1102.5 Doors and doorways.** The primary entrance door to the unit, and all other doorways intended for user passage, shall comply with Section 404.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Existing doors to hospital patient sleeping rooms shall be exempt from the requirement for space at the latch side provided the door is 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width.
2. In toilet rooms and bathrooms not required to comply with Section 1102.11.2, maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 shall not be required on the toilet room or bathroom side of the door.
3. A turning space between doors in a series as required by Section 404.2.5 is not required.
4. Storm and screen doors shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.
5. Communicating doors between individual sleeping units shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.
6. At other than the primary entrance door, where exterior space dimensions of balconies are less than the required maneuvering clearance, door maneuvering clearance is not required on the exterior side of the door.
7. The maneuvering clearances required by Section 404 shall not be required within a closet or pantry complying with Exception 2 of Section 1102.3.2.

**1102.6 Ramps.** Ramps shall comply with Section 405.

**1102.7 Elevators.** Elevators within the unit shall comply with Section 407, 408, or 409.

**1102.8 Platform lifts.** Platform lifts within the unit shall comply with Section 410.

**1102.9 Operable parts.** Lighting controls, electrical panel, boards, electrical switches and receptacle outlets, environmental controls, appliance controls, plumbing fixture controls and user controls for security or intercom systems shall comply with Section 309.

**1102.10 Laundry equipment.** Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.

**1102.11 Toilet and bathing facilities.** At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 1102.11.2. All other toilet and bathing facilities shall comply with Section 1102.11.1

**1102.11.1 Grab bars and shower seat reinforcement.** At fixtures in toilet and bathing facilities not required to comply with Section 1102.11.2, reinforcement in accordance with Section 1104.11.1 shall be provided.

**Exception:** Reinforcement is not required where Type B units are not provided in the structure.

**1102.11.2 Toilet and bathing facility.** At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 603. At least one lavatory, one water closet and either a bathtub or shower within the unit shall comply with Sections 604 through 610. These toilet and bathing fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.

**1102.11.2.1 Vanity countertop space.** If vanity countertop space is provided in dwelling or sleeping units not required to be Accessible units within the same facility, equivalent vanity countertop space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in Accessible units.

**1102.11.2.2 Mirrors.** Mirrors above lavatories required to comply with Section 606 shall have the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor.

**1102.12 Kitchens.** Kitchens shall comply with Section 804.

**1102.13 Windows.** Operable windows shall comply with Section 506.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Windows in kitchens shall not be required to comply with Section 1102.13.
2. Windows in bathrooms shall not be required to comply with Section 1102.13.

**1102.14 Storage facilities.** Where storage facilities are provided, at least one of each type shall comply with Section 905.

**Exception:** Kitchen cabinets shall not be required to comply with Section 1102.14.

**1102.15 Beds.** In at least one sleeping area, a minimum of five percent, but not less than one bed shall comply with Section 1102.15.

**1102.15.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space shall be provided on both sides of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

**Exception:** Where a single clear floor space positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds, a clear floor space shall not be required on both sides of the bed.

**1102.15.2 Bed frames.** At least one bed shall be provided with an open bed frame.

**1102.15.3 Bed height.** At least one bed shall measure 17 to 23 inches (430 to 585 mm) high from the floor to the top of the uncompressed mattress.

**1102.15.4 Wheelchair charging area.** The clear floor space required by Section 1102.15.1 shall also serve as a wheelchair charging area complying with Section 906.

## SECTION 1103 TYPE A UNITS

**1103.1 General.** Type A units shall comply with Section 1103.

**1103.2 Primary entrance.** The primary entrance shall be on an accessible route from public and common areas. The primary entrance shall not be to a bedroom unless it is the only entrance.

**1103.3 Accessible route.** Accessible routes within Type A units shall comply with Section 1103.3.

**1103.3.1 Location.** At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the unit. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general circulation path.

**Exception:** An accessible route is not required to unfinished attics and unfinished basements that are part of the unit.

**1103.3.2 Turning space.** All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space.

**Exceptions:**

1. A turning space is not required in toilet rooms and bathrooms that are not required to comply with Section 1103.1.2.
2. A turning space is not required within closets or pantries that are 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum in depth.

**1103.3.3 Components.** Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, ramps, elevators, and platform lifts.

**1103.4 Walking surfaces.** Walking surfaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.

**1103.5 Doors and doorways.** The primary entrance door to the unit, and all other doorways intended for user passage, shall comply with Section 404.

**Exceptions:**

1. Thresholds at exterior sliding doors shall be permitted to be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm) maximum in height, provided they are beveled with a slope not greater than 1:2.
2. In toilet rooms and bathrooms not required to comply with Section 1103.11.2, maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 shall not be required on the toilet room or bathroom side of the door.
3. A turning space between doors in a series as required by Section 404.2.5 is not required.
4. Storm and screen doors shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.
5. Communicating doors between individual sleeping units shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.
6. At other than the primary entrance door, where exterior space dimensions of balconies are less than the required maneuvering clearance, door maneuvering

clearance is not required on the exterior side of the door.

7. The maneuvering clearances required by Section 404 shall not be required within a closet or pantry complying with Exception 2 of Section 1103.3.2.

**1103.6 Ramps.** Ramps shall comply with Section 405.

**1103.7 Elevators.** Elevators within the unit shall comply with Section 407, 408, or 409.

**1103.8 Platform lifts.** Platform lifts within the unit shall comply with Section 410.

**1103.9 Operable parts.** Lighting controls, electrical panels, electrical switches and receptacle outlets, environmental controls, appliance controls, plumbing fixture controls, and user controls for security or intercom systems shall comply with Section 309.

**1103.10 Laundry equipment.** Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.

**1103.11 Toilet and bathing facilities.** At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 1103.11.2. All toilet and bathing facilities shall comply with Section 1103.11.1.

**1103.11.1 Grab bar and shower seat reinforcement.**

Reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars complying with Section 604.5 at water closets; grab bars complying with Section 607.4 at bathtubs; and for grab bars and shower seats complying with Sections 608.3, 608.2.1.3, 608.2.2.3 and 608.2.3.2 at shower compartments.

**Exceptions:**

1. At fixtures not required to comply with Section 1103.11.2, reinforcement in accordance with Section 1104.11.1 shall be permitted.
2. Reinforcement is not required in a room containing only a lavatory and a water closet, provided the room does not contain the only lavatory or water closet on the accessible level of the dwelling unit.
3. Reinforcement for the water closet side wall vertical grab bar component required by Section 604.5 is not required.
4. Where the lavatory overlaps the water closet clearance in accordance with the exception to Section 1103.11.2.4.4 reinforcement at the water closet rear wall for a 24-inch (610 mm) minimum length grab bar, centered on the water closet, shall be provided.

**1103.11.2 General.** At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 1103.11.2. At least one lavatory, one water closet and either a bathtub or shower within the unit shall comply with Section 1103.11.2. These toilet and bathing fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.

**1103.11.2.1 Doors.** Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture.

**Exception:** Where a clear floor space is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing.

**1103.11.2.2 Lavatory.** Lavatories shall comply with Section 606.

**Exception:** Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory;
2. The floor finish extends under the cabinetry; and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

**1103.11.2.3 Mirrors.** Mirrors above lavatories required to comply with Section 1103.11.2.2 shall have the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor.

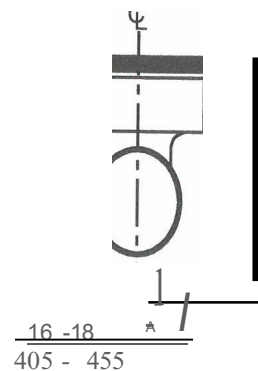
**1103.11.2.4 Water closet.** Water closets shall comply with Section 1103.11.2.4.

**1103.11.2.4.1 Location.** The water closet shall be positioned with a wall to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the sidewall.

**1103.11.2.4.2 Clearance width.** Clearance around the water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the side wall.

**1103.11.2.4.3 Clearance depth.** Clearance around the water closet shall be 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

**1103.11.2.4.4 Clearance overlap.** The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, paper dispensers, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space required at other fixtures, and the wheelchair turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.



**FIGURE 1103.11.2.4(A)**  
**WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE A UNITS: WATER CLOSET LOCATION**



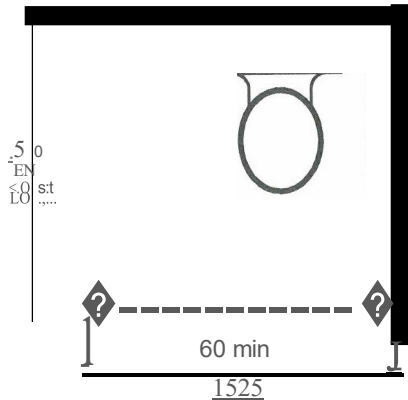


FIGURE 1103.11.2.4(6)  
WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE A UNITS: MINIMUM CLEARANCE

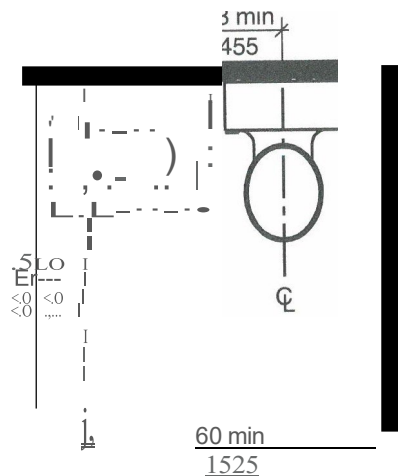


FIGURE 1103.11.2.4(C)  
WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE A UNITS: CLEARANCE WITH  
LAVATORY (OVERLAP EXCEPTION)

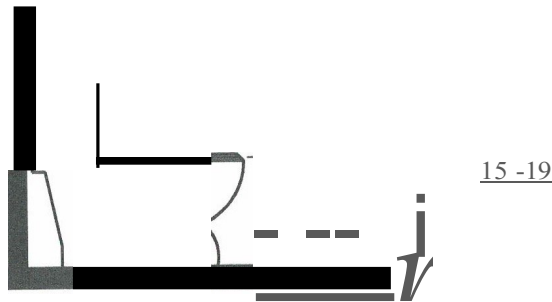


FIGURE 1103.11.2.4(0)  
WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE A UNITS: WATER CLOSET SEAT  
HEIGHT

**Exception:** A lavatory measuring 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth and complying with Section 1103.11.2.2 shall be permitted on the rear wall 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the centerline of the water closet to the side edge of the lavatory where the clearance at the water closet is 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

**1103.11.2.4.5 Height.** The top of the water closet seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 19

inches (485 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat.

**1103.11.2.4.6 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand-operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet.

**1103.11.2.5 Bathing fixtures.** The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.2.

**1103.11.2.5.1 Bathtub.** Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

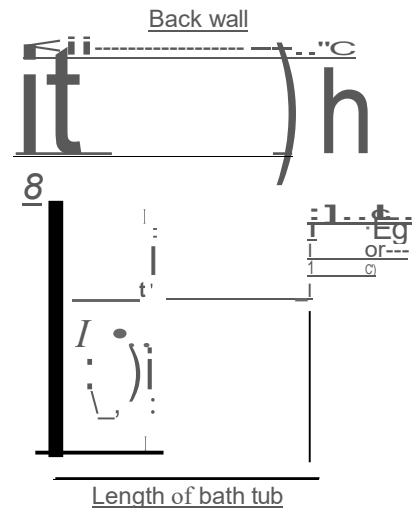


FIGURE 1103.11.2.5.1(A)  
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS  
WITH REMOVABLE SEAT

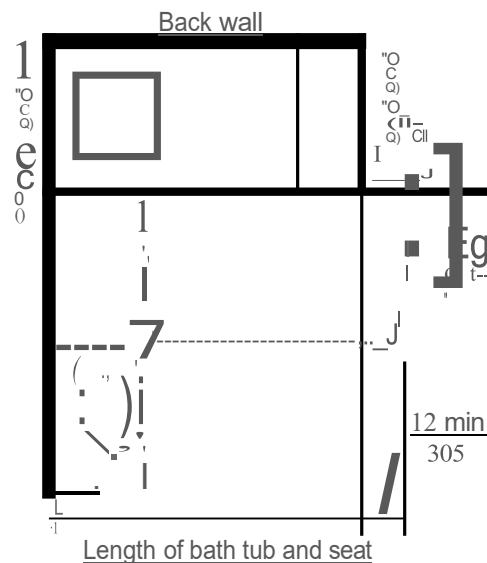


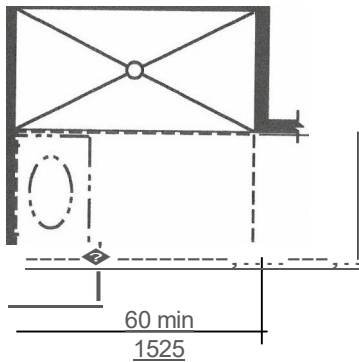
FIGURE 1103.11.2.5.1(B)  
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS  
WITH PERMANENT SEAT

**Exception:** Countertops and cabinetry shall be permitted at one end of the clearance, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The countertop and cabinetry can be removed;
2. The floor finish extends under the countertop and cabinetry; and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the countertop and cabinetry are finished.

**1103.11.2.S.2 Shower.** Showers shall comply with Section 608.

**Exception:** At standard roll-in shower compartments complying with Section 608.2.2, lavato-



Note: Lavatory permitted per Section 608.2.2

**FIGURE 1103.11.2.5.2**

**STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE A UNITS**

ries, countertops and cabinetry shall be permitted at one end of the clearance, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The countertop and cabinetry can be removed;
2. The floor finish extends under the countertop and cabinetry; and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the countertop and cabinetry are finished.

**1103.12 Kitchens.** Kitchens shall comply with Section 1103.12.

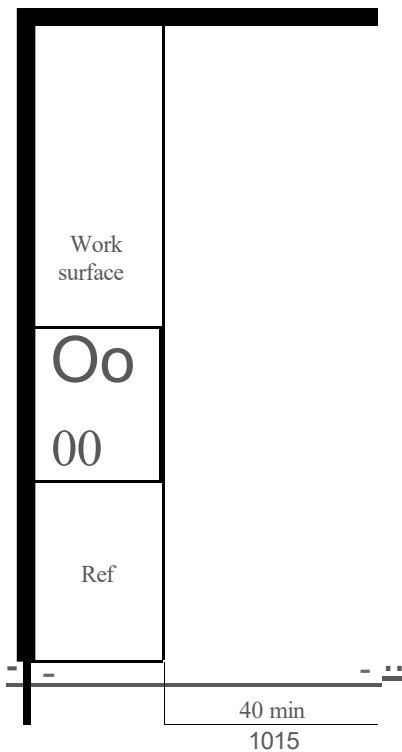
**1103.12.1 Clearance.** Clearance complying with Section 1103.12.1 shall be provided.

**1103.12.1.1 Minimum clearance.** Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum.

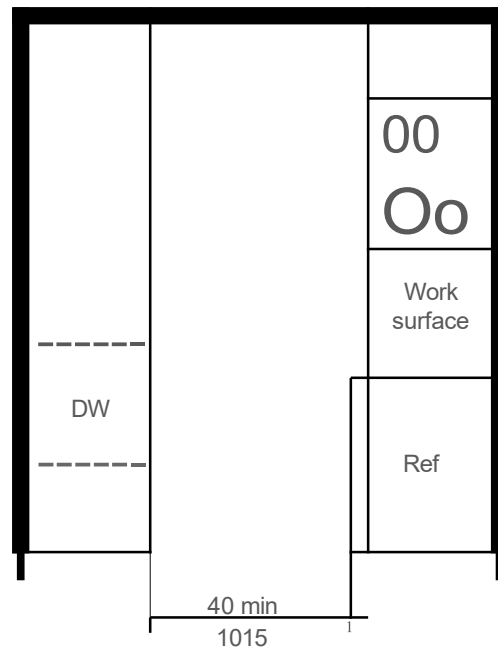
**1103.12.1.2 U-shaped kitchens.** In kitchens with counters, appliances, or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** U-shaped kitchens with an island complying with Section 1103.12.1.1.

**1103.12.2 Clear floor space.** Clear floor spaces required by Sections 1103.12.3 through 1103.12.5 shall comply with Section 305.



**(A)**



**(B)**

**FIGURE 1103.12.1.1**  
**MINIMUM KITCHEN CLEARANCE IN TYPE A UNITS**

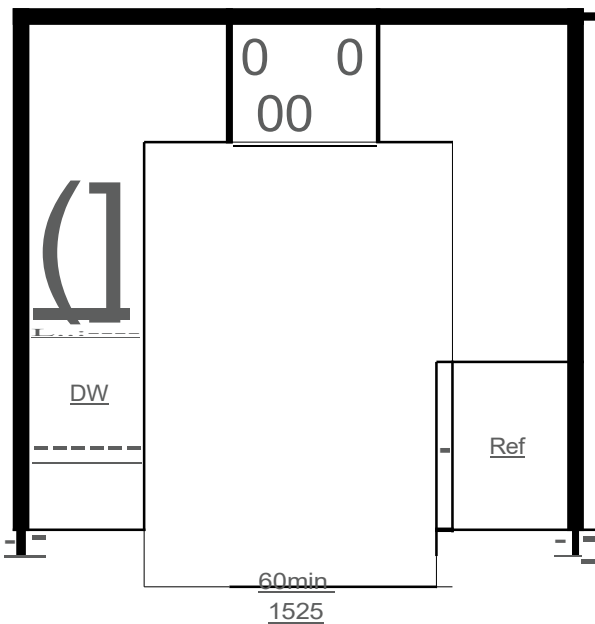


FIGURE 1103.12.1.2(A)  
U-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE IN TYPE A UNITS

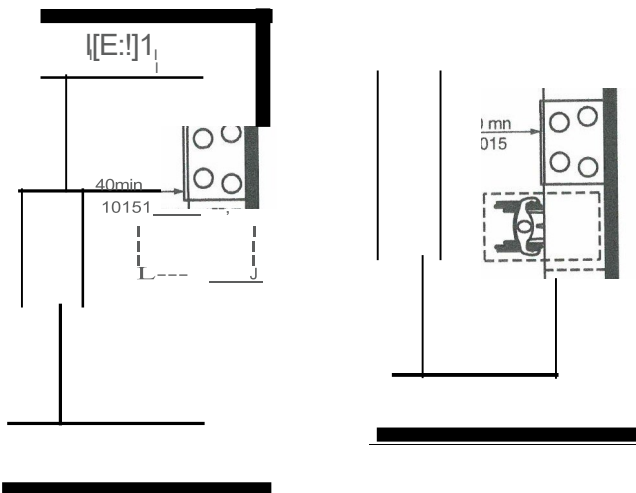


FIGURE 1103.12.1.2(8)  
U-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE IN TYPE A UNITS  
EXCEPTION

**1103.12.3 Work surface.** At least one section of counter shall provide an accessible work surface 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in length complying with Section 1103.12.3.

**Exception:** Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to provide an accessible work surface.

**1103.12.3.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the work surface, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.

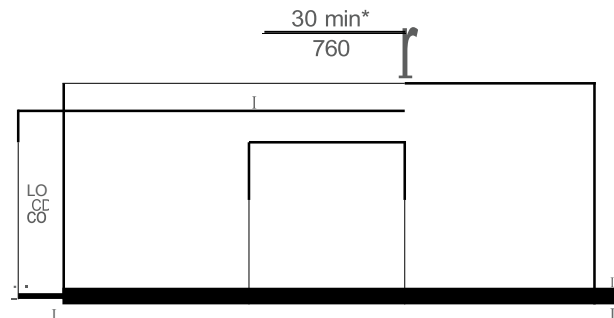
**Exception:** Cabinetry shall be permitted under the work surface, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the work surface.
2. The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

**1103.12.3.2 Height.** The work surface shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** A counter that is adjustable to provide a work surface at variable heights 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor, or that can be relocated within that range without cutting the counter or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors, and structural elements, shall be permitted.

**1103.12.3.3 Exposed surfaces.** There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under the exposed portions of work surface counters.



\* 36 min. (915) if part of T-shaped turning space per Sections 304.3.2 and 1003.3.2

FIGURE 1103.12.3  
WORK SURFACE IN KITCHEN FOR TYPE A UNITS

**1103.12.4 Sink.** Sinks shall comply with Section 1103.12.4.

**1103.12.4.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the sink, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.

**Exceptions:**

1. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multi-bowl sink.
2. Cabinetry shall be permitted to be added under the sink, provided the following criteria are met:
  - 2.1. The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the sink.

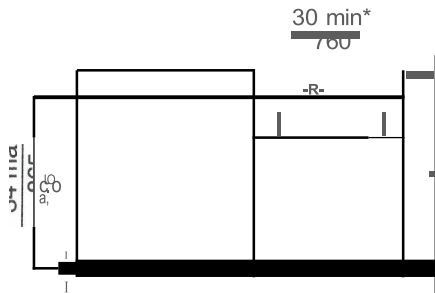
- 2.2. The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
- 2.3. The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.
3. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach and centered on the sink shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
4. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach and centered on the sink shall be permitted at wet bars.

**1103.12.4.2 Height.** The front of the sink shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.

**Exception:** A sink and counter that is adjustable to variable heights 29 inches (735 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor, or that can be relocated within that range without cutting the counter or damaging adjacent cabinets, walls, doors and structural elements, provided rough-in plumbing permits connections of supply and drain pipes for sinks mounted at the height of 29 inches (735 mm), shall be permitted.

**1103.12.4.3 Faucets.** Faucets shall comply with Section 309.

**1103.12.4.4 Exposed pipes and surfaces.** Water supply and drain pipes under sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under sinks.



\* 36 in. (915 mm) min. if part of T-shaped turning space in accordance with Sections 304.3.2 and 1003.3.2

**FIGURE 1103.12.4  
KITCHEN SINK FOR TYPE A UNITS**

**1103.12.5 Appliances.** Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with Section 1103.12.5.

**1103.12.5.1 Operable parts.** All appliance controls shall comply with Section 1103.9.

**Exceptions:**

1. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with Section 309.4.
2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with Section 309.3.

**1103.12.5.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach, shall be provided at each kitchen appliance.

**1103.12.5.3 Dishwasher.** A clear floor space, positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door, shall be provided. The dishwasher door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the dishwasher or an adjacent sink.

**1103.12.5.4 Cooktop.** Cooktops shall comply with Section 1103.12.5.4.

**1103.12.5.4.1 Approach.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

**1103.12.5.4.2 Forward approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The underside of the cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect from burns, abrasions or electrical shock.

**1103.12.5.4.3 Parallel approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance.

**1103.12.5.4.4 Controls.** The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.

**1103.12.5.5 Oven.** Ovens shall comply with Section 1103.12.5.5.

**1103.12.5.5.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space shall be provided. The oven door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the oven.

**1103.12.5.5.2 Side-hinged door ovens.** Side-hinged door ovens shall have a countertop positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.

**1103.12.5.5.3 Bottom-hinged door ovens.** Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have a countertop positioned adjacent to one side of the door.

**1103.12.5.5.4 Controls.** The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.

**1103.12.5.6 Refrigerator/freezer.** Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer compartment shelves, including the bottom of the freezer 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor when the shelves are installed at the maximum heights possible in the compartment. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the refrigerator/freezer, shall be provided. The centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

**1103.13 Windows.** Operable windows shall comply with Section 1103.13.

**Exceptions:**

1. Windows in kitchens shall not be required to comply with Section 1103.13.
2. Windows in bathrooms shall not be required to comply with Section 1103.13.

**1103.13.1 Natural ventilation.** Operable windows required to provide natural ventilation shall comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.3.

**1103.13.2 Emergency escape.** Operable windows required to provide an emergency escape and rescue opening shall comply with Section 309.2.

**1103.14 Storage facilities.** Where storage facilities are provided, at least one of each type shall comply with Section 905.

**Exception:** Kitchen cabinets shall not be required to comply with Section 1103.14.

## SECTION 1104 TYPE B UNITS

**1104.1 General.** Type B units shall comply with Section 1104.

**1104.1.1. Clear floor space.** For Type B units, clear floor spaces shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.

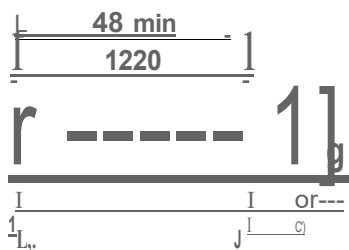


FIGURE 1104.1.1  
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE FOR TYPE B UNITS

**1104.1.2. Mailboxes.** Mailboxes serving Type B units shall be permitted an unobstructed side reach range at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor.

**1104.2 Primary entrance.** The primary entrance shall be on an accessible route from public and common areas. The primary entrance shall not be to a bedroom unless it is the only entrance.

**1104.3 Accessible route.** Accessible routes within Type B units shall comply with Section 1104.3.

**1104.3.1 Location.** At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements that are a part of the unit. Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as a general circulation path.

### Exceptions:

1. An accessible route is not required to unfinished attics and unfinished basements that are part of the unit.
2. One of the following is not required to be on an accessible route:
  - 2.1. A raised floor area in a portion of a living, dining, or sleeping room; or
  - 2.2. A sunken floor area in a portion of a living, dining, or sleeping room; or

- 2.3. A mezzanine that does not have plumbing fixtures or an enclosed habitable space.

**1104.3.2 Components.** Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, ramps, elevators, and platform lifts.

**1104.4 Walking surfaces.** Walking surfaces that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 1104.4.

**1104.4.1 Clear width.** The clear width of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.5.

### Exceptions:

1. The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.
2. Where an accessible route makes a 180-degree turn around an object that is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in width, clear widths shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum during the turn and 42 (1065 mm) inches minimum leaving the turn.
3. Where an accessible route makes a 180-degree turn around an object that is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in width, the clear width approaching the turn and leaving the turn shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum provided the clear width during the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.
4. Where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn the clear widths approaching the turn and leaving the turn shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
5. An accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum by 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum space, or an intersection of two walking surfaces that provide a T-shaped turning space complying with Section 304.3.2.2, provided the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.

**1104.4.2 Changes in level.** Changes in level shall comply with Section 303.

**Exception:** Where exterior deck, patio or balcony surface materials are impervious, the finished exterior impervious surface shall be 4 inches (100 mm) maximum below the floor level of the adjacent interior spaces of the unit.

**1104.5 Doors and doorways.** Doors and doorways shall comply with Section 1104.5.

**1104.5.1 Primary entrance door.** The primary entrance door to the unit shall comply with Section 404.

### Exceptions:

1. Storm and screen doors serving individual dwelling or sleeping units shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.
2. For the maneuvering clearance at swinging doors for the front approach direction on the push side, the dimension perpendicular to the door shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.
3. For the maneuvering clearance at sliding and folding doors for the front approach direction, the dimension perpendicular to the door shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.
4. For doorways without doors, the dimension perpendicular to the doorway for the front direction shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

**1104.5.2 User passage doorways.** Doorways intended for user passage shall comply with Section 1104.5.2.

**Exception:** Doors that are part of a shower door assembly shall not be required to comply with this section.

**1104.5.2.1 Clear width.** Doorways shall have a clear opening of 31<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (805 mm) minimum. Clear opening of swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and stop, with the door open 90 degrees.

**1104.5.2.1.1 Double leaf doorways.** Where the operable parts on an inactive leaf of a double leaf doorway are located more than 48 inches (1220 mm) or less than 15 inches (380 mm) above the floor, the active leaf shall provide the clearance required by Section 1104.5.2.1.

**1104.5.2.2 Thresholds.** Thresholds shall comply with Section 303.

**Exception:** Thresholds at exterior sliding doors shall be permitted to be <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inch (19 mm) maximum in height, provided they are beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.

**1104.5.2.3 Automatic doors.** Automatic doors shall comply with Section 404.3.

**1104.6 Ramps.** Ramps shall comply with Section 405.

**1104.7 Elevators.** Elevators serving the unit shall comply with Sections 407, 408 or 409.

**Exception:** In private residence elevators, the inside dimensions of elevator cars shall provide a clear floor length of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and a clear floor width of 36 inches (760 mm) minimum.

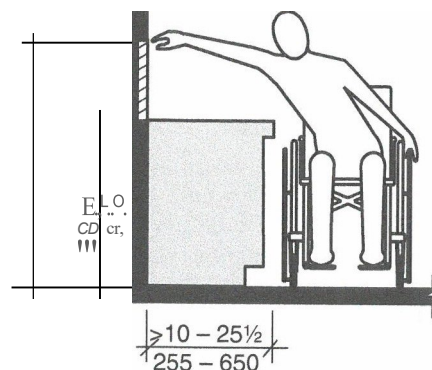
**1104.8 Platform lifts.** Platform lifts within the unit shall comply with Section 410.

**Exception:** Platform lifts with a single door or with doors on opposite ends shall provide a clear floor width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and a clear floor length of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

**1104.9 Operable parts.** Lighting controls, electrical switches and receptacle outlets, environmental controls, electrical panelboards, and user controls for security or intercom systems shall comply with Sections 309.3 and 1104.1.1.

### Exceptions:

1. Receptacle outlets serving a dedicated use.
2. In a kitchen where two or more receptacle outlets are provided above a length of countertop that is uninterrupted by a sink or appliance, only one receptacle outlet shall be required to comply with this section.
3. In a kitchen where a clear floor space for a parallel approach cannot be located at a countertop in a corner between appliances, receptacle outlets over the countertop shall not be required to comply with this section provided that the countertop area does not exceed 9 square feet (0.835 m<sup>2</sup>) maximum.
4. Floor receptacle outlets.
5. HYAC diffusers.
6. Controls mounted on ceiling fans.
7. Controls or switches mounted on appliances.
8. Plumbing fixture controls.
9. Reset buttons and shut-offs serving appliances, piping and plumbing fixtures.
10. Where redundant controls other than light switches are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to comply with this section.
11. Within kitchens and bathrooms, lighting controls, electrical switches and receptacle outlets are permitted to be located over cabinets with countertops 36 inches (915 mm) maximum in height and 25<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (650 mm) maximum in depth.



**FIGURE 1104.9**  
**REACH OVER A KITCHEN OR BATHROOM CABINET**

**1104.10 Laundry equipment.** Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 1104.10.

**1104.10.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space shall be provided for each washing machine and clothes dryer. A parallel approach shall be provided for a top loading machine. A forward or parallel approach shall be provided for a front loading machine.



**1104.11 Toilet and bathing facilities.** Toilet and bathing fixtures shall comply with Section 1104.1.1.

**Exception:** Fixtures on levels not required to be accessible.

**1104.11.1 Grab bar and shower seat reinforcement.** Reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars and shower seats at water closets, bathtubs, and shower compartments. Where walls are located to permit the installation of grab bars and seats complying with Section 604.5 at water closets; grab bars complying with Section 607.4 at bathtubs; and for grab bars and shower seats complying with Sections, 608.3, 608.2.1.3, 608.2.2.3 and 608.2.3.2 at shower compartments; reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars and seats complying with those requirements.

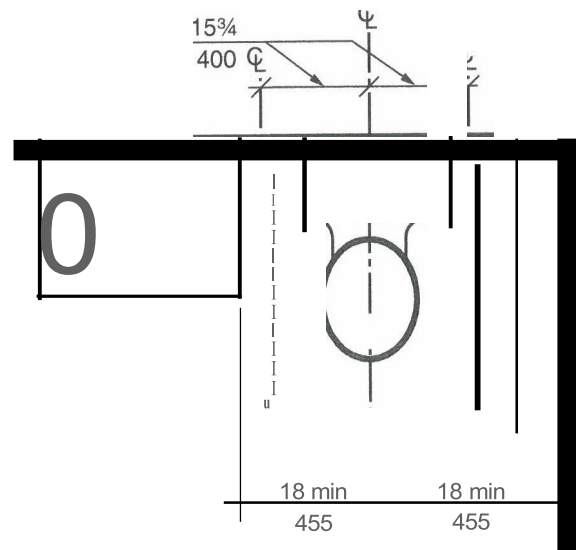
**Exceptions:**

1. In a room containing only a lavatory and a water closet, reinforcement is not required provided the room does not contain the only lavatory or water closet on the accessible level of the unit.
2. At water closets reinforcement for the side wall vertical grab bar component required by Section 604.5 is not required.
3. At water closets where wall space will not permit a grab bar complying with Section 604.5.2, reinforcement for a rear wall grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length centered on the water closet shall be provided.
4. At water closets where a side wall is not available for a 42-inch (1065 mm) grab bar complying with Section 604.5.1, reinforcement for a sidewall grab bar, 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall, shall be provided.
5. At water closets where a side wall is not available for a 42-inch (1065 mm) grab bar complying with Section 604.5.1 reinforcement for a swing-up grab bar complying with Section 1104.11.1.1 shall be permitted.
6. At water closets where a side wall is not available for a 42-inch (1065 mm) grab bar complying with Section 604.5.1 reinforcement for two swing-up grab bars complying with Section 1104.11.1.1 shall be permitted to be installed in lieu of reinforcement for rear wall and side wall grab bars.
7. In shower compartments larger than 36 inches (915 mm) in width and 36 inches (915 mm) in depth reinforcement for a shower seat is not required.

**1104.11.1.1 Swing-up grab bars.** A clearance of 18 inches (455 mm) minimum from the centerline of the water closet to any side wall or obstruction shall be provided where reinforcement for swing-up grab bars is provided. When the approach to the water closet is from the side, the 18 inches (455 mm) minimum shall be on the side opposite the direction of approach. Reinforcement shall accommodate a swing-up grab bar cen-

tered 15<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (400 mm) from the centerline of the water closet and 28 inches (710 mm) minimum in length, measured from the wall to the end of the horizontal portion of the grab bar. Reinforcement shall accommodate a swing-up grab bar with a height in the down position of 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum. Reinforcement shall be adequate to resist forces in accordance with Section 609.8.

**Exception:** Where a water closet is positioned with a wall to the rear and to one side, the centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the sidewall.



**FIGURE 1104.11.1.1  
SWING-UP GRAB BARS FOR WATER CLOSETS**

**1104.11.2 Clear floor space.** Clear floor spaces required by Section 1104.11.3.1 (Option A) or 1104.11.3.2 (Option B) shall comply with Sections 1104.11.2 and 1104.1.1.

**1104.11.2.1 Doors.** Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture.

**Exception:** Where a clear floor space, excluding knee and toe clearances under elements, is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing.

**1104.11.2.2 Knee and toe clearance.** Clear floor space at fixtures shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearances complying with Section 306.

**1104.11.3 Toilet and bathing areas.** Either all toilet and bathing areas provided shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1 (Option A), or one toilet and bathing area shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.2 (Option B).

**1104.11.3.1 Option A.** Each fixture provided shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where multiple lavatories are provided in a single toilet and bathing area such that travel between fixtures does not require travel

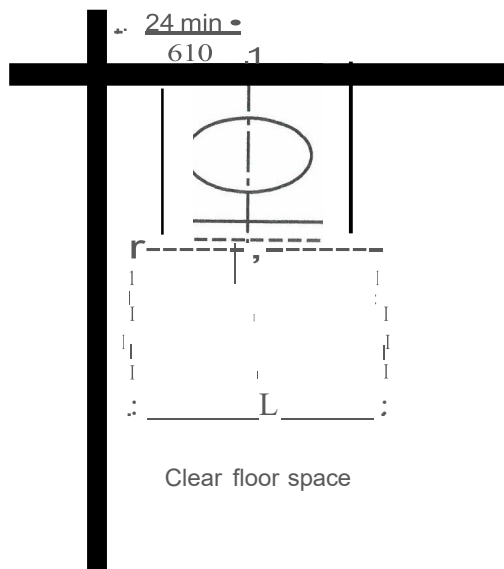
through other parts of the unit, not more than one lavatory is required to comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.

2. A lavatory and a water closet in a room containing only a lavatory and water closet, provided the room does not contain the only lavatory or water closet on the accessible level of the unit.

**1104.11.3.1.1 Lavatory.** A clear floor space positioned for a parallel approach shall be provided at a lavatory. The clear floor space shall be centered on the lavatory.

**Exception:** A lavatory complying with Sections 606.3, 606.4 and 1104.1.1 shall be permitted. Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory provided the following criteria are met:

1. The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory, and
2. The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.



**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.1**  
**LAVATORY IN TYPE B UNITS: OPTION A BATHROOMS**

**1104.11.3.1.2 Water closet.** The water closet shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.2.

**1104.11.3.1.2.1 Location.** The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from one side of the required clearance.

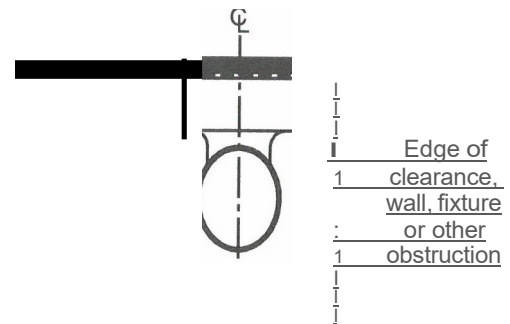
**1104.11.3.1.2.2 Clearance.** Clearance around the water closet shall comply with Sections 1104.11.3.1.2.2.1 through 1104.11.3.1.2.2.3.

**Exception:** Clearance complying with Sections 1103.11.2.4.2 through 1103.11.2.4.4.

**1104.11.3.1.2.2.1 Clearance width.** Clearance around the water closet shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the side of the clearance that is 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the water closet centerline.

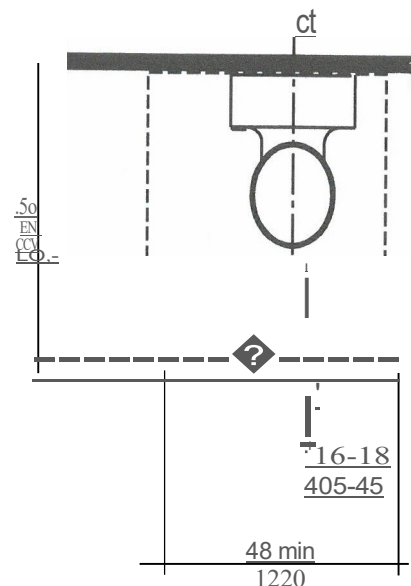
**1104.11.3.1.2.2.2 Clearance depth.** Clearance around the water closet shall be 56 inches (1420 mm) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

**1104.11.3.1.2.2.3 Increased clearance depth at forward approach.** Where a forward approach is provided, the clearance shall be 66 inches (1675 mm) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular from the rear wall.



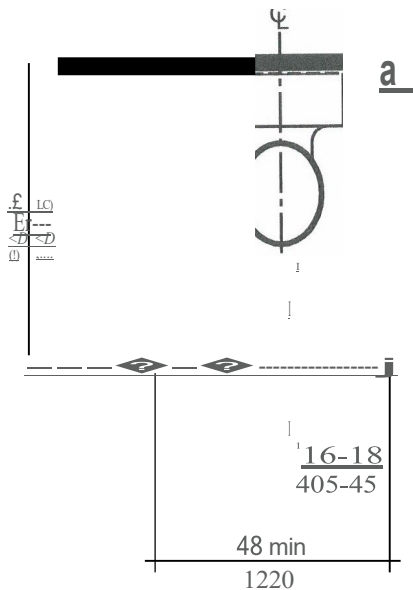
405-455

**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.2(A)**  
**CLEARANCE AT WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE B UNITS**  
**WATER CLOSET LOCATION**



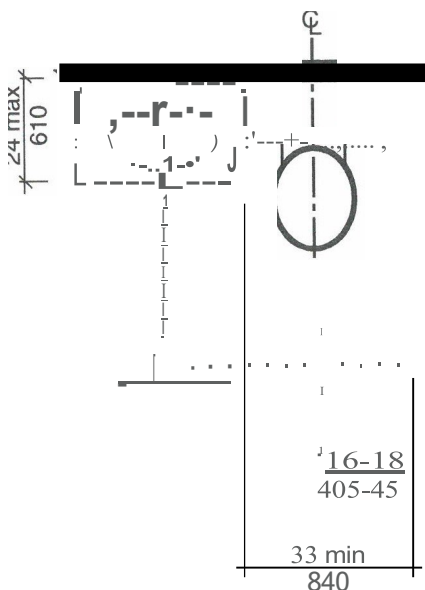
**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.2(8)**  
**CLEARANCE AT WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE B UNITS**  
**CLEARANCE WIDTH AND DEPTH**





**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.2(C)**  
**CLEARANCE AT WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE 8 UNITS**  
**INCREASED CLEARANCE DEPTH - FORWARD**  
**APPROACH**

**1104.11.3.1.2.2.4 Clearance overlap.** A vanity or other obstruction 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth, measured perpendicular from the rear wall, shall be permitted to overlap the required clearance, provided the width of the remaining clearance at the water closet is 33 inches (840 mm) minimum.



**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.2(D)**  
**CLEARANCE AT WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE 8 UNITS**  
**CLEARANCE WITH LAVATORY OVERLAP**

**1104.11.3.1.3 Bathing fixtures.** Where provided, a bathtub shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.1 or 1104.11.3.1.3.2 and a shower compartment shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.3.

**1104.11.3.1.3.1 Parallel approach bathtubs.** A clearance 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a parallel approach. Lavatories complying with Section 606 shall be permitted in the clearance. A lavatory complying with Section 1104.11.3.1.1 shall be permitted at one end of the bathtub if a clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width is provided in front of the bathtub.

**1104.11.3.1.3.2 Forward approach bathtubs.** A clearance 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a forward approach. A water closet and a lavatory shall be permitted in the clearance at one end of the bathtub.

**1104.11.3.1.3.3 Shower compartment.** If a shower compartment is the only bathing facility, the shower compartment shall have dimensions of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth. A clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length, measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured from the face of the shower compartment, shall be provided.

**Exceptions:**

1. A shower compartment with dimensions of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth and 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width shall be permitted.
2. A shower door assembly shall be permitted where the assembly can be removed without removal or replacement of the surrounding walls and floor to which it is affixed.

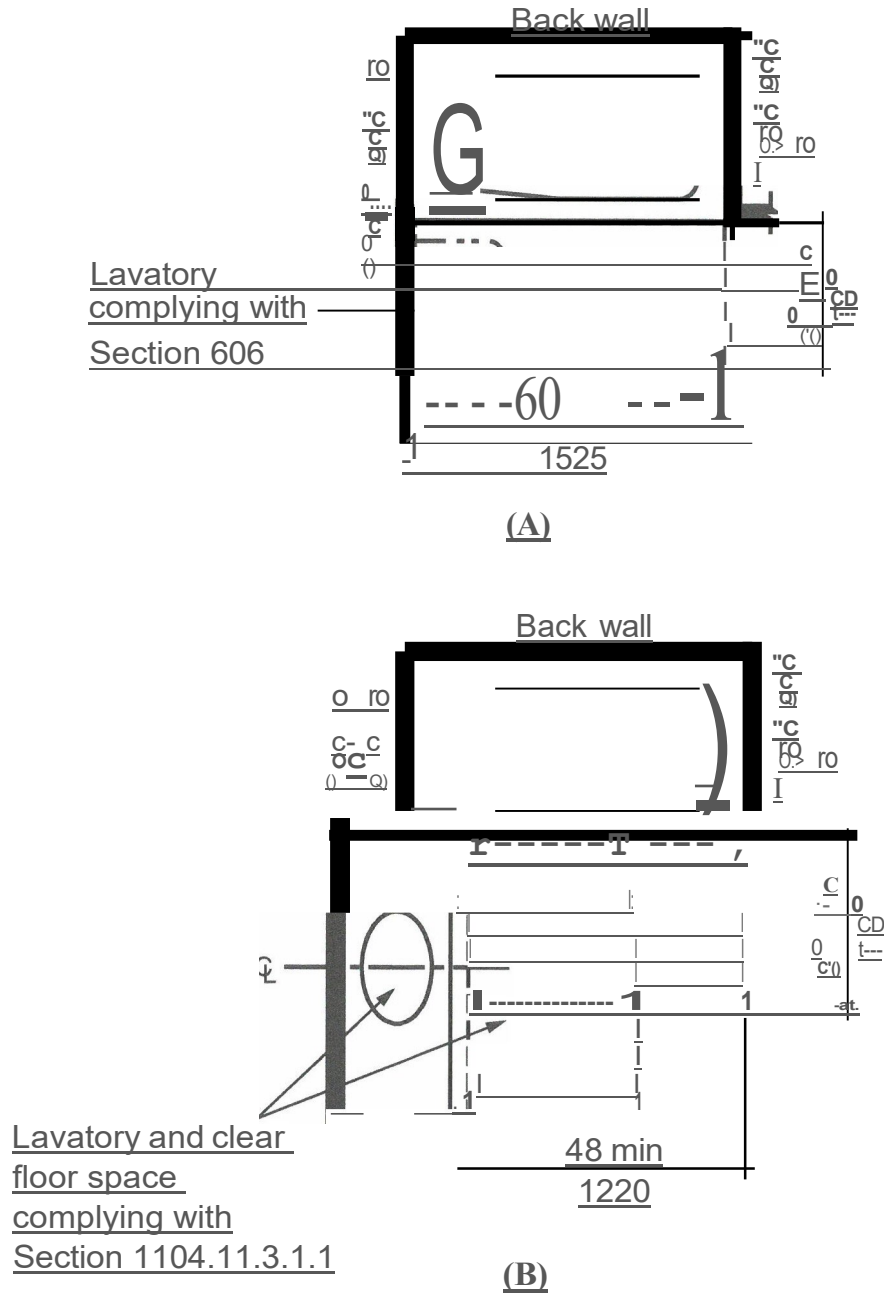
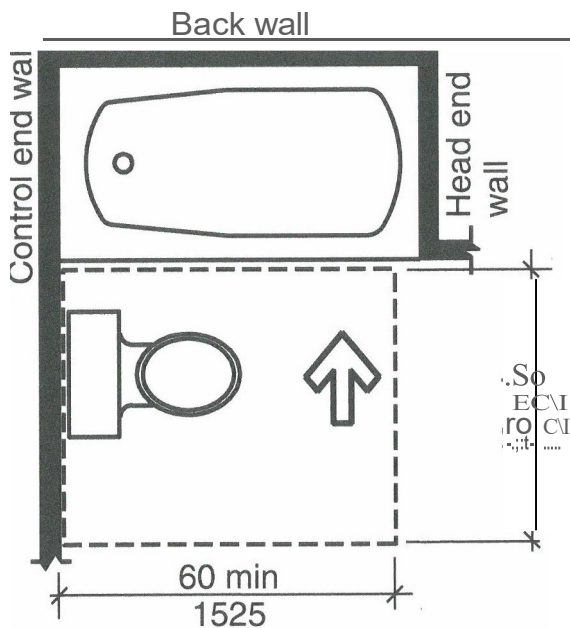
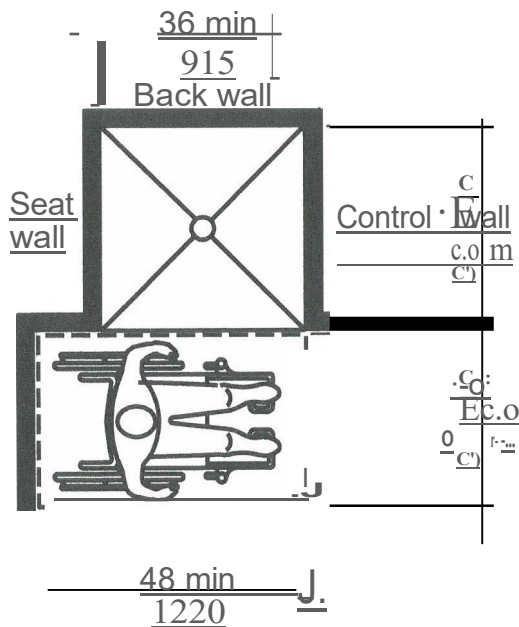


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.1  
PARALLEL APPROACH BATHTUB IN TYPE B UNITS- OPTION A BATHROOM

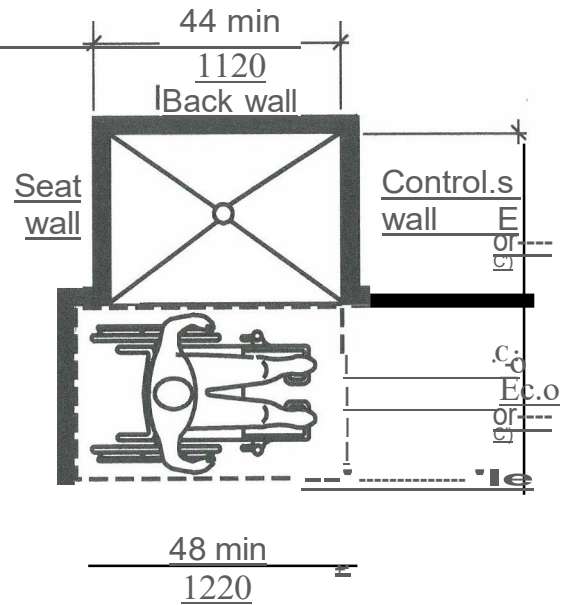


**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.2**  
**FORWARD APPROACH BATHTUB IN TYPE B UNITS**  
**OPTION A BATHROOM**



**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A)**  
**TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS**

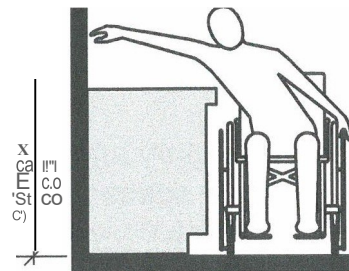
**1104.11.3.2 Option B.** One of each type of fixture provided shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.2. These fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.



**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.3(6)**  
**TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS**  
**EXCEPTION**

**1104.11.3.2.1 Lavatory.** Lavatories shall comply with Sections 1104.11.3.1.1 and 1104.11.3.2.1.1.

**1104.11.3.2.1.1 Height.** The front of the lavatory shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.



**Height**

**FIGURE 1104.11.3.2.1**  
**LAVATORY IN TYPE B UNITS- OPTION B BATHROOM**

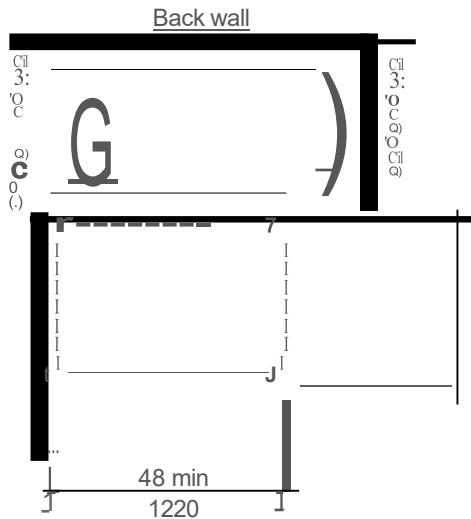
**1104.11.3.2.2 Water closet.** The water closet shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.2.

**1104.11.3.2.3 Bathing fixtures.** The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.2.

**1104.11.3.2.3.1 Bathtub.** A clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control end of the bathtub, and

30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs.

**1104.11.3.2.3.2 Shower compartment.** A shower compartment shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.3.



**FIGURE 1104.11.3.2.3.1**  
**BATHROOM CLEARANCE IN TYPE B UNITS**  
**OPTION B BATHROOM**

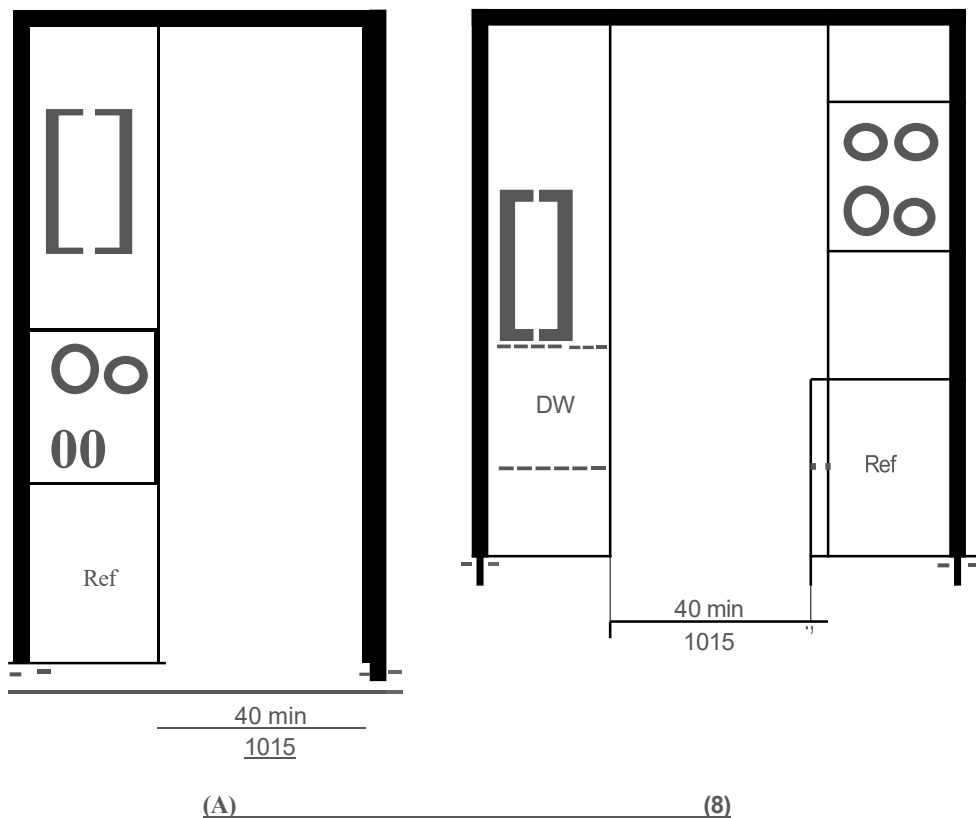
**1104.12 Kitchens.** Kitchens shall comply with Section 1104.12.

**1104.12.1 Clearance.** Clearance complying with Section 1104.12.1 shall be provided.

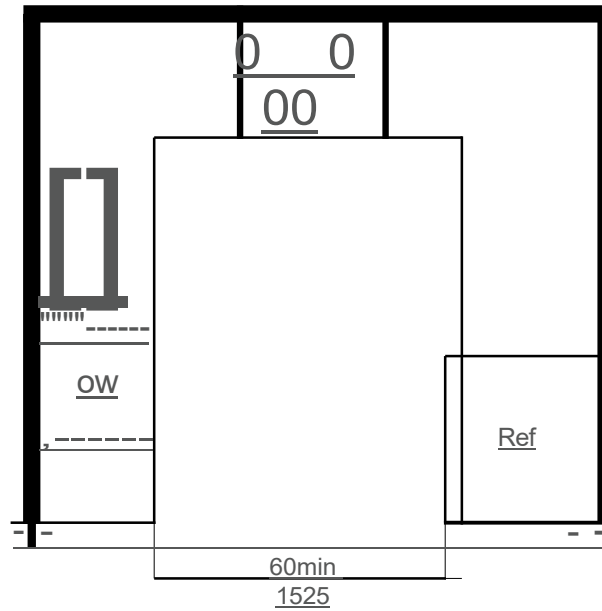
**1104.12.1.1 Minimum clearance.** Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum.

**1104.12.1.2 U-shaped kitchens.** In kitchens with counters, appliances or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

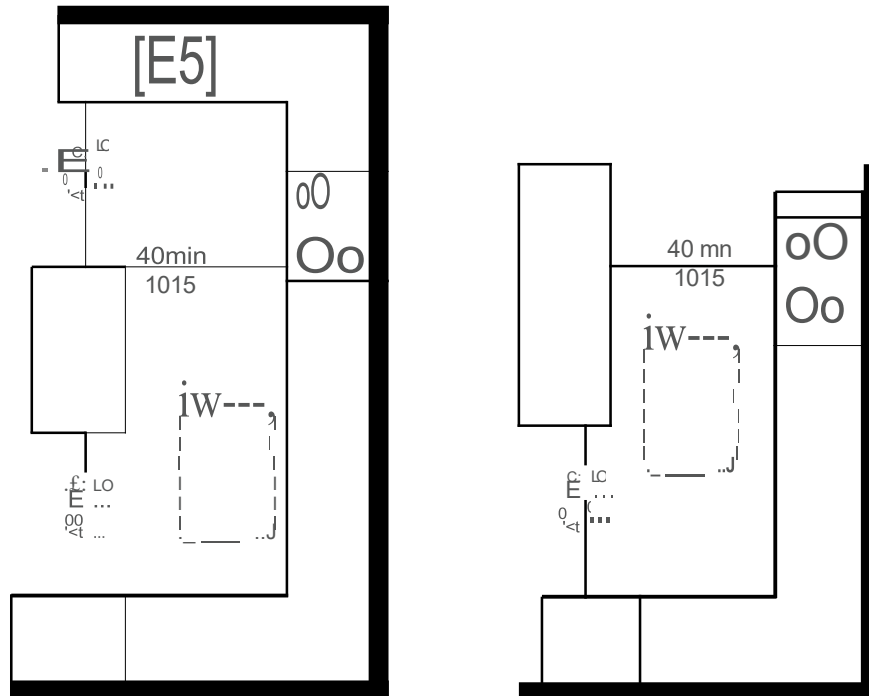
**Exception:** CT-shaped kitchens with an island complying with Section 1104.12.1.1.



**FIGURE 1104.12.1.1**  
**MINIMUM CLEARANCE IN TYPE B UNITS**



**FIGURE 1104.12.1.2(A)**  
**LI-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE IN TYPE B UNITS**



**FIGURE 1104.12.1.2(6)**  
**LI-SHAPED KITCHEN CLEARANCE IN TYPE B UNITS • EXCEPTION**

**1104.12.2 Clear floor space.** Clear floor spaces at appliances shall comply with Sections 1104.12.2 and 1104.1.1.

**1104.12.2.1 Sink.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the sink, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be centered on the sink bowl.

**Exception:** A sink with a forward approach complying with Section 1103.12.4.1.

**1104.12.2.2 Dishwasher.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the dishwasher, shall be provided. The dishwasher door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the dishwasher.

**1104.12.2.3 Cooktop.** Cooktops shall comply with Section 1104.12.2.3.

**1104.12.2.3.1 Approach.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

**1104.12.2.3.2 Forward approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The underside of the cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions, or electrical shock.

**1104.12.2.3.3 Parallel approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance.

**1104.12.2.4 Oven.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach adjacent to the oven shall be provided. The oven door in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the oven.

**1104.12.2.5 Refrigerator/freezer.** The refrigerator/freezer shall comply with Section 1104.12.2.5.

**1104.12.2.5.1 Approach.** A clear floor space positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the refrigerator/freezer shall be provided.

**1104.12.2.5.2 Forward approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a forward approach, the centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

**1104.12.2.5.3 Parallel approach.** Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

**1104.12.2.6 Trash compactor.** A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the trash compactor, shall be provided.

## SECTION 1105 TYPE C (VISITABLE) UNITS

**1105.1 General.** Type C (Visitable) dwelling units shall comply with Section 1105.

**1105.2 Unit entrance.** At least one unit entrance shall be on a circulation path complying with Section 1105.5 from a public street or sidewalk, a dwelling unit driveway, or a garage.

**1105.3 Connected spaces.** A circulation path complying with Section 1105.5 shall connect the unit entrance complying with Section 1105.2 and with the spaces specified in Section 1105.4.

**1105.4 Interior spaces.** The entrance level shall include a toilet room or bathroom complying with Section 1105.6 and one habitable space with an area 70 square feet (6.5 m<sup>2</sup>) minimum. Where a food preparation area is provided on the entrance level, it shall comply with Section 1105.7.

**Exception:** A toilet room or bathroom shall not be required on an entrance level with less than 120 square feet (11.2 m<sup>2</sup>) of habitable space.

**1105.5 Circulation path.** Circulation paths shall comply with Section 1105.5.

**1105.5.1 Components.** The circulation path shall consist of one or more of the following elements: walking surfaces with a slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, ramps, elevators complying with Sections 407 through 409, and wheelchair (platform) lifts complying with Section 410.

**1105.5.2 Walking surfaces.** Walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20 shall comply with Section 303.

**1105.5.2.1 Clear width.** The clear width of the circulation path shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

**1105.5.3 Doors and doorways.** Doors and doorways shall comply with Section 1105.5.3.

**1105.5.3.1 Clear width.** Doorways shall have a clear opening of 31<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (805 mm) minimum. Clear opening of swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and stop, with the door open 90 degrees.

**1105.5.3.2 Thresholds.** Thresholds shall comply with Section 303.

**Exception:** Thresholds at exterior sliding doors shall be permitted to be <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inch (19 mm) maximum in height, provided they are beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.

**1105.5.4 Ramps.** Ramps shall comply with Section 405.

**Exception:** Handrails, intermediate landings and edge protection shall not be required where the sides of ramp runs have a vertical drop off of <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inch (13 mm) maximum within 10 inches (255 mm) horizontally of the ramp run.

**1105.5.4.1 Clear width.** The clear width of the circulation path shall comply with Section 403.5.

**1105.6 Toilet room or bathroom.** At a minimum, the toilet room or bathroom required by Section 1105.4 shall include a lavatory and a water closet. Reinforcement shall be provided for the future installation of grab bars at water closets. Clearances at the water closet shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.2.

**1105.7 Food preparation area.** At a minimum, the food preparation area shall include a sink, a cooking appliance,

and a refrigerator. Clearances between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances or walls within the food preparation area shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall be permitted to provide a clearance of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

**1105.8 Lighting controls and receptacle outlets.** Receptacle outlets and operable parts of lighting controls shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor.

**Exception:** The following shall not be required to comply with Section 1105.8.

1. Receptacle outlets serving a dedicated use.
2. Controls mounted on ceiling fans and ceiling lights.
3. Floor receptacle outlets.
4. Lighting controls and receptacle outlets over countertops.

## **SECTION 1106 UNITS WITH COMMUNICATION FEATURES**

**1106.1 General.** Units required to have communication features shall comply with Section 1106.

**1106.2 Unit smoke detection.** Where provided, unit smoke detection shall include audible notification complying with NFPA 72 listed in Section 106.2.4.

**1106.3 Building fire alarm system.** Where a building fire alarm system is provided, the system wiring shall be extended to a point within the unit in the vicinity of the unit smoke detection system.

**1106.4 Visible notification appliances.** Visible notification appliances, where provided within the unit as part of the unit smoke detection system or the building fire alarm system, shall comply with Section 1106.4.

**1106.4.1 Appliances.** Visible notification appliances shall comply with Section 702.

**1106.4.2 Activation.** All visible notification appliances provided within the unit for smoke detection notification shall be activated upon smoke detection. All visible notification appliances provided within the unit for building fire

alarm notification shall be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the unit.

**1106.4.3 Interconnection.** The same visible notification appliances shall be permitted to provide notification of unit smoke detection and building fire alarm activation.

**1106.4.4 Prohibited use.** Visible notification appliances used to indicate unit smoke detection or building fire alarm activation shall not be used for any other purpose within the unit.

**1106.5 Unit primary entrance.** Communication features shall be provided at the unit primary entrance complying with Section 1106.5.

**1106.5.1 Notification.** A hard-wired electric doorbell shall be provided. A button or switch shall be provided on the public side of the unit primary entrance. Activation of the button or switch shall initiate an audible tone within the unit. Where visible doorbell signals are located in sleeping areas, controls shall be provided to deactivate the signal.

**1106.5.2 Identification.** A means for visually identifying a visitor without opening the unit entry door shall be provided. Peepholes, where used, shall provide a minimum 180-degree range of view.

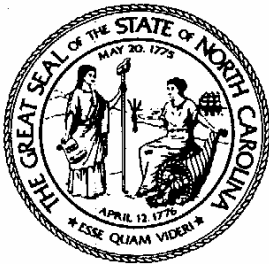
**1106.6 Site, building or floor entrance.** Where a system permitting voice communication between a visitor and the occupant of the unit is provided at a location other than the unit entry door, the system shall comply with Section 1106.6.

**1106.6.1 Public or common-use interface.** The public or common-use system interface shall include the capability of supporting voice and ITY communication with the unit interface.

**1106.6.2 Unit interface.** The unit system interface shall include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the public or common-use system interface.

**1106.7 Closed-circuit communication systems.** Where a closed-circuit communication system is provided, the public or common-use system interface shall comply with Section 1106.6.1, and the unit system interface in units required to have communication features shall comply with Section 1106.6.2.





# APPENDIX C

## CODE CHANGE PROPOSAL

### NORTH CAROLINA

### BUILDING CODE COUNCIL

**B-16**

1429 Rock Quarry Road, Suite 105  
Raleigh, North Carolina 27610  
(919) 647-0008  
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Petition for Rule Making

Item Number \_\_\_\_\_

Granted by BCC \_\_\_\_\_

Adopted by BCC \_\_\_\_\_

Approved by RRC \_\_\_\_\_

Denied by BCC \_\_\_\_\_

Disapproved by BCC \_\_\_\_\_

Objection by RRC \_\_\_\_\_

PROPONENT: David Rittlinger

PHONE: (919) 647-0008

REPRESENTING: NC-Office of State Fire Marshal-Engineering and Codes Division

ADDRESS: 1429 Rock Quarry Road, Suite 105

CITY: Raleigh

STATE: NC

ZIP: 27610

E-MAIL: david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

FAX: (\_\_\_\_\_) - \_\_\_\_\_

North Carolina State Building Code, Volume: 2024 NC Plumbing Code, Sections 702.1, 702.4, 1102.2 and 1102.7

**CHECK ONE:** ☒ [X] Revise section to read as follows: ☐ [ ] Delete section and substitute the following:  
☐ [ ] Add new section to read as follows: ☐ [ ] Delete section without substitution:

LINE THROUGH MATERIAL TO BE DELETED

UNDERLINE MATERIAL TO BE ADDED

Please type. Continue proposal or reason on plain paper attached to this form. See reverse side for instructions.

**702.1 Above-ground sanitary drainage and vent pipe.** Above-ground soil, waste and vent pipe shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.1. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent cemented inside of plastic pipe.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe with an inside diameter of 2 inches (51 mm) and larger shall not be used for storm drainage drain, waste and vent conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23m) in height as per N.C.G.S 143-138 (b24).

....

**702.4 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed and shall comply with the applicable standards listed in Table 702.4. Pipe fittings shall not be solvent cemented inside of plastic pipe.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe fittings and plastic plumbing appurtenances with an inside diameter of 2 inches (51 mm) and larger shall not be used for drain, waste and vent conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23 m) in height as per N.C.G.S 143-138 (b24).

....

**1102.2 Inside storm drainage conductors.** Inside storm drainage conductors installed above ground shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 702.1.



**Exception:** Plastic pipe with an inside diameter of 2 inches and larger shall not be used for storm drainage conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23m) in height as per N.C.G.S 143-138 (b24).

....

**1102.7 Fittings.** Pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping material installed, and shall conform to the respective pipe standards or one of the standards listed in Table 1102.7. The fittings shall not have ledges, shoulders or reductions capable of retarding or obstructing flow in the piping. Threaded drainage pipe fittings shall be of the recessed drainage type.

**Exception:** Plastic pipe fittings and plastic plumbing appurtenances with an inside diameter of 2 inches and larger shall not be used for storm drainage conductors in buildings in which the top occupied floor exceeds 75 feet (23m) in height as per N.C.G.S 143-138 (b24).

|   |              |              |    |     |
|---|--------------|--------------|----|-----|
| Will this proposal change the cost of construction?                           | Decrease [ ] | Increase [ ] | No | [X] |
| Will this proposal increase to the cost of a dwelling by \$80 or more?        |              | Yes [ ]      | No | [X] |
| Will this proposal affect the Local or State funds?                           | Local [ ]    | State [ ]    | No | [X] |
| Will this proposal cause a substantial economic impact ( $\geq$ \$1,000,000)? |              | Yes [ ]      | No | [X] |

- Non-Substantial – Provide an economic analysis including benefit/cost estimates.
- Substantial – The economic analysis must also include 2-alternatives, time value of money and risk analysis.
- Pursuant to §143-138(a1)(2) a cost-benefit analysis is required for all proposed amendments to the NC Energy Conservation Code. The Building Code Council shall also require same for the NC Residential Code, Chapter 11.

---

**REASON:** This petition amends the 2024 NC Plumbing Code per General Assembly of North Carolina Session Law 2023-137, Section 36 that became law on 10/10/23. A fiscal note and cost benefit analysis is not provided.

---

Signature: David Rittlinger

Date: 12/12/23 FORM 11/26/19

BCC CODE CHANGES

# INSTRUCTIONS

**Each proposed Code change request shall comply with the following policies:**

**Rule 1:** The Original and twenty-two (22) copies of the proposed Petition for Rule-Making along with supporting documentation shall be filed with the Building Code Council Secretary. Submit one (1) electronic copy via email.

**Rule 2:** The filing shall be received by the first day of the month prior to the quarterly scheduled meeting date. Example: A December meeting date will require filing by November 1 prior to the meeting.

**Rule 3:** Each request shall be typewritten on this form and shall contain the following:

- (1) The proposed rule change must be set forth in full and contain explicit reference to the affected section or sections of the Code.
- (2) The request shall state the reasons for the proposed rule change with supporting documentation.
- (3) The proposed rule change shall comply with the standards set forth in GS 143-138(c) and reference to the particular standards shall be set forth in the request for the amendment.
- (4) The proposed rule change shall contain an economic impact analysis as required by GS 143-138(a).
- (5) A proposed rule change to the NC Energy Conservation Code shall have an accompanying cost-benefit analysis as required by GS 143-138(a1)(2).

**Rule 4:** When a request is improperly filed or not in accordance with all the rules listed above, the BCC Secretary shall reject the submittal and notify the applicant of the proper procedure to follow.

**Rule 5:** Upon the proper filing of a request, the BCC Secretary shall forward one copy of said request to each council member prior to the scheduled meeting date. Persons filing proposed petitions are hereby notified of the place and time of the scheduled hearings. The BCC Secretary shall cause to be published the notice of public hearing as specified in GS 143-138(a).

**Rule 6:** The Council shall either Grant or Deny the proposed Petition for Rulemaking at the meeting following receipt of the proposed rule change. The Council will take no further action on items that are Denied. Granted items may be referred to Committee for review.

**Rule 7:** The Council will hold a public hearing on Granted items at the next quarterly scheduled meeting. The Council will take final action on Granted items at the next quarterly scheduled meeting after the public hearing.

## **Timeline Example**

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Petition received:</b>           | <b>February 1</b>            |
| <b>Petition Granted:</b>            | <b>March BCC meeting</b>     |
| <b>Notice of Hearing published:</b> | <b>April NC Register</b>     |
| <b>Committee review:</b>            | <b>May - June</b>            |
| <b>Hearing held:</b>                | <b>June BCC meeting</b>      |
| <b>Final Adoption:</b>              | <b>September BCC meeting</b> |
| <b>Rules Review Meeting:</b>        | <b>November RRC meeting</b>  |
| <b>Approved:</b>                    | <b>December 1</b>            |